Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- [x] Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- [ ] Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- [ ] Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- [ ] Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- [ ] Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- [x] Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- [ ] Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- [ ] Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- [ ] Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- [ ] Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- [ ] Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires:

- [ ] Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- [ ] Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- [ ] Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- [x] Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- [ ] Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- [x] Showthrough/ Transparence
- [ ] Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- [ ] Continuous pagination/ Pagination continue
- [x] Includes index(es)/ Comprend un (des) index

  Title on header taken from:/ Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

- [ ] Title page of issue/ Page de titre de la livraison
- [ ] Caption of issue/ Titre de départ de la livraison
- [ ] Masthead/ Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
					✓						

INTRODUCTORY LATIN GRAMMAR

PRICE $1.00

HAGARTY

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

MORANG'S MODERN TEXT-BOOKS

INTRODUCTORY

LATIN GRAMMAR

AND

FIRST LATIN READER

BY

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.
CLASSICAL MASTER, HARBORD STREET COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO

Authorised by the Minister of Education for use in Ontario.

Price

TORONTO
MORANG & CO. LIMITED
1906

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

PA2087
H17
1906

~~15636~~

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year Nineteen Hundred and Four, by MORANG & Co., LIMITED, at the Department of Agriculture.

PREFACE

THIS book was originally designed as a beginner's book. At the request of the publishers, the scope has been widened so as to cover a complete course in grammar for university matriculation. The book is, therefore, a Latin Primer and an Elementary Latin Grammar combined.

Part I is devoted almost exclusively to forms and easy continuous reading, only so much syntax being referred to as is necessary to elucidate forms.

Part II contains about twenty pages of easy reading matter suitable as an introduction to Caesar, or as collateral work in sight translation for pupils who have begun Caesar.

Part III contains a short course in syntax, dealing chiefly with the cases and the subjunctive mood.

No attempt has been made to produce a text-book on continuous Latin Prose Composition. The aim has been rather to lay the foundation for an intelligent reading knowledge of Latin. The writing of continuous prose should be the outgrowth of familiarity with authors carefully read and studiously imitated. It is no part of introductory grammar.

From the outset the aim of the author was to make a book that would interest and stimulate the beginner. With this object in view, illustrations bearing on mythology and Roman life, together with a brief running commentary on early Roman history, have been inter-

spersed with the dry materials of grammar. It is to be hoped that the experiment will be found helpful to teachers who wish to impress Latin upon their pupils' minds as a living vehicle of thought and story.

The author is of the opinion that, with a view to arousing interest, a limited employment of the inductive method of reading stories with beginners may be very useful. The book leaves it purely optional with teachers whether this material shall be utilized or not.

In accordance with the best usage of recent times, all long vowels, or vowels believed to be long, have been marked. This has been the subject of not a little perplexity to the author. After careful consideration, it was seen that on many points the system adopted in the book must conflict either with the commonly recognized standard of Lewis's "Elementary Latin Dictionary" or with other authority whose cogency could not be denied. Most school text-books published on this side of the Atlantic follow Lewis and the German scholar Marx in giving the vowel before **-gn** and **-gm** long in all words, *e.g.* **māgnus, sīgnum, īgnis, āgmen, pūgnō, cōgnōscō, īgnōscō, īgnārus,** etc. Bennett in his Appendix and revised Latin Grammar refuses to go beyond the testimony of the old grammarian Priscian to the effect that only nouns and adjectives in **-gnus, -gna, -gnum,** have the long vowel. In this he is supported by the conservative opinion of Lindsay. Hale and Buck (1903), however, go to the other extreme and refuse to mark any of these vowels long, except where derivation shows it, as in **rēgnum, stāgnum, sēgnis.** They admit that probably there was (in different "strata of society") a dual pronunciation of such words as **sīgnum** and **māgnus,** but profess to follow the evi-

dence of the Romance languages in giving the short vowel. Is it not probable that the Romance languages would reflect the usage of the lower "stratum," thus confirming a preference for the long vowel as more strictly classical, especially when that preference is supported by so ancient an authority as Priscian? On the whole, Priscian, Lindsay, and Bennett seem the safer guides, and these have been followed.

It may be as well to mention the various kinds of evidence on which modern scholarship bases its opinion in matters of "hidden quantity," that is, quantity not revealed by poetry. They are as follows: —

1. Statements of the Roman grammarians, Priscian, etc.
2. Spelling in inscriptions, in which long vowels are frequently marked by the *apex*, *e.g.* TRÁXI, or, in the case of long **i**, by a lengthening of the character, as in QUĪNQUE. Inscriptions are not always reliable.
3. Greek transcriptions, as Οὐεργίλιος = *Vergilius*.
4. The vocalism of the Romance languages.
5. Derivation, as **māximus** from **māgnus**.

In conclusion the author wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness for much valuable advice to Dr. Benjamin D'Ooge, Professor of Latin, Michigan State Normal College, who kindly looked over the introductory lessons of Part I and made many important suggestions; also to his old friend and Johns Hopkins classmate, Dr. G. W. Johnston, Lecturer in Latin, University College, Toronto, to whose careful revision of proof-sheets and scholarly opinion on many points the book owes much in the way of precision.

TORONTO, October 15, 1903.

CONTENTS

PART I

		PAGE
INTRODUCTION		
	The Latin Language	1
	The Pronunciation of Latin	2
	Quantity — Accent	4
I.	Present Indicative Active of **Vocō**	6
II.	The Latin Cases	8
III.	First Declension — Subject, Object, Predicate Nominative	10
IV.	Motion "to" and "into"; Rest "in"	12
V.	The Ablative and Certain Prepositions	14
VI.	Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	17
VII.	Second Declension — Nouns in **-us**	20
VIII.	Second Declension — Nouns in **-er** and **-ir**	22
IX.	Gender — Natural and Grammatical	24
X.	Second Declension — Neuter Nouns	27
	Reading Lesson, The Trojan War — Word List	29
XI.	Perfect Tenses Active of All Verbs	32
XII.	Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions — **Bonus**	36
XIII.	Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ending in **-er**	37
XIV.	The Four Conjugations — Present Infinitives	40
XV.	Second Conjugation — Indicative Active of **Moneō**	43
XVI.	Third and Fourth Conjugations — **Regō** and **Audiō**	45
XVII.	Verbs like **Capiō** — Indicative Active	48
XVIII.	Third Declension — Masculine and Feminine Consonant Stems	53
XIX.	Third Declension — Mute Stems	54
XX.	Third Declension — "S" Stems — Liquid and Nasal Stems	56

LESSON		PAGE
XXI.	Third Declension — Neuter Consonant Stems	60
XXII.	Third Declension — "I" Stems (**-is** and **-ēs**)	62
XXIII.	Third Declension — "I" Stems (Monosyllables and Others)	64
XXIV.	Third Declension — Neuter "I" Stems	66
XXV.	Third Declension — Irregular Nouns	68
XXVI.	Gender Rules of the Third Declension — Review	70
XXVII.	Adjectives of the Third Declension	74
XXVIII.	Adjectives of the Third Declension (*continued*)	76
	Review Word List	78
	Reading Lessons — Early Rome; Hannibal	82
XXIX.	Fourth Declension — Locative Case	85
XXX.	Fifth Declension	87
	Peculiar Nouns of All Declensions (for reference)	91
	Reading Lessons — Julius Caesar invades Britain	94
XXXI.	The Comparison of Adjectives — Regular	96
XXXII.	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	100
XXXIII.	Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (*continued*)	102
XXXIV.	Adjectives like **Ūnus**, **Alius**, etc.	108
XXXV.	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	111
XXXVI.	Numerals	115
XXXVII.	**Sum**, *I am*, and its Compounds	123
XXXVIII.	Direct Questions — **ne**, **nōnne**, **num**	125
XXXIX.	Review Exercise on Verbs — Review Word List	128
XL.	Imperative Mood, Active	130
XLI.	Pronouns, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive	134
XLII.	Pronouns, Demonstrative	138
XLIII.	Pronouns, Intensive	140
XLIV.	Relative or Conjunctive Pronoun	142
XLV.	Interrogative Pronoun	144
XLVI.	Indefinite Pronouns	146
XLVII.	The Passive Indicative of **Vocō**	149
XLVIII.	The Supine and the Perfect Passive Participle	152
XLIX.	The Perfect Passive Tenses of **Vocō**	155
L.	The Passive Indicative of **Moneō**	157
LI.	The Passive Indicative of **Regō**	160
LII.	The Passive Indicative of **Audiō**	164
	Synopsis of Regular Verbs — Indicative Active and Passive	166
LIII.	Imperative Mood, Passive	168

LESSON		PAGE
LIV.	Passive of Verbs like **Capiō**	171
LV.	Deponent Verbs	173
LVI.	Deponent Verbs (*continued*)	175
	Reading Lesson — Caesar's Landing in Britain	178
LVII.	Participles — **Vocō**	180
LVIII.	Participles — **Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō**	184
LIX.	Participles of Deponent Verbs	188
LX.	Ablative Absolute	190
LXI.	Ablative Absolute and the Perfect Participle	192
	Reading Lessons — The Greedy Dog — The Sacred Geese	196
LXII.	Infinitives — **Sum, Vocō, Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō**	198
LXIII.	The Formation of Infinitives	201
LXIV.	The Accusative and Infinitive	204
LXV.	Deponent Infinitives	207
LXVI.	*HOPE, PROMISE, UNDERTAKE*	209
	Reading Lesson — The Wolf and the Lamb	211
LXVII.	Verbs with the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative	212
	Reading Lesson — Perseus	214
LXVIII.	The Gerund	216
LXIX.	Object of the Gerund — Purpose	218
LXX.	The Gerundive — Periphrastic Passive	220
LXXI.	The Gerundive substituted for the Gerund	223
	Reading Lesson — Lōbō Rēx Currumpae, *From the Story of Ernest Thompson Seton*	227
LXXII.	The Subjunctive Mood — **Sum**	229
LXXIII.	Forms of the Subjunctive Active, **Vocō, Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō**	233
LXXIV.	Equivalents for the Perfect Participle	236
LXXV.	Forms of the Subjunctive Passive, **Vocō, Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō**	239
LXXVI.	Purpose Clauses — **Ut, Nē** — Sequence of Tenses	241
	Reading Lesson — Cincinnatus	243
LXXVII.	Dependent Questions	244
	Reading Lesson — Proserpina	245
LXXVIII.	Irregular Verbs — Present Indicative and Present Subjunctive of **Possum, Volō, Ferō, Edō, Fīō**	247
LXXIX.	**Possum** and Other Compounds of **Sum**	249
LXXX.	**Volō, Nōlō, Mālō**	251

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
LXXXI.	**Ferō** and its Compounds	253
LXXXII.	**Eō**	256
LXXXIII.	**Fiō** contrasted with **Faciō**	259
LXXXIV.	**Dō** and its Compounds	261
LXXXV.	Defective Verbs, **Coepī**, etc. — Impersonal Verbs	263
	Reading Lesson — Gossiping Habits of the Gauls	266
LXXXVI.	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	267
LXXXVII.	Result Clauses	269
	Reading Lesson — Charon	270
LXXXVIII.	Prepositions	272
	LIST OF VERBS	275–281
	SPECIAL VOCABULARIES, LESSONS I TO XXX	282–290

PART II

READING LESSONS

Fables	293
Stories of Early Rome	299
The Wanderings of Ulysses	303
The Capture of Quebec	309

PART III

SYNTAX

1. Review — Ablative Absolute — Deponent Participles — Accusative and Infinitive — Dependent Questions	313
2. Modal Verbs	314
3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose	314
4. Substantive Clauses of Result	318

CASES

5. Predicate Nominative — Apposition	319
6. The Genitive with Nouns	321
7. The Genitive with Adjectives	323
8. The Genitive with Verbs	325
9. The Dative	327

PAGE

10. The Accusative 332
11. The Ablative 336
12. Place and Time 342
13. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive 344
14. Oratio Obliqua 347
15. Final and Consecutive Relative 348
16. Verbs of Fearing 350
17. **Quōminus** and **Quīn** 351
18. The Causal Subjunctive 353
19. Conditional Sentences 355
20. Temporal Clauses 356
21. Concessive Clauses and Clauses of Comparison 359
22. Uses of the Latin Infinitive 361

SUMMARY OF FORMS FOR RAPID REVIEW OR A SHORT PREPARATORY COURSE 363–370

VOCABULARY — LATIN-ENGLISH 373

VOCABULARY — ENGLISH-LATIN 405

INDEX 425

ILLUSTRATIONS

The Death of Caesar . . . . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

Jupiter 5
Bronze Wolf of the Capitol 9
A Roman Legion on the March 11
Galea 13
Lōrica 15
Mars 16
[redacted] 23
Neptune 26
Apollo 35
Roman Arms and Armor 41
Roman Soldier attacking a Wall 44
Impedimenta 50
Mercury 51
Sarcinae 58
Vulcan 59
Testūdō 69
Juno 73
Hannibal crossing the Rhone 81
Julius Caesar landing in Britain 93
Lituus 106
Minerva 107
Vēxillum 114
Roman Standards 115
Venus 122
Toga 132
Diana 133

PAGE

Medusa 137
Sagittārius 145
Vesta 148
Scūtum 151
Catapulta 156
Ballista 159
Ceres 167
Signifer 170
Signum Legiōnis 172
British Warriors 178
Sacrifice to Bacchus 183
Bellae 187
Arīes 189
The Sacred Geese 197
The Wolf and the Lamb 211
Perseus and Andromeda 215
A Roman War Galley 229
Arietēs, Turrēs, Vineae 232
Pluto and Proserpina 246
Charon 271
The Fox and the Grapes 293
The Sabine Women 298
Departure of Regulus 302
Roman Legionary Soldier 312
Alexander the Great 362

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

THE Latin studied in schools is Classical Latin, that is, the language spoken and written by cultured Romans of the latter days of the Republic and the early days of the Empire (50 B.C.–50 A.D.), such as Julius Caesar, the great soldier, author and statesman; Cicero, the orator; Vergil and Horace, the two greatest Roman poets; and Livy, the historian.

Latin is usually thought of as a *dead* language, *but it lives* in the writings of these great men, just as does English or Chaucer (almost a foreign language to us) lives in his immortal "Canterbury Tales." It is the only universal language of men of letters to-day. It lives in thousands of words in our own language. It is the language of all the technicalities and maxims of the law courts. It is the language in which the ritual of the Roman Catholic Church is conducted in all countries and in which all the official documents of that church are promulgated.

Latin is a highly *inflectional* language as compared with English, which is almost entirely *analytical* or *non-inflectional*. Latin, as a result, is more terse, vigorous, and flexible. Rhythm and emphasis can be more freely secured in Latin, because in English the sense is shown almost entirely by a rather rigid order of words.

As a study, Latin is valuable for the following reasons: —

1. Because thirty per cent of English words are derived from Latin.

2. Because, being no longer used in every-day speech, it is fixed and affords an opportunity for studying the principles of language from an impartial standpoint.

3. Because the learning of it, by a peculiar exercise, trains the mind to be *observant*, *accurate* and *systematic*, and develops the faculty of *expression*.

4. Because its literature is a model and inspiration for all modern excellence in prose, poetry and oratory.

5. Because a knowledge of Latin is regarded as a foundation of all true liberal culture.

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

1. **The English Method.** — Few rules need be laid down for what is called the English Pronunciation of Latin. Latin words are pronounced very much as Latin roots in English words are pronounced. Care should be taken to learn the long and short vowels and to give full value to the former in the penult (or next to last) syllable. The penult should not be accented unless it is long, or unless there are only two syllables in the word, as —

amā́bimus, amābī́minī, amā́bat, pastṓris, imperā́tor, rḗgit.

Vowel Sounds

ā as in *fate.*	ă as in *fat.*
ē as in *mete.*	ĕ as in *met.*
ī as in *pine.*	ĭ as in *pin.*
ō as in *note.*	ŏ as in *not.*
ū as in *duty.*	ŭ as in *but.*

Diphthongs

ae = ee as in *feet.*
oe = ee as in *feet.*
au = aw as in *awl.*

No general rules are needed for consonants. c and g are usually hard (as in *cab* and *gave*) before a, o, u, and soft (as in *cent* and *regent*) before e and i.

2. The Roman Method. — By far the more accurate and scientific pronunciation of Latin is that known as the Roman. No one knows exactly how the Romans pronounced their language, but modern scholars have, through scientific research, arrived at an approximately correct system. This is undoubtedly a very close approach to the pronunciation used by cultured Romans at the height of their civilization, *i.e.* from 50 B.C. to 50 A.D.

1. *Vowels*

ā as in *far, father, ah.*
ē as in *they.*
ī as in *machine.*
ō as in *note.*
ū as in *rude* = *oo* in *groom, fool.*
y as in French u, German ü.

ă as in the first syllable of *aha.*
ĕ as in *met.*
ĭ as in *pin.*
ŏ as in *obey, melody.*
ŭ as in *pull, put, foot;* not as in *but.*

2. *Diphthongs*

ae like *ai* in *aisle*, or *a* in *fate.*
oe like *oi* in *oil.*
ei as in *rein.*
au like *ow* in *how.*
eu pronounced with ĕ and ŭ in rapid succession.
ui like *wee, e.g.* **cui** = *kwee*, **huic** = *wheek.*

3. *Consonants*

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, q as in English, except that bs, bt are sounded as ps, pt.
c always as k, never as s. (But **Cāius** is pronounced **Gāius.**)
t always as plain t, *e.g.* **ō-rā-tĭ-ō**, not like *sh* as in *oration.*
g always as in *get.*
j has the sound of *y* as in *yet.* (NOTE. — *j* is merely a mode of writing the consonant value of *i.* Many Latin texts print *j* as *i.*)
r slightly trilled.
s always voiceless as in *hiss*, never like *z* as in *his, wise.*
v like Eng. *v* or *w.* Very many use the *w* sound, but there are good reasons for the *v* sound.
x always like *ks*; never like *gz* as in *eggs.*
z probably like English *z.*

QUANTITY

Quantity is the distinction between long and short vowels or syllables. It is the same as *time* in music. A long vowel or syllable requires more time for its pronunciation than a short vowel or syllable.

A vowel may be long or short by its own nature. If the vowel is long, the syllable also must be long. A short vowel before two consonants may help to form (either by the prolongation of its own sound or by the obstruction occasioned by the consonants) a long syllable. The vowel is then sometimes said to be "long by position," and the consonants are said to "make position." The only evidence of such lengthening is to be found in metre, and, in the case of two consonants, metre does not show whether the length of the syllable is owing to the independent quantity of the vowel or to the effect of the two consonants upon a short vowel. In such cases, the quantity of the vowel is said to be "hidden." The quantity, then, must be determined by other evidences (see Preface).

The quantity of vowels must be learnt by observation and experience and, in the case of beginners, is best acquired by daily imitation from the lips of the teacher. A few rules, however, may be helpful: —

1. A vowel is *long*: —

(*a*) before **j** (consonantal **i**), **nf**, **ns**; often before **gn**, especially in nouns and adjectives ending in **-gnus**, **-gna**, **-gnum**; as **hūjus**, **īnfāns**, **sīgnum**, **māgnus**.

(*b*) in case of contraction, as **nīl** for **nihil**.

2. A vowel is usually *short* before a vowel or **h**, as **mĕus**, **trăhō**. Exceptions: **ūnius**, **Aenēas**, most forms of the verb **fīō**.

3. In metre, a short vowel is shown to produce a long syllable when followed by a double consonant (**x**, **z**) or two consonants (other than a mute and liquid, *e.g.* **pr**, **cl**): as, ăxis, găza, rĕstō.

Before a mute (**p**, **c**, **t**, **d**, etc.) followed by **l** or **r**, a short vowel may remain short or may produce a long syllable.

ACCENT

1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first; as **régĕ**.

2. In words of more than two syllables, if the penult (next to last) is long, it should be accented; otherwise the antepenult (second from the last); as —

amāvĕ́runt, but **amā́vĕrint**, **amāvĕ́rimus**.

JUPITER

(*Greek*, ZEUS)

(These Latin comments on mythology are not inserted as part of the pupil's course in grammar. They may be used inductively by the teacher to arouse interest and afterwards re-read by the pupil when his grammatical knowledge admits.)

Jūpiter est optimus et māximus deōrum. Pater deūm virūmque appellātur. In Olympō habitat, conciliō superōrum praesidet. Dextrā manū fulmen tenet, in malōs jactat. Quercus est eī sacra. Neptūnus et Plūtō ējus frātrēs sunt. Patrem Sāturnum rēgnō dēturbāvit; Tītānōs fulminibus suīs et Gigantēs superāvit.

LESSON I

A Latin verb may be used alone to make a statement. The pronouns as subjects are not required except for emphasis, the pronominal meanings being indicated by the endings of the verb, which were themselves once unattached pronouns.

First Conjugation of Verbs

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

Vocō, *I call*; Stem[1] **vocā-**

	Singular	
1.	voc**ō**	(1) *I call*, (2) *am calling*, (3) *do call.*
2.	voc**ā s**	*thou callest, art calling*, etc. / *you call* (addressed to one person).
3.	voca **t**	*he* (she, it, some one) *calls*, etc.
	Plural	
1.	voc**ā mus**	*we call*, etc.
2.	voc**ā tis**	*you* or *ye call*, etc.
3.	voca **nt**	*they call*, etc.

nōn vocat, *he calls not = he does not call; is not calling.*

1. Observe the position of **nōn**, — before the word negatived.
2. Observe the *stem* **vocā-**. This is called the **Present stem.**
3. Observe the endings and their values; as —

-s = *thou*, **-mus** = *we*, **-nt** = *they*, etc.

The following verbs are inflected like **vocō** : —

amō, *love.*
pugnō, *fight.*
superō, *overcome, conquer, surpass.*
vulnerō, *wound.*
dō, *give* (except that the stem is **dă-**).
portō, *carry.*
nūntiō, *announce, report.*
creō, *create, appoint.*
parō, *prepare.*
laudō, *praise.*
cantō, *sing.*
necō, *kill.*
rēgnō, *reign.*

[1] *Stem* : that part of a word on which the inflections are based; usually the part that does not change.

Pres. Indic. of **dō**, *I give.*

dō	dāmus
dās	dātis
dat	dant

Note the short vowel in **dămus, dătis.**

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 282*)

A. 1. Portant, portāmus, nōn portās.
2. Laudātis, nōn superās, nūntiant, dătis.
3. Vĕnus amat; Mārs pugnat; Jūpiter vulnerat et rēgnat.
4. Quis dat? Nōn dămus; nōn dās.
5. Deus creat. Quis necat?
6. Parās, nōn portātis, nūntiāmus.
7. Deus et amat et dat.
8. Neque dās neque vulnerās.
9. Minerva pugnat sed nōn amat.
10. Cantāmus, superātis, superās.

B. 1. Mercury announces. Who fights?
2. We do not kill but love.
3. Thou preparest, ye are not giving, thou dost not give.
4. You (sing.) overcome; you (plur.) are not wounding.
5. They wound, but they do not kill.
6. We fight not, neither do we kill.
7. You (sing.) neither give nor praise.
8. Diana wounds; the Muse sings.
9. We both fight and conquer.
10. Minerva loves not but she fights.
11. You (sing.) report; you (plur.) are not singing.
12. Mars fights; who reigns and wounds?
13. You (sing.) are both fighting and conquering.

LESSON II

CASE

Latin has six cases.

Their values may be briefly stated as follows:—

LATIN CASES

Name of Case	Answers the Question	Chief Uses
1. **Nominative**	Who? what?	1. **Subject.** 2. Predicate of such verbs as "*be*," "*become*," "*am called*," etc.
2. **Genitive**	Whose? of what?	= Eng. **Possessive with** *'s*, or **Objective with** *of*. Used to define or restrict the application of Nouns and certain Adjectives.
3. **Dative** (datus, *given*)	To or for whom? To or for what? (*Not motion to or towards*)	**Indirect Object.** To denote the **receiver**, or the person or thing indirectly affected, favorably or unfavorably. Also used with certain Adjectives.
4. **Accusative**	Whom? what?	1. **Direct Object.** 2. Object of many Prepositions, as **ad**, *to, towards;* **in**, *into;* **per**, *through;* **trāns**, *across.*
5. **Vocative** (vocō, *I call*)	———	Eng. **Nominative of Address.**
6. **Ablative**	From whom or what? By, with, in whom or what?	To denote **separation, source, cause, manner, means, place in which,** and certain other relations. The Ablative often requires a preposition to define its meaning, as:—**in terrā**, *in* or *on the earth.*

An **Appositive** agrees in case with the word to which it stands in apposition.

Latin has no **Article**. Hence **terra** = *a land* or *the land*.

EXERCISE

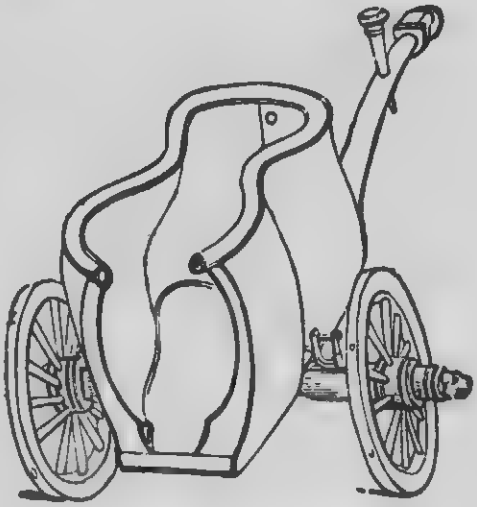
1. Write out from memory the *names* of the Latin cases in the order given.

2. Give orally their most common *values* or *uses*, with English examples.

3. Which case denotes *the possessor? the receiver? separation?* Which are used as Direct Object, Indirect Object, Nominative of Address?

4. How are *by, of, with, 's,* the person *to whom* a thing is given, *for whom* a thing is done, *motion towards,* expressed?

5. What case would each of the following govern: *send to, say to, call a person to, make a thing for, set out for, go to, easy for, useful to?*



ROMAN CHARIOT

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION

"A" Stems

Terra, *the earth, a land;* stem, **terrā-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	terr **a**	terr **ae**
Gen.	terr **ae**	terr **ārum**
Dat.	terr **ae**	terr **īs**
Acc.	terr **am**	terr **ās**
Voc.	terr **a**	terr **ae**
Abl.	terr **ā**	terr **īs**

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 282*)

A. 1. Canada est patria nostra.
2. Canadam, patriam nostram, amāmus.
3. Incolae Britanniae corōnam rēgīnae dant.
4. Britannia colōniās habet.
5. Canada et Austrālia sunt colōniae.
6. In Āfricā quŏque sunt colōniae Britanniae.
7. Prōvinciās septem habet Canada.
8. Manitōba est Canadae prōvincia.
9. Nova Scōtia quŏque et Columbia Britannica sunt prōvinciae.
10. Colōniārum prīma est Canada.
11. Cūr, agricola, Italiam amās? Quod agricolārum patria est.

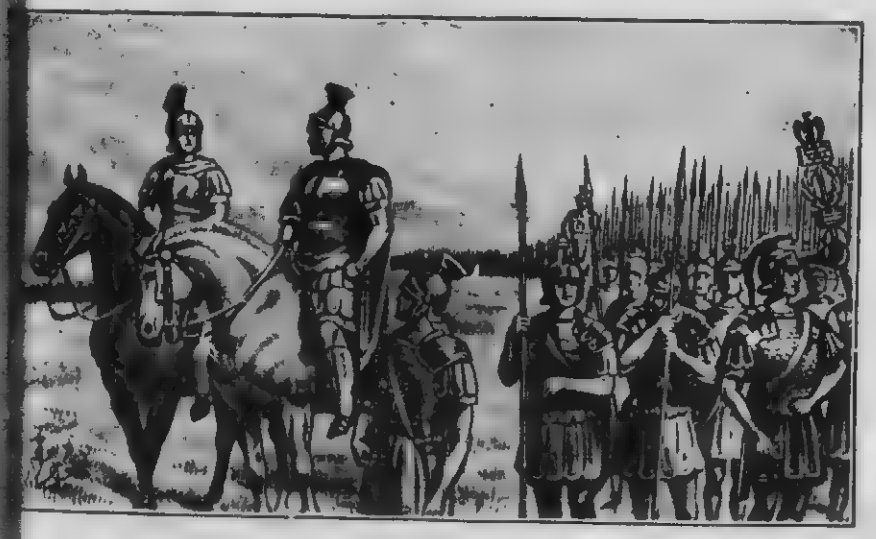
B. 1. Rome is in Italy.
2. Britain was a province of Rome.
3. Italy is a land of Europe.

4. The farmer ploughs the land.
5. The inhabitants of the provinces love (their) native land.
6. Sailors love the waves, nor do they shun the storm-blast.
7. We give the queen a crown.
8. She loves roses.
9. A rose also we give (her).

C. Answer the following questions by single words in Latin: —

(*The questions are not to be translated into Latin.*)

1. **Whom** does the storm not terrify? (The sailor.)
2. **To whom** have we given a crown? (To the queen.)
3. **Whose** colony is Canada? (Britain's.)
4. **Who** loves the waves and storms? (The sailor.)



A Roman Legion on the March

Lēgātī agmen mīlitum Rōmānōrum dūcunt

LESSON IV

1. **Motion to** is expressed by the preposition **ad** *and the Accusative*,[1] not by the Dative; as **Ad terram nāvigat,** *He sails to (towards) the land.*

2. **The English "in" or "on"** is translated by the Latin preposition **in** *and the Ablative*,[1] denoting **rest** or continuance *in* or *on a place*, as **in prōvinciā,** *in the province;* **in terrā,** *on the earth.*

3. **The English "into"** is translated by the Latin preposition **in** *and the Accusative*, denoting **motion,** as **In aquam rosam jactat,** *He throws the rose into the water.*

Dea, *a goddess,* and **fīlia,** *a daughter,* often take **-ābus** in the Dat. and Abl. plur., instead of **-īs,** to distinguish these forms from those of **deus,** *a god,* and **fīlius,** *a son.*

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 283*)

A. 1. Puellae rosās ad scholam portant.
2. Magistrae rosās dat puella.
3. Puellās in scholam magistra vocat.
4. Magistra fīliābus agricolārum fābulās in scholā nārrat.
5. Rosās in viam magistra nōn jactat, sed in scholam portat. Nunc in aquā sunt.
6. Puellae fābulās magistrae amant; rosās puellārum magistra. (What Latin verb is understood here?)
7. Ārās deābus incolae aedificant.

[1] It is really the Accusative or Ablative that denotes *motion to* or *rest in*. The preposition merely helps to define the meaning. Prepositions were originally adverbs.

B. 1. They carry roses to the altars of the goddesses.
2. We give wreaths of roses to the goddesses.
3. We carry to the altar. They give to the goddess.
4. The island is amid (= in) the waves.
5. They do not throw the roses into the water.
6. Why, farmers, do ye give your daughters neither money nor roses?
7. Why does the teacher tell the girls stories?
8. Because she loves the girls.
9. Why do they bring roses to the teacher? Because they love the teacher.
10. The teacher loves both girls and roses; the girls both stories and teacher.

C. Answer the following in Latin: —

1. **To whom** do the girls give roses? (To the teacher.)
2. **Whither** are they carrying roses? (To school.)
3. **What** do the girls love to hear?
4. **What** are dear to the teacher? (The girls' roses.)
5. **Whose** altars are they building? (The goddesses'.)

GALEA

Multa arma habet mīles Rōmānus.

Galea caput tegit.

Praeter hanc sunt lōrīca, scūtum, ocreae.

LESSON V

CHIEFLY ON THE ABLATIVE AND CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS

1. **The English word "with"** has two values: —

(1) In the sense "*by means of*" it is translated by the **bare Ablative** (called the **Ablative of Means** or **Instrument**), as: — **Nautam hastā necat,** *He kills the sailor with a spear.*

(2) When it means "*together with*," "*accompanied by*," it is translated by the *preposition* **cum** *and the Ablative* (called the **Ablative of Accompaniment**), as: — **Agricola est cum nautā,** *The farmer is with the sailor.*

2. "**For**" does not always indicate the Dative. When "for" means "*in behalf of*," "*in defence of*," "*instead of*," "*in return for*," it is translated by **prō** *and the Ablative.* **Prō** primarily means "*in front of.*"

3. **Ā, ab,** "(*away*) *from*," and **ē, ex,** "*out of*," govern the **Ablative of Separation** (**ā, ē,** before consonants, except **h**; **ab, ex,** before vowels and some consonants).

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 283*)

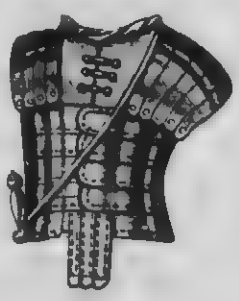
A. 1. Agricola aquilam sagittā vulnerat.
2. Aquila nunc in aquā est.
3. Puellae cum magistrā in scholā sunt.
4. Cūr, nautae, agricolās hastīs vulnerātis?
5. Undae agricolās cum nautīs ad ōram portant.
6. Magistra cum fīliābus agricolārum in umbrā est silvārum.
7. Incolae Italiae prō ārīs et deābus pugnant.

8. Diāna bestiās sagittīs in silvā vulnerat.
9. Ārās deārum, puellae, corōnīs rosārum ōrnātis.
10. Ab ōrīs Britanniae undae nautās portant.
11. Prō ārīs deārum pugnant.
12. Puellae prō portīs scholae cantant.
13. Ā viā errāmus neque rosās ad scholam portāmus.

B. 1. Out of the water; away from the islands.
2. Out of the gates; away from school.
3. The girls are adorning the teacher's table with roses.
4. The inhabitants of the islands are in the arena with the beasts.
5. We fight for (our) native land.
6. Diana wounds the beasts with arrow and spear.

ON PREPOSITIONS

1. Among the woods.
2. Through the water.
3. Around the island.
4. In front of the gates of the school.
5. Across the waves.
6. Into the arena.
7. They sail to the island.
8. We give to the queen.
9. With the queen.



LŌRĪCA

Lōrīca corpus tegit.

MARS

(*Greek*, ARĒS)

Mārs est bellī deus. Ab eō populus Rōmānus ortus est. Fīlius enim ējus, Rōmulus, Rōmam urbem condidit. Mēnsis Mārtius dē ējus nōmine appellātur. In Campō Mārtiō mīlitēs Rōmānī, aciē īnstrūctā, exercēbantur.

LESSON VI

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES

Note the following forms with their names and values: —

PRESENT	**vocō**	(1) *I call,* (2) *am calling,* (3) *do call.*
IMPERFECT	**vocā bam**	(1) *I was calling,* (2) *used to call,* (3) *called, did call* (repeatedly).
FUTURE	**vocā bō**	(1) *I shall call,* (2) *shall be calling.*

IMPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR

1.	**vocā́ ba m**	*I was calling; used to call,* etc.
2.	**vocā́ bā s**	*thou wast calling,* etc.
3.	**vocā́ ba t**	*he was calling,* etc.

PLURAL

1.	**vocā bā́ mus**	*we were calling,* etc.
2.	**vocā bā́ tis**	*you were calling,* etc.
3.	**vocā́ ba nt**	*they were calling,* etc.

FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR

1.	**vocā́ bō**	*I shall call; shall be calling.*
2.	**vocā́ bi s**	*thou wilt call,* etc.
3.	**vocā́ bi t**	*he will call,* etc.

PLURAL

1.	**vocā́ bi mus**	*we shall call,* etc.
2.	**vocā́ bi tis**	*you will call,* etc.
3.	**vocā́ bu nt**	*they will call,* etc.

Observe the **tense stems**: —

PRESENT	**vocā**	*call, calling.*
IMPERFECT	**vocā bā**	*was calling.*
FUTURE	**vocā bi**	*shall (will) call.* (Also **-bō, -bu.**)

IMPERFECT SIGN **-bā-** = *was, used to.*

FUTURE SIGN **-bi** (**-bō** in 1 sing., and **-bu** in 3 plur.) = *shall, will.*

PERSONAL (OR PRONOMINAL) ENDINGS

-m = *I.*	**-mus** = *we.*
-s = *thou (you).*	**-tis** = *you (ye).*
-t = *he,* etc.	**-nt** = *they.*

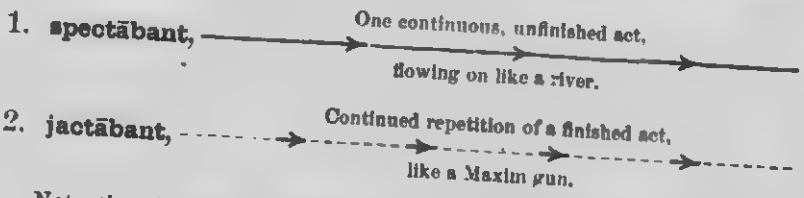
These are almost the same in all tenses. The full set is in the imperfect. In **vocō** and **vocābō** the **-m** is lost.

vocā ba m	**vocā bi mus**
calling was I	*call shall we*

VALUES OF THE IMPERFECT

Study the meanings of the imperfect in the following: —

1. **Stellās tōtam noctem spectābant** = *All night they watched (continued, without interruption, to watch) the stars.*
2. **Hastās jactābant** = *They hurled (kept hurling) their spears (at intervals).*



Note that in Latin grammar the term "Imperfect" is used as a short substitute for "Past Imperfect."

RULE. — **The Imperfect (as its name implies) is used to denote an act or state of affairs viewed as not completed.**

The most characteristic use of the Imperfect is to describe the circumstance or situation.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 283*)

A. 1. Jactābant, jactābunt, errābit, errābimus.
2. Vocābis, vocābātis, vocābitis, vocābās.
3. Nautae ab ōrīs nāvigābant.
4. Quandō ex Britanniā nāvigābunt?
5. Stellās et lūnam exspectābant.
6. Nōn terram dēsīderant neque procellās vītant.
7. Puellās in scholam vocābō.
8. Magistra puellās ad portam vocābat.
9. Cūr, agricolae, prō portīs pugnābātis?
10. Quandō procella nautās in undīs jactābit?
11. Nūntiās, nūntiābās, nūntiābis.
12. Arābunt, arābātis, nōn arās, arābis.
13. Portābāmus, vocābimus, vulnerābunt.

B. 1. He will praise, was praising, is praising.
2. They watched for the moon.
3. We shall announce to the que the flight of the sailors.
4. Diana used to wound the beasts of the forest with arrows.
5. The girls were standing in front of the doors.
6. We shall not kill the beast in front of the altar.
7. They are standing, they stood, they will stand.
8. Thou givest, thou wilt give, ye will give, ye were giving.
9. They wandered through the woods.
10. They will not long for the land.

The Trojan war, 1194–1184 B.C.

Aeneas sails to Italy. Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome, founded by his son Iulus.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION

"O" Stems

Servus, *a slave;* stem, **servŏ-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	serv **us**	serv **ī**
Gen.	serv **ī**	serv **ōrum**
Dat.	serv **ō**	serv **īs**
Acc.	serv **um**	serv **ōs**
Voc.	serv **ĕ**	serv **ī**
Abl.	serv **ō**	serv **īs**

1. Earlier Latin shows servŏs (Nom.), servom (Acc.). Compare servŏs, servom, servō, servōrum, servōs with terrā, terram, terrā, terrārum, terrās, and note the **prevalent form of the stem,**

servŏ- **terrā-**

2. The declension of **deus**, *a god*, is irregular.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	deus	deī, dīī, or dī
Gen.	deī	deōrum or deūm
Dat.	deō	deīs, dīīs, or dīs
Acc.	deŭm	deōs
Voc.	(lacking)	deī, dīī, or dī
Abl.	deō	deīs, dīīs, or dīs

Distinguish **deŭm** and **deūm.**

For the Voc., the Nom. form **deus** is sometimes given.

3. (1) **Proper names** ending in **-ius** and **fīlius**, *a son*, contract **-ie** of the Voc. sing. into **-ī.**

(2) They usually contract **-īī** of the Gen. sing. into **-ī.**

Mercŭrī, (1) *of Mercury*, (2) *O Mercury.*
fīlī mī, *O my son.*
fīlī (or **fīlĭ**) **meī**, *of my son.*

Note that in the contracted form **Mercŭrī** the accent is on the penult, though short; see page 4.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 284*)

A. 1. Gallī lēgātōs ōrant.
2. Gallōs equī dēlectant.
3. Hortum arābimus.
4. In hortō sunt rosae.
5. Prō dominō servus pugnābit.
6. Britannia in Ōceanō est.
7. Cūr, fīlī, nōn in hortō arās? Quod umbram fāgōrum amō.
8. Fīliō et fīliae pecūniam dat.
9. Prō dīs et deābus pugnābunt.
10. Deōs et deās amābant.
11. Mūrōs et ārās aedificant.
12. Populum laudat, nōn deōs culpat.
13. Cūr, domine, servō pecūniam nōn dās.
14. Lēgātōs Gallōrum exspectat.
15. Amīcōs laudāmus, inimīcōs vītāmus.

B. 1. They deck the altars of the gods and goddesses.
2. He will build a wall and an altar.
3. He was sailing into the ocean.
4. The garden delights the eyes of the master.
5. The beech-trees give shade to the slaves.
6. The slaves are in the garden with the master's sons.
7. Why, slave, dost thou not love thy master?
8. The slaves will not shun the eyes of their masters.
9. The Romans are on a mound.
10. The sailor loves the winds. He sails by the wind.
11. They give money to (their) sons and daughters.

Romulus and Remus, according to the Roman legend, were the sons of the god Mars and Rhea Silvia, a Vestal priestess and a descendant of Aeneas. Hence the Romans were the "Sons of Mars."

LESSON VIII

SECOND DECLENSION

NOUNS ENDING IN -er AND -ir

Puer, *a boy* Stem, **puerŏ-** Bare stem, **puer-**
Ager, *a field* Stem, **agrŏ-** Bare stem, **agr-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	puer	puer ī	ager	agr ī
Gen.	puer ī	puer **ōrum**	agr ī	agr **ōrum**
Dat.	puer **ō**	puer **īs**	agr **ō**	agr **īs**
Acc.	puer **um**	puer **ōs**	agr **um**	agr **ōs**
Voc.	puer	puer ī	ager	agr ī
Abl.	puer **ō**	puer **īs**	agr **ō**	agr **īs**

1. What endings are lacking in the Nom. and Voc. sing. ?

2. Note that in **ager** the bare stem **agr-** is developed in the Nom. and Voc. into the fuller form **ager** owing to the absence of the ending.

3. Most words of the second declension ending in **er-** are like **ager**; as —

lĭber, lĭbrī, *a book.*
făber, făbrī, *a workman.*
magister, magistrī, *a master* (teacher), *captain* (of a boat).

The following are declined like **puer**: —

gener, generī, *son-in-law.*
socer, socerī, *father in-law.*
Lĭber, Lĭberī, *Bacchus, the god of wine.*
lĭberī, -ōrum, *children.*
Compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, *e.g.*
aquilifer, *a standard-bearer,*
armiger, *armor-bearer.*

Vir, *a man*; stem, **virŏ-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	vir	virī
Gen.	virī	virōrum
Dat.	virō	virīs
Acc.	virum	virōs
Voc.	vir	virī
Abl.	virō	virīs

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 284*)

A. 1. Puerōs magistrī laudābunt.
2. Puerī lūdōs spectābant.
3. Librōs ad scholam portāmus.
4. Cūr, puer, librum nōn spectās?
5. Sīgniferī aquilās portant.
6. Fabrōs ex Galliā in Britanniam trānsportābit.
7. Mālōs amant puerī. Puerōs virī fugant.
8. Librōs discipulīs dabunt.
9. Gallōs in fugam dat.
10. Rhēnus et Rhodanus sunt fluviī Galliae.

B. 1. The masters are with the boys in the field.
2. The lieutenant gives the eagle to the standard-bearer.
3. The Germans lay waste the villages of the Gauls on the banks of the river Rhine.
4. The workmen will give books to their children.
5. The men and the boys were ploughing the field.
6. Through the field; in the field; into the fields.
7. In the book; in the books; of the books; of the children.
8. In the rivers; we carry to the river; out of the river; away from the river; across the rivers.

Tuba mīlitēs Rōmānōs ad proelium convocat

LESSON IX

GENDER

1. Observe the gender of the following nouns: —

Feminine	Masculine
rēgīna, *queen.*	**dominus**, *lord, master.*
fīlia, *daughter.*	**servus**, *slave.*
dea, *goddess.*	**lēgātus**, *lieutenant.*
puella, *girl.*	**puer**, *boy.*
magistra, *mistress.*	**magister**, *master.*

This is according to meaning and is called **Natural Gender**, *i.e.* gender based upon sex.

2. Observe the following: —

Feminine	Masculine
porta, *gate.*	**hortus**, *garden.*
insula, *island.*	**oculus**, *eye.*
patria, *native land.*	**gladius**, *sword.*
	ager, *field.*
	liber, *book.*

In English all of these names of *inanimate objects* are *neuter.* The Latins seem to have formed the impression, from such nouns as in section 1, that words ending in **-a** of the first declension, irrespective of sex, should be *feminine*, and that those of the second declension ending in **-us** and **-er** should be *masculine.* Hence arose what is called **Grammatical Gender**, *i.e.* gender based upon *grammatical form* apart from the meaning.

Exceptions to the rules for Grammatical Gender are often met with: —

MASCULINE EXCEPTIONS

First Declension

nauta, *sailor.* **agricola**, *farmer.*

incola, *inhabitant* (this is of common gender; *i.e.* may be masculine or feminine). **poēta**, *poet.*

Hadria, *the Adriatic* (a kind of personification based upon the notion of strength, violence).

FEMININE EXCEPTIONS

Second Declension

Most names of trees, *e.g.*:— Also:—

fāgus, *beech.* **humus**, *ground.*
mālus, *apple-tree.* **alvus**, *belly.*
ornus, *ash-tree.*

NEUTER EXCEPTIONS

Second Declension

vīrus, *poison.*
vulgus, *crowd.* } These nouns are not used in the plural.
pelagus, *sea.* } **Vulgus** is sometimes masculine.

Special Rules of Gender:—

1. Names of trees are usually feminine, as **mālus**, *apple-tree.*
2. Indeclinable nouns are neuter, as **nihil**, *nothing;* **nefās**, *wrong.*

Nouns ending in **-um** are, without exception, *Neuter* (*see next lesson*); as—

bellum, *war.* **signum**, *standard, image.*
proelium, *battle.* **templum**, *temple.*
perīculum, *danger.* **rēgnum**, *kingdom.*
oppidum, *town.*

EXERCISE

State the gender of the following nouns, pointing out instances of grammatical gender, and indicate exceptions:—

1. patria, dea, Hadria, hortus, servus, bellum, pelagus.
2. ager, puer, liber, Liber, magistra, incola, porta, vulgus.
3. oculus, signum, vīrus, fāgus, vir, nauta, humus.

NEPTUNE

(*Greek*, POSEIDON)

Deus marīnus est Neptūnus, Jovis et Plūtōnis frāter. Neptūnus et Apollō ōlim mūrōs Trōjae, rēgis Lāomedontis rogātū, aedificāvērunt. Ubi opus cōnfēcērunt, rēx eīs praemia pacta dare nōluit. Neptūnus horribile mōnstrum ē marī mīsit fīliam rēgis perfidī dēvorātum. Herculēs hōc mōnstrum necāvit et virginem Hēsionēn servāvit.

LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION

NEUTER NOUNS

Bellum, *war*; stem, **bellŏ-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	bell **um**	bell **a**
Gen.	bell **ī**	bell **ōrum**
Dat.	bell **ō**	bell **īs**
Acc.	bell **um**	bell **a**
Voc.	bell **um**	bell **a**
Abl.	bell **ō**	bell **īs**

Rule for Neuter Nouns of All Declensions: —

(*See pages 60 and 85 for neuters of the third and fourth declensions.*)

1. Nom., Acc. and Voc. are always alike.
2. These three cases in the plural always end in **-ă**.

Lŏcus, *a place*, has two plurals, one neuter, the other masculine; as —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		PLURAL	
Nom.	locus, *place*	(1)	loca, *places*	(2)	locī, *topics*
Gen.	locī		locōrum		locōrum
Dat.	locō		locīs		locīs
Acc.	locum		loca		locōs
Voc.	loce		loca		locī
Abl.	locō		locīs		locīs

The word **castra**, **-ōrum**, *a camp*, is plural in form, and usually singular in meaning. The sing. **castrum** means *a fort*. Similarly,

impedīmentum, *a hindrance.*
frūmentum, *grain, corn.*
auxilium, *aid, assistance.*
cōpia, *plenty.*

impedīmenta, *baggage.*
frūmenta, *crops.*
auxilia, *reinforcements.*
cōpiae, (1) *supplies*, (2) *military forces.*

NEUTER NOUNS

arma, -ōrum, n. plur. *defensive armor*, is never used in the singular.

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** until the reign of Augustus formed the Gen. sing. in **-ī** (instead of **-iī**); as —

Nom.	ingenium	filius
Gen.	ingenī	filī

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 284*)

A. 1. Sīgna Rōmānōrum erant aquilae.
2. In proeliīs aquilās et pīla portābant.
3. Aurum et argentum in periculō sunt.
4. Gladiōs et tēla, fundās et hastās et sagittās portant.
5. Arma Rōmānōrum erant galeae et scūta et lōrīcae.
6. Rōmānī tēla saxaque tormentīs jactābunt.
7. Sīgna in castra portant; in castrīs sunt.
8. Ferrō Gallōs superant Rōmānī.
9. Inter carrōs et impedīmenta pugnant.
10. Impedīmenta carrīs jūmentīsque portābant; sarcinās et tēla et arma brachiīs et humerīs.
11. Praemia puerīs dant magistrī.
12. Lūnam stellāsque spectāmus. In caelō sunt.
13. Castra vāllō et fossā circumdabimus.

B. 1. The Romans occupy places on the banks of the river Rhine.
2. The Germans seize the towns and villages of the Gauls.
3. In the towns of the Romans (there) are temples.
4. They carry their (heavy) baggage and (personal) baggage to the gates of the camp.
5. Into the towns; into the street; into the camp.
6. In the street; in the camp; in the town; in Gaul.
7. They lay waste both fields and buildings.

Review Word List

Give Latin words for: —

1. Camp, ditch, rampart, gate, street.
2. Armor, missile, spear, javelin, arrow, sword, sling, war engine, standard, eagle, gold, silver, iron.
3. Wagon, horse, beast of burden, arm (of the body), shoulder.
4. Town, village, temple, building, river, bank, place, places.
5. Sky, star, moon, earth.

READING LESSON

THE TROJAN WAR

(*For Vocabulary, see page 285*)

Translate: —

Decem annōrum bellum apud Trōjam erat inter Graecōs et Trōjānōs. Trōjānum bellum poētae appellant. Helena erat causa bellī. Priamus in oppidō Trōjā rēgnābat. Paris, Priamī fīlius, ad oppidum Spartam nāvigat et Helenam ex oppidō portat.

Menelāus, vir Helenae, in oppidō Spartā rēgnābat. Cum Trōjānīs Menelāus et Graecī bellant. Multa et horrida in bellō Trōjānō proelia erant. In oppidō erant māgna et splendida templa atque aedificia. Equum māgnum ex līgnō Graecī fabricant. In equō multōs virōs occultant. Trōjānī rotīs equum in oppidum trahunt.[1] Graecī ex equō sē[2] dēmittunt.[1] Ita oppidum expugnant; templa et aedificia vāstant; Priamum necant. Helenam ad Graeciam portat Menelāus.

Idiom is a peculiarity of expression belonging to one language as compared with another.

[1] A verb of the third conjugation; see p. 45.
[2] *themselves*, a Reflexive Pronoun.

Note the following differences of Latin and English idiom that occur in the preceding narrative:—

	English	Latin
1.	Ten years' war	war of ten years
2.	(There) was	no word for introductory "there"
3.	The town (of) Sparta	the town Sparta
4.	Many splendid temples	many and splendid

5. Note the free use of the Historical (Vivid) Present in Latin.

Review Word Lists

1	2	3	4
ulnerō	puer	rīpa	umbra
superō	vir	fluvius	fāgus
quis	discipulus	vīcus	mālus
cūr, quod	magister	oppidum	ornus
et	magistra	castra	ōrō
neque...neque	dominus	locus	aedificō
et...et	servus	errō	populus
atque	fīlia	nāvigō	lēgātus
parō	fīlius	stella	ōrnō
necō	dea	lūna	vāstō
nūntiō	deus	caelum	nūntius
quoque	ager	-que	amīcus
est, sunt	vītō	dēsīderō	inimīcus
unda	vīta	quandō	Gallus
ōra	fābula	vocō	Gallia
procella	āra	lūdus	līber
aqua	arō	fuga	faber
aquila	jactō	stō	Līber
corōna	portō	pecūnia	līberī
rēgīna	porta	hortus	incola
puella	silva	mūrus	

5	6	7	8
vīrus	vāllum	queen	boy
vir	fossa	crown	son
vulgus	impedīmenta	rose	girl
pelagus	sarcinae	island	daughter
bellum	carrus	river	pupil
proelium	loca	bank	teacher
perīculum	arma	coast	master
sīgnum	gladius	place	slave
tēlum	ferrum	places	workman
scūtum	aurum	town	book
tormentum	argentum	land	children
oppidum	pīlum	sea	altar
templum	hasta	wave	temple
aedificium	sagitta	storm	building
rēgnum	funda	shade	people
frūmentum	galea	forest	god
castra	saxum	man	goddess

9	10	11	12
conquer	arma	*Tell the case governed by prepositions*	
fight	missile		
wound	spear	through	and
kill	javelin	across	both . . . and
flight	shield	into	neither . . . nor
put to rout	arrow	in	but
war	sword	in front of	also
battle	sling	why?	heavy baggage
camp	war-engine	who?	personal baggage
ditch	stone, rock	because	eagle
rampart	report	when?	eagle-bearer
gate	village	away from	
street	lieutenant	out of	
field	standard	towards, to	
	ambassador	between	

LESSON XI

PERFECT TENSES

The following is the complete set of tenses for the Indicative Mood: —

PRESENT	**vocō**, *I call, am calling, do call.*
IMPERFECT	**vocā bam**, *I called (repeatedly), was calling.*
FUTURE	**vocā bō**, *I shall call.*
PERFECT	**vocāv ī**, 1. *I have called.* 2. *I called (once).*
PLUPERFECT	**vocāv eram**, *I had called.*
FUTURE PERFECT	**vocāv erō**, *I shall have called.*

Perfect stem, **vocāv-**

Similarly

dō	dĕd ī
dă bam	dĕd eram
dă bō	ded erō

Perfect stem, **dĕd-**

PERFECT

vocāv ī	**vocāv ĭmus**
vocāv istī	**vocāv istis**
vocāv it	**vocāv ērunt**

So also **dedī, dedistī, dedit**, etc.

PLUPERFECT

vocāv ĕram	**vocāv ĕrāmus**
vocāv ĕrās	**vocāv ĕrātis**
vocāv ĕrat	**vocāv ĕrant**

FUTURE PERFECT

vocāv ĕrō	**vocāv ĕrimus**
vocāv ĕris	**vocāv ĕritis**
vocāv ĕrit	**vocāv ĕrint**

Distinguish **vocāvērunt, vocāvĕrant, vocāvĕrint.**

In the principal parts of a verb, as usually stated in dictionaries (*e.g.* **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum**), the order is 1. **Pres. Indic.**; 2. **Pres. Infin.**; 3. **Perf. Indic.**; 4. **Supine** (see p. 152). These show the different **stems** of the verb. The **perfect stem** is always obtained from the third principal part, *e.g.*:—

dō, dăre, dĕd ī, dătum	Perf. stem, **dĕd-**
regō, regĕre, rēx ī, rēctum . . .	" **rēx-**
mittō, mittĕre, mīs ī, missum . .	" **mīs-**

From these we get

Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.
ded ī	**ded eram**	**ded erō**
rēx ī	**rēx eram**	**rēx erō**
mīs ī	**mīs eram**	**mīs erō**

Note. — There are four conjugations of the Verb, indicated by the ending of the Pres. Infin. (see p. 40). So far, however, as the endings of the Perfect system of tenses are concerned, all verbs are alike. The formation of these tenses is merely a question of knowing the perfect stem.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 285*)

A. 1. Form perfects from **vulnerō, nūntiō, creō, stō, gerō, videō, dūcō, cognōscō.**
2. Form pluperfects from **ōrō, moneō, scribō.**
3. Form future perfects from **parō, secō, audiō, capiō.**

B. 1. vocās, vocābātis, vocāvistī, vocāverāmus.
2. superāvit, superābat, superābit, superāverat.
3. nūntiābant, nūntiāvērunt, nūntiāverint.
4. parāverāmus, parābāmus, parābimus.
5. parāvimus, parāverimus, parāmus.
6. stetit, stat, stābat, stābit, steterat.
7. dūxit, vīderat, scrīpserit, monuit.

8. Veniam ōrāvērunt.
9. Rōmānōs exspectābant.
10. Arma parāverant et in castrīs stābant.
11. Lēgātum hastīs vulnerāverant.
12. Mercurius dīs bellum nūntiāverit.
13. Populō Rōmānō nūntiī proelium nūntiāvērunt.
14. Epistolam ad amīcum scrīpsĕrat.
15. Vēnī īdī, vīcī (see vĕniō, vĭdeō, vincō).

C. 1. They are calling, they called (repeatedly), they have called, he called (once).
2. We continued to pray, we prayed (as a completed act), we shall pray, we had prayed.
3. He will wound, he will have wounded, they will have wounded, they will wound.
4. We were standing, we are standing, we stood (= *came to a halt*).
5. They will give, they were giving, they gave (once), they gave (habitually), they had given, they will have given.
6. The Greeks were fighting ten years (Acc.). At last they captured Troy.
7. He came, he saw, he conquered.
8. The temples stood in the forum. (What tense is suitable here?)
9. The Gauls had carried the baggage into the camp.
10. The Romans put the Gauls to flight.

LEGENDS OF ANCIENT ROME

Romulus and Remus
The Sabine Women
The Tarpeian Rock
Romulus' Miraculous Disappearance
The Horatii and Curiatii

(*See Roman History*)

APOLLO

(*Greek*, PHOEBUS OR APOLLO)

From a photograph of the famous statue, Apollo Belvidere, discovered 1503 A.D.

Apollō et Diāna Lātōnā nātī sunt. Pater utrīusque Jūpiter. Dum māter Jūnōnem īrātam fugit, ad īnsulam Dēlon pervēnit. Ibi geminōs deōs parturit. Apollō arcum tenet; sagittās morbum ferentēs in virōs intendit, sīcut soror in fēminās. Ōrāculum apud Delphōs habēbat futūraque hominibus praedicēbat. Mūsicae et omnium artium optimārum deus est. Pharetram humerīs gerit.

LESSON XII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

In the following examples,

nauta bonus, *a good sailor*,
nautam bonum,
fāgus māgna, *large beech-tree*,
fāgum māgnam,
templum splendidum,
templa splendida,
nautās bonōs,
in fāgō māgnā,

observe that Latin adjectives have different endings to suit the case, number and gender of the nouns they qualify. **Adjectives in Latin, therefore, are declined.**

RULE. — **An adjective agrees with its noun in case, number and gender.**

Bŏnus, *good*.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	bon us	bon a	bon um
Gen.	bon ī	bon ae	bon ī
Dat.	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō
Acc.	bon um	bon am	bon um
Voc.	bon ĕ	bon a	bon um
Abl.	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō

PLURAL

Nom.	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
Gen.	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
Dat.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs
Acc.	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
Voc.	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
Abl.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 286*)

A. 1. mālus est alta.
2. vīrus mălum vītābis.
3. in mālōs altās.
4. mālōrum altārum.
5. puer cāre.
6. puer est cārus.
7. vulgus incertum vītāmus.
8. Hadria turbidus.
9. puerum mălum.
10. vir māgnus.
11. vĭrī māgnī.
12. vīrī mălī.
13. mālī sunt altae.
14. incolam ferum.
15. vir bone.

B. 1. tall apple-trees (Acc.).
2. of tall beech-trees.
3. a good boy.
4. good boys (Nom.).
5. bad boys (Acc.).
6. O good boy.
7. a small man.
8. O small man.
9. of the stormy Adriatic.
10. in a full apple-tree.
11. on the great earth.
12. a renowned sailor (Nom. and Acc.).
13. renowned poets (Nom. and Acc.).
14. of fierce inhabitants.

LESSON XIII

ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **-er**

1. **Lĭber**, *free*, is like the noun **puer** in retaining the **e** throughout.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
lĭber	lĭber **a**	lĭber **um**
lĭber **ī**	lĭber **ae**	lĭber **ī**
etc.	etc.	etc.

Similarly **tener**, tenera, tenerum, *tender*.
mĭser, mĭsera, mĭserum, *wretched*.
asper, aspera, asperum, *rough*.

2. **Noster**, *our*, like the noun **ager**, is developed in the Nom. and Voc. sing. from the stem **nostr-**.

noster	nostra	nostrum
nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
etc.	etc.	etc.

Similarly **vester**, vestra, vestrum, *your*,
āter, ātra, ātrum, *black*,
aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick, ill, feeble*,
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful*,

and most other adjectives of the first and second declensions ending in **-er**.

dexter { dextera, dexterum, *right.*
dextra, dextrum.
Noun **dextra**, *the right hand.*

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left.*
Noun **sinistra**, *the left hand.*

Distinguish **vester**, *your* (addressing more than one).
tuus, *your* = *thy* (addressing one).

Predicate Nominative

A predicate noun or adjective completing the verb "to be" agrees with the subject in case, as —

Brūtus erat **lēgātus**, *Brutus was a lieutenant.*
Bonus est puer, *The boy is good.*

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 286*)

A. 1. Templa deōrum sacra erant.
2. Multum frūmentum in castra Rōmāna portant.
3. In castrīs nostrīs multī et māgnī equī erant.
4. Incolae Britanniae erant māgnī et ferī.
5. Māgna erant castra Rōmānōrum.

6. **Puella est pulchra.**
7. **Incolae sunt līberī.**
8. **Locus asper nōn est idōneus castrīs; loca aspera nōn sunt idōnea.**
9. **Aegra est fīlia tua.**
10. **Puerōs mālōs magister nōn laudat.**
11. **Fīlius servī nunc līber est. Lībrōs amat.**
12. **Līberōs nostrōs amāmus.**
13. **Līber, vel Bacchus, erat deus vīnī.**
14. **Rōmānī scūta brachiīs sinistrīs gestābant; dextrīs aut tēla aut gladiōs.**

B. 1. There are many large buildings in our town. (What is the Latin idiom for "*many large*"?)
2. Why, children, are you not carrying your books to school?
3. My son, why does the master not praise your book?
4. Your camp, Romans, is full of Gauls.
5. In Gaul there are many beautiful horses.
6. Your apple-trees, farmers, are pleasing to our boys.

For Oral Drill

7. Poison is evil; the sea is rough.
8. The camp is small; in a small camp.
9. The town is not ours, but yours, O Roman legate.
10. They will pitch camp in a suitable place.
11. Slaves love the shade of large beech-trees.
12. The Adriatic is long and narrow.
13. The street is wide; the apple-trees are high.

Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last king of Rome, expelled, and the first Consuls elected, 509 B.C.

LESSON XIV

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Verbs, according to their stems and inflections, are grouped into four classes called Conjugations. These are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive active, usually given as the second principal part; *e.g.*:

1. **Vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,** *call.*
2. **Moneō, monēre, monuī,** *advise.*
3. **Regō, regĕre, rēxī,** *rule.*
4. **Audiō, audīre, audīvī,** *hear.*

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

1	2	3	4
voc **āre**	mon **ēre**	reg **ĕre**	aud **īre**
to call	*to advise*	*to rule*	*to hear*

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

1	2	3	4
voc **ārī**	mon **ērī**	reg **ī**	aud **īrī**
to be called	*to be advised*	*to be ruled*	*to be heard*

vŏlō, velle, voluī, *wish*, an Irregular Verb.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

1.	volō	volumus
2.	vis	vultis
3.	vult	volunt

(Contract **nōn vŏlō** into **nōlō**; **nōn vŏlunt** into **nōlunt**.)

An infinitive used as a noun is neuter.

EXERCISE

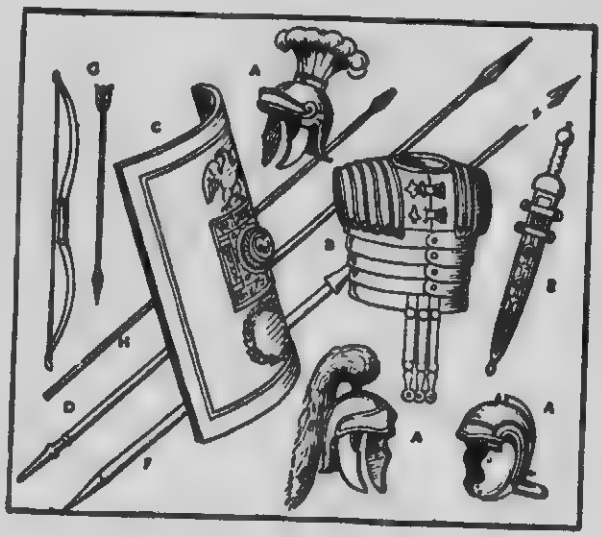
(*For Vocabulary, see page 286*)

1. From the principal parts, obtained in the Vocabulary, classify the following verbs under their several conjugations,

and form their pres. passive infinitives: **vincō, nūntiō, veniō, creō, videō, cognōscō, mittō, parō, mūniō, jubeō, pūniō.**

Translate: —

2. He wishes to see, not to be seen.
3. He orders the envoys to come and answer.
4. They wish to defeat (1. *superō*, 2. *vincō*) the Gauls.
5. The Gauls do not wish to be defeated.
6. We wish to conquer (*vincō*), not to be conquered.
7. Boys, why do you wish to be heard, not to hear?
8. (It) is not pleasing to boys to be punished.
9. To be called, to be sent, to be heard, to be held.
10. Why do you (*sing.*) wish to come?



ROMAN ARMS AND ARMOR

A. Galeae
B. Lōrica
C. Scūtum
D. Hasta
E. Gladius
F. Pīlum
G. Arcus et Sagitta
H. Jaculum

LESSON XV

SECOND CONJUGATION

VERBS WITH "Ē" STEMS

(Infin. -ēre)

moneō, monēre, monuī, *advise, warn.*

Stem, **monē-**

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

mon **eō**	mon **ēmus**
mon **ēs**	mon **ētis**
mon **et**	mon **ent**

Compare the following: —

vocō, vocās, vocat, etc.
moneō, monēs, monet, etc.,

and observe that the difference between the First and the Second Conjugation is only one of **ā**stems: **vocā-, monē-**. The inflections are the same, except that **voca ō** is contracted to **vocō**.

Observe that this parallel runs through all the tenses of the Indicative: —

INDICATIVE MOOD

	SYNOPSIS	
PRESENT	**vocō**	**moneō**
IMPERFECT	**vocā bam**	**monē bam**
FUTURE	**vocā bō**	**monē bō**
PERFECT	**vocāv ī**	**monu ī**
PLUPERFECT	**vocāv eram**	**monu eram**
FUTURE PERFECT	**vocāv erō**	**monu erō**
PRES. STEM	**vocā-**	**monē-**
IMPERF. STEM	**vocābā-**	**monēbā-**
FUT. STEM	**vocābi-**	**monēbi-**
PERF. STEM	**vocāv-**	**monu-**

The **inflections of monēbam, monēbō, monuī, etc., are the** same as those of **amābam, amābō, amāvī,** etc., **-bam, -bās, -bat,** etc.; **-bō, -bis, -bit,** etc.; **-ī, -istī, -it,** etc.

Not all Perfect Stems of the Second Conjugation are of the **monu-** type; *e.g.*: —

videō, vidēre, vid ī, *see.*
respondeō, respondēre, respond ī, *answer.*
maneō, manēre, mān ī, *remain.*
jubeō, jubēre, juss ī, *order.*
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēv ī, *destroy.*
compleō, complēre, complēv ī, *fill.*

The following, however, are similar to **moneō**: —

habeō, habēre, habu ī, *have, hold.*
teneō, tenēre, tenu ī, *hold.*

Note that **creō, creāre, creāv ī,** *create,* is of the First Conjugation.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 286*)

A. 1. Make a synopsis of the Indic. tenses (1. sing.) of **videō, jubeō, teneō.**

2. Make a set of Perfect tenses (Perf., Pluperf., Fut. Perf.) of **maneō, dēleō, respondeō.**

Translate: —

3. respondet, monēbit, habēbat.
4. tenent, jussit, dēlēverat, dēlēvērunt.
5. vĭdēbunt, vĭdēbant, vīdērunt, vīdĕrint.
6. manēmus, mānsimus, manēbimus.
7. creāmus, habēmus, complēvimus.
8. habēbam, habuī, habueram, responderam, jusserō.
9. "Tenētis," inquit, "Rōmānī, Gallōs inīquō locō."
10. Gallī inīquum locum habent.
11. Impedīmenta in tumulō collocat.

B. 1. We see, we pray, we have, we have seen.
2. They had (continually), they had (at a moment), they had answered.
3. He saw (once), he ordered, he held (for a while).
4. I shall have, I shall have seen, he will have, he will have had.
5. They have destroyed, they had destroyed, they will have destroyed.
6. They fought (continuously), they held, he is fighting, he is holding.
7. You (*sing.*) will neither fight nor destroy.
8. Caesar both fights and orders.
9. They filled the boats with shields and darts.
10. He orders the lieutenant to hold the place.
11. To have is to hold; to fight is not to destroy.

Mīles Rōmānus hastam in mūrum contorquet.
In mūrō stant hostēs.

LESSON XVI

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

III Conj. — 1. Consonant and "*U*" stems.
2. "*Ĭ*" stems (see **capiō**, page 48).

IV Conj. — "*Ī*" stems.

Regō, regĕre, rēxi, *rule*; stem, **reg-**

Audiō, audīre, audīvi, *hear*; stem, **audī-**

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present

reg **ō**	reg **ĭmus**	aud **iō**	aud **īmus**
reg **ĭs**	reg **ĭtis**	aud **īs**	aud **ītis**
reg **ĭt**	reg **unt**	aud **it**	aud **iunt**

Imperfect

reg **ēbam**, -bās, -bat, etc. aud **iēbam**, -bās, -bat, etc.

Future

reg **am**	reg **ēmus**	aud **iam**	aud **iēmus**
reg **ēs**	reg **ētis**	aud **iēs**	aud **iētis**
reg **et**	reg **ent**	aud **iet**	aud **ient**

Perfect

rēx **ī**, etc. audīv **ī**, etc.

Pluperfect

rēx **eram**, etc. audīv **eram**, etc.

Future Perfect

rēx **erō**, etc. audīv **erō**, etc.

1. Notice the two types of **future** in the four conjugations: —

1	2	3	4
vocā **bō**	monē **bō**	reg **am**	audi **am**

2. Note the **characteristic vowels** of **regō** and **audiō**: —

ĕ, ĭ (regō) ī (audiō)

A vowel is always short before a final **t**. Hence **audĭt** as well as **regĭt**. A vowel is short before a vowel. Hence **audĭo**, **audĭunt**.

VERBS LIKE **regō**

mittō, -ĕre, mīsī, *send*.
vincō, -ĕre, vīcī, *conquer*.
dūcō, -ĕre, dūxī, *lead*.
pellō, -ĕre, pepŭlī, *drive*.
scrībō, -ĕre, scrīpsī, *write*.
gerō, -ĕre, gessī, 1) *carry*, 2) *wage* (*war*).
instruō, -ĕre, -strūxī, *draw up* (*soldiers*).

VERBS LIKE **audiō**

vĕniō, -īre, vēnī, *come*.
mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, *fortify*.
pūniō, -īre, pūnīvī, *punish*.
dēsiliō, -īre, dēsiluī, *leap down*.
sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, *bury*.

EXERCISE

A. Pronounce and translate: —

1. Regĭs, audīs, mittĭs, vĕnīs.
2. Nūntiās, tenēs, vincĭs, mūnīs.
3. Pellunt, pūniunt, scrībunt, dēsiliunt.
4. Pugnant, respondent, regunt, sepeliunt.
5. Scrībēbam, habēbat, audiēbant, nūntiābant.
6. Vocābit, monēbit, regit, reget, audit, audiet.
7. Dūcēmus, dūcimus, audīmus, audiēmus.
8. Pellent, scrībunt, venient, veniunt, īnstruētis.
9. Audīvērunt, rēxerant, pepulerint, dēsiluerāmus.
10. Dūcĭs, vĕnīs, vēnistī, vincĭs, vincēs, pellit, pūniet.
11. Bellum cum Gallīs gerit Caesar; Gallōs pūnit; Galliam vincit.
12. Rōmānī castra fossā vāllōque mūniēbant.

B. Translate orally: —

1. He sends, he calls, he holds, he hears.
2. They send, they call, they hold, they hear.
3. Thou writest, thou comest, thou announcest.
4. He will announce, he will have, he will conquer, he will come.
5. They come, they will come, you (*pl.*) will send, you (*pl.*) are sending.
6. He was calling, he was writing, he was coming.
7. He sent (once), he comes, he came, they had come, they will have come.
8. Thou writest, thou hast written, thou wilt write, thou wilt pray, thou wilt hear.
9. He conquers, will conquer, conquered, had conquered.
10. They punish, used to punish, punished (once), will have punished.

Write out: —

11. The Romans wage war in Gaul. They will conquer and punish the Gauls.
12. The Germans came into Gaul; Caesar conquered (*vincō*) the Germans and drove (them) out of Gaul.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME
753–509 B.C.

1. **Romulus**
2. **Numa Pompilius**
3. **Tullus Hostilius**
4. **Ancus Martius**
5. **Tarquinius Priscus**
6. **Servius Tullius**
7. **Tarquinius Superbus**

Read the story of Horatius Cocles,

LESSON XVII

"CAPIŌ" VERBS

"*I*" Stems of the Third Conjugation

Capiō, capĕre, cēpī, *I take;* stem, **capī-**

RULE. — **Capiō** is classified as a verb of the Third Conjugation, but follows **audiō** where the endings of **audiō** contain two successive vowels; as, **capiō, capiunt, capiēbam, capiam.** Compare these with **regō, regunt, regēbam, regam.** Compare also **capis, audis; capimus, audimus; capitis, auditis.**

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

PRESENT

cap iō	cap imus
cap is	cap itis
cap it	cap iunt

IMPERFECT

cap iēbam	cap iēbāmus.

FUTURE

cap iam	cap iēmus
cap iēs	cap iētis
cap iet	cap ient

PERFECT

cēp ī, -istī, -it, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēp eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cēp erō, etc.

The following verbs are like **capiō**: —

faciō, -ĕre, fēcī, (1) *do*, (2) *make.*
fugiō, -ĕre, fūgī, *flee.*
jaciō, -ĕre, jēcī, *throw.*

Compounds of **speciō**, as —

cōnspiciō, -ĕre, -spēxī, *see, behold.*

Most compounds of **faciō** and those of **jaciō** change the forms to **-ficiō** and **-iciō** (= **jiciō**), *e.g.* : —

interficiō, -ĕre, -fēcī, *kill.*
coniciō (or **conjiciō**), -ĕre, -jēcī, *throw, hurl.*

EXERCISE

A. Pronounce and translate : —

1. Capis, capitis, audīs, audītis.
2. Capiunt, capient, regēs, regunt.
3. Audīmus, interficimus, faciētis.
4. Capit, cēpit, capiet, cēperit; fugit, fūgit.
5. Fugiēbat, fūgerās, fugiēs, fugis, fūgistī.
6. Tēla et saxa tormentīs in mūrōs coniciēbant.
7. Gallōs in castrīs cōnspēxērunt.

B. Translate orally : —

1. Thou makest, they make, they will make.
2. They were throwing, he will kill, we behold.
3. He was doing, he will do, he did (once).
4. They hurl darts at the Romans.
5. They will take neither the camp nor the village.
6. Thou fleest, we flee, we shall flee, he flees, he fled.

Review Word List

Give verbs for : —

1. Come, conquer, send, rule, advise, take, hear.
2. Order, create, see, announce, learn, prepare.
3. Wish, fortify, punish, remain, answer, destroy.
4. Fill, have, hold, lead, drive, write, carry on (war).
5. Draw up (soldiers), do, flee, make, throw, kill, behold.

REGULAR VERBS

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	vocō ās at *etc.*	moneō ēs et *etc.*	regō is it *etc.*	audiō īs it *etc.*
Imperf.	vocā bam bās bat *etc.*	monē bam bās bat *etc.*	regē bam bās bat *etc.*	audiē bam bās bat *etc.*
Fut.	vocā bō bis bit *etc.*	monē bō bis bit *etc.*	reg am ēs et *etc.*	audi am i ēs i et *etc.*
Perf.	vocāv I	monu I	rēx I	audīv I
Plup.	vocāv eram	monu eram	rēx eram	audīv eram
Fut. Perf.	vocāv erō	monu erō	rēx erō	audīv erō

IMPEDIMENTA

MERCURY

(*Greek*, HERMES)

Mercurius est deōrum nūntius. Per āëra volat, imperāta Jovis ad deōs hominēsque ferēns. Mānēs etiam mortuōrum ad Īnferōs dēdūcit et in cymbam Charontis impōnit. Interdum Charontem rēmigandō adjuvat. Hominēs fidibus canere docuisse dicitur. Filius Māiae saepe appellātur.

LESSON XVIII

THIRD DECLENSION

There are two classes of stems in the Third Declension: —

I. Stems ending in a consonant.

In these the Gen. Plur. always ends in **-um**.

II. Stems ending in **i**.

In these the Gen. Plur. always ends in **-ium**.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns

Consonant Stems

	Trabs, f., *a beam*; stem, **trab-**		**Princeps**, m., *a chieftain*; stem, **princip-**	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	trab **s**	trab **ēs**	princep **s**	princip **ēs**
Gen.	trab **is**	trab **um**	princip **is**	princip **um**
Dat.	trab **ī**	trab **ibus**	princip **ī**	princip **ibus**
Acc.	trab **em**	trab **ēs**	princip **em**	princip **ēs**
Voc.	trab **s**	trab **ēs**	princep **s**	princip **ēs**
Abl.	trab **e**	trab **ibus**	princip **e**	princip **ibus**

Mīles, m., *a soldier*; stem, **mīlit-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mīle **s**	mīlit **ēs**
Gen.	mīlit **is**	mīlit **um**
Dat.	mīlit **ī**	mīlit **ibus**
Acc.	mīlit **em**	mīlit **ēs**
Voc.	mīle **s**	mīlit **ēs**
Abl.	mīlit **e**	mīlit **ibus**

1. Note that in the Third Declension the Vocative (as in all nouns except those of the **servus** type) is always like the Nominative.

2. *Trabs* (pronounced by the Roman method *traps*) keeps its **stem** in the same written form throughout.

Princeps and *miles* alter the form of the stem in the Nom. and Voc., *princeps* changing *i* to *e* before two consonants; and *miles* changing *i* to *e* and dropping *t* before *s*, thus

milit s = millet s = mīle s.

t and d are regularly dropped before s.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 287*)

A. 1. Multī mīlitēs in castrīs sunt.
2. Animōs prīncipum Gallōrum Cæsar movet.
3. Pecūniam prīncipibus nōn dabit.
4. Tēcta agricolārum trabēs māgnās habent.
5. Lēgātus verba facit apud prīncipēs.
6. Nostrī mīlitēs cum prīncipe pugnant.
7. Agricolae tēcta trabibus longīs aedificant.
8. Tēla mīlitum Rōmānōrum erant hastae atque pīla.

B. 1. He gave beautiful gifts to the renowned chieftain.
2. They carry a large beam to the river.
3. Our soldier (*Acc.*); our soldiers (*Acc.*); with our soldier.
4. We shall give rewards to the good soldier.
5. O Roman soldier; O Roman soldiers.
6. Among the Roman soldiers many chieftains of Gaul are talking.

Decline in agreement:—

trabs longa
prīnceps noster
mīles dūrus

LESSON XIX

THIRD DECLENSION

Masculine and Feminine Nouns

Mute Consonant Stems

The learning of the Third Declension is largely a matter of learning stems. The stem can usually be seen in the Gen. Sing.

A **mute** is an abrupt consonant, such as **p, c, g, t.**

Learn to decline throughout the following nouns with stems ending in a mute:—

plēbs, plēb is, *f., the common people.*

d dropped before **s**

pēs, ped is, m., *foot.*
lapis, lapid is, m., *stone.*
obses, obsid is, m. or f., *hostage.*
laus, laud is, *f., praise.*
palūs, palūd is, f., *marsh.*
pecus, pecud is, f., *a head of cattle.*

t dropped before **s**

pedes, pedit is, m., *foot-soldier.*
eques, equit is, m., *horseman.*
comes, comit is, m. or f., *companion.*
ariēs, ariet is, m., *ram, battering-ram.*
aetās, aetāt is, f., *age.*
cīvitās, cīvitāt is, f., *state.*
virtūs, virtūt is, f., *virtue, valor, goodness.*
salūs, salūt is, f., *safety, welfare.*
juventūs, juventūt is, f., *youth.*
senectūs, senectūt is, f., *old age.*
aestās, aestāt is, f., *summer.*

x = cs

pāx, pāc is, f., *peace.*
arx, arc is, f., *citadel.*
dux, duc is, m., *leader.*
jūdex, jūdic is, m., *judge.*
rādix, rādīc is, f., *root.*
lūx, lūc is, f., *light.*

x = gs

lēx, lēg is, f., *a law.*
rēx, rēg is, m., *king.*
rēmex, rēmig is, m., *oarsman.*
conjunx, conjug is, m. or f., *husband, wife.*

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 287*)

A. 1. Mūrus est multōs pedēs altus.
2. Lapidēs tormentīs coniciunt.
3. Equitēs cum peditibus pugnant.
4. Equitēs ex equīs dēsiliunt atque pedibus pugnant.
5. Vīneās arietemque ad mūrum prōmovent.
6. Māgnam virtūtem in proeliīs praestant.
7. Prō salūte patriae pugnābimus.
8. Cicerō librum dē senectūte scrīpsit.
9. Pācem ā Caesare Gallī petunt.
10. Lēgēs Rōmānōrum erant sevērae.

B. 1. They give rewards to the good leader.
2. They built a high citadel.
3. The last king of the Romans was bad.
4. By severe laws; on behalf of our king.
5. They throw many stones.
6. Caesar had many rowers.
7. A severe law (Acc.); on behalf of the Roman common people.
8. Of our age; on account of your safety.

Decline in agreement: —

dux strēnuus	**pēs dexter**
virtūs māgna	**pedes Rōmānus**
obses miser	**rādix longa**

Word List

1. Foot, horse, foot-soldier, horseman, oarsman, leader.
2. Hostage, companion, king, judge, law, peace.
3. Age, summer, state, youth, old age, safety, valor.
4. Battering-ram, stone, marsh, citadel.

LESSON XX

THIRD DECLENSION

Masculine and Feminine Nouns

"S" Stems

Note. — **s** regularly changes to **r** between vowels.

flōs, flōr is, m., *a flower.*
mōs, mōr is, m., *habit, custom.*
mūs, mūr is, m., *mouse.*
lepus, lepor is, m., *hare.*
tellūs, tellūr is, f., *the earth.*

Liquid Stems (l and r)

With l and r stems the -s of the Nom. is dropped.

cōnsul, cōnsul is, m., *a consul.*
vigil, vigil is, m., *a watcher.*
pater, patr is, m., *father.*
frāter, frātr is, m., *brother.*
māter, mātr is, f., *mother.*
agger, agger is, m., *heap, mound.*

The following in **-or** are really **s** stems (**honor** = **honos**, the **s** changing as in **mōs** to **r** between vowels, and then by analogy creeping into the Nom.).

victor, victōr is, m., *victor.*
pāstor, pāstōr is, m., *shepherd, herdsman.*
honor, honōr is, m., *honor.*
timor, timōr is, m., *fear.*
clāmor, clāmōr is, m., *shout.*
labor, labōr is, m., *labor, hardship.*
pavor, pavōr is, m., *panic, fear.*
arbor, arbōr is, f., *tree.*
soror, sorōr is, f., *sister.*
uxor, uxōr is, f., *wife.*

Note the irregular features of **arbor** (fem. and ō).

Nasal Stems (m and n)

hiems, hiem is, f., *winter*, the only stem in **-m.**

leō, leōn is, m., *lion.*
Nom. **leō** = **leōn** s (both the ending **s** and the **n** of the stem dropped).

Jūnō, Jūnōn is, f., *Juno.*
regiō, regiōn is, f., *region.*
legiō, legiōn is, f., *legion.*
ōrātiō, ōrātiōn is, f., *speech, oration.*
praedō, praedōn is, m., *robber, pirate.*
latrō, latrōn is, m., *robber, brigand.*
sermō, sermōn is, m., *talk, conversation.*

Note that the following weaken **o** to **i** in the oblique cases (**homin is** = **homon is**):—

homō, homin is, m., *man, human being.*
virgō, virgin is, *f.*, *maiden.*
multitūdō, multitūdin is, *f.*, *multitude.*
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdin is, *f.*, *custom.*
ōrdō, ōrdin is, m., *rank, order.*
cardō, cardin is, m., *hinge.*
sanguis, sanguin is, m., *blood.*
(n dropped in the Nom. : **sanguis** = **sanguins.**)

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 287*)

A. 1. Dux equitēs contrā mōrem praemīsit.
2. Ōrātiōnēs clārās Cicerōnis cōnsulis laudāmus.
3. Māgnus erat timor Gallōrum.
4. Arborēs altae in hortō nostrō sunt.
5. Legiōnem decimam trāns fluvium mīsit.
6. Pompēius Māgnus praedōnēs vīcit.
7. Dēnsōs ōrdinēs peditum perfrēgērunt.
8. Māgnam multitūdinem coēgit.

B. 1. He gave beautiful flowers to the maiden.
2. They heard the renowned speech.
3. They called Cicero father (*Pred. Acc.*)of his country.
4. They will build a high mound in front of the town.

GENDER

From the foregoing lists it will be seen that most Masculine and Feminine Consonant Stems of the Third Declension conform to the following rules of Gender:—

Masculine

-er, -or, -os, -ō (except **-dō, -gō, -lō**).
-es (increasing the number of syllables in the Gen., *e.g.* **mīles, mīlitis**).

Exceptions

iter, itineris, *a journey;* **vēr**, vēris, *spring*, are **neuter.**
arbor is **feminine.**
ōrdō and **cardō** are **masculine** though ending in **-dō.**

Feminine

-dō, -gō, -iō.

-ās, -aus, -x, -s after a consonant.

-is in words of more than one syllable (virtūs, etc.

mīles, rēx, dux, jūdex, rēmex, are masculine, and **soror** and **uxor,** feminine, by Natural Gender.

For complete rules, see page 70.

Word List

(*State the Gender*)

1. Father, mother, brother, sister, husband, wife.
2. Habit, custom (2), fear (2), shout, field, mound.
3. Mouse, hare, shepherd, robber, pirate.
4. Tree, flower, door, hinge, rank, multitude.
5. Spring, summer, autumn, winter.

Sarcinās

Sarcinās suās quisque mīles humerīs brachiīsque gerit.

VULCAN

(*Greek*, HEPHAESTUS)

Vulcānus ignis deus est. Graeci eum Hephaestum appellant. Filius Jovis fuit et Jūnōnis. Pater ōlim īrātus eum dē caelō conjēcit. In Insulam Lemnon incidit et posteā semper claudus erat. Opifex inter deōs erat. Domūs splendidās eōrum in Olympō aedificāvit. Multa et pulcherrima dīs hominibusque ōrnāmenta fēcit; inter alia Achillis scūtum clārum.

LESSON XXI

THIRD DECLENSION

Neuter Nouns

Mute Consonant Stems

Caput, *head*; stem, **capit-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	caput	capit**a**
Gen.	capit**is**	capit**um**
Dat.	capit**i**	capit**ibus**
Acc.	caput	capit**a**
Voc.	caput	capit**a**
Abl.	capit**e**	capit**ibus**

The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. are simply a form of the stem.

Lac, lactis, n., *milk* (final **t** dropped in Nom.).

"S" Stems

Note the following two types:—

1. **Corpus** (= corpos), **corpŏr**is (= corpos is), *body*.
   s changed to **r** between vowels.
2. **Opus** (= opos), **oper**is (= opos is), *work*.
   o weakened to **e**, and **s** changed to **r** between vowels.

Like **corpus**	Like **opus**
tempus, **-ŏris**, *time*.	**genus**, **-eris**, *kind, class*.
lītus, **-ŏris**, *shore*.	**latus**, **-eris**, *side, flank*.
frīgus, **-ŏris**, *cold*.	**onus**, **-eris**, *burden, load*.
pecus, **-ŏris**, *cattle, herd*.	**sidus**, **-eris**, *star, constellation*.

aequor (= aequos), **-ŏris**, n., *the sea*.
Contrast with **victor**, **-ōris**, m., and **arbor**, **-ŏris**, f.

crūs, crūr is, *limb.*
jūs, jūr is, *right, justice, law.*
rūs, rūr is, *the country (rural district).*

fulgur, fulgur is, *lightning.*
rōbur (also rōbor), **rōbor** is, *hard wood, oak, strength.*

"N" Stems

nōmen, nōmin is, *name.*
flūmen, flūmin is, *river.*
carmen, carmin is, *song.*
agmen, agmin is, *column (of soldiers).*
certāmen, certāmin is, *struggle, contest.*
fulmen, fulmin is, *thunderbolt, lightning.*
lūmen, lūmin is, *a light.*

Observe the change of **-men** to **-min.**

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 287*)

A. 1. Corpora māgna et parva capita habent.
2. Tempus nōn est idōneum.
3. Multa hominum genera in terrā sunt.
4. Tēla ad lītus angustum coniciunt.
5. Sīdera clāra spectāmus.
6. Britannī pecore lacteque vīvunt.
7. Gallī agmen Rōmānum in fugam dedērunt.
8. Multa in vītā certāmina sustinēmus.

B. 1. The country is always pleasing to farmers.
2. The Gauls will not violate the rights (*sing.*) of ambassadors.
3. The Greeks built the horse out of oak.
4. Jupiter hurls his thunderbolt at evil men (**in** with *Acc.*).

Decline together: —

nōmen clārum — **lītus angustum**
opus māgnum — **rūs amoenum**

LESSON XXII

THIRD DECLENSION

"*I*" Stems

Nouns that have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural are usually called "*I*" **stems.**

They sometimes have **-im** instead of **-em** in the Acc. Sing. and quite commonly **-ī** instead of **-e** in the Abl. Sing.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns

Nouns Ending in -is and -ēs

(*Not increasing in the Gen.*)

Turris, f., *tower;* stem, **turri-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	turr **is**	turr **ēs**
Gen.	turr **is**	turr **ium**
Dat.	turr **ī**	turr **ibus**
Acc.	turr **im** or **-em**	turr **ēs** or **-is**
Voc.	turr **is**	turr **ēs**
Abl.	turr **ī**	turr **ibus**

In the Plural, all Masculine and Feminine "*I*" stems conform to this type.

In the Singular the following variations occur: —

ignis, m., *fire;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-ī** or **-e.**
hostis, m. or f., *enemy;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-e.**
collis, m., *hill;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-e**, rarely **-ī.**
avis, f., *bird;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-ī** or **-e.**
nāvis, f., *ship;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-ī** or **-e.** (Originally a diphthong stem, **nāv is** = **nau is**; compare **nau ta.**)
puppis, f., *stern;* Acc. **-im**; rarely **-em**; Abl. **-e.**

secūris, f., *axe;* Acc. **-im** or **-em**; Abl. **-ī**, rarely **-e**.
orbis, m., *ring, circle;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-e** or **-ī**.
sitis, f., *thirst;* Acc. **-im**; Abl. **-ī**.
mēnsis, m., *month;* Acc. **-em**; Abl. **-e**.

Gen. Plur. **-ium** or **-um** (originally a consonant stem).

NOTE. — **canis**, *a dog*, and **juvenis**, *a youth*, are not "*I*" stems; Gen. Plur. **canum**, **juvenum**.

aedēs, f., sing., *temple;* pl. *dwelling*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	aed **ēs**	aed **ēs**
Gen.	aed **is**	aed **ium**
Dat.	aed **ī**	aed **ibus**
Acc.	aed **em**	aed **ēs** or **-is**
Voc.	aed **ēs**	aed **ēs**
Abl.	aed **e**	aed **ibus**

Similarly **nūbēs**, f., *cloud;* **rūpēs**, f., *rock;* **caedēs**, f., *slaughter;* **clādēs**, f., *disaster, loss;* **sēdēs**, f., *seat, home.*
These were originally consonant stems.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 288*)

A. 1. Agrōs Gallōrum ferrō et īgnī vāstat.
2. Turrim altam in aggere aedificant.
3. Ad Britanniam Caesar cum classī nāvium longārum nāvigat.
4. Nāvēs hostium expugnāvērunt.
5. Chorus virginum juvenumque ad Apollinem cantat.
6. Nāvēs onerāriās et longās aedificat.
7. Cum nāvī longā ad Britanniam Volusēnum praemittit.

NOTE. — When "*enemy*" means a number of enemies, it is plur. in Latin.

B. 1. They destroy the villages and buildings by fire.
2. In the minds of the Gauls there was great fear of the high towers.
3. The standard-bearer leaped down from the war-ship.
4. They saw the light of the bright fires.
5. He sees the great fear of the enemy.
6. The Britons dreaded (*timeō*) the appearance (*figūra*) of the Roman galleys.
7. By oars he moves the war-ships from the transports to the right side of the enemy.
8. The enemy see the Roman ships from the shore.
9. Of many birds; on a high hill; of high hills.

LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION

Masculine and Feminine "*I*" Stems

(*Continued*)

Abl. Sing. -e; Gen. Plur. -ium

1. Monosyllables with apparent stems ending in two consonants.

(*a*) Genuine "*I*" stems: —

ars, artis, f., *art.*
gēns, gentis, f., *race, tribe.*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
sors, sortis, f., *lot.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*

(*b*) Consonant stems adapted: —

arx, arcis, f., *citadel.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
fōns, fontis, m., *fountain.*
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*

Note the prevailing gender of these nouns in **-s** preceded by a consonant. Note also the four exceptions.

2. Nouns ending in **-ns** and **-rs** : —

cliēns, clientis, m. or f., *adherent, retainer.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort.*

3. A few other nouns : —

mūs, mūris, m., *mouse.*
nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
linter, lintris, f., *boat, skiff.*
carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*

Time "when" is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition; time "how long" by the Accusative.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 288*)

A.
1. In nostrā urbe.
2. Nostrārum urbium.
3. Trabum longārum.
4. Cum trabe longā.
5. Pontem fīrmum in flūmine aedificat.
6. Hieme noctēs sunt longae.
7. Ursī per tempus noctium longārum dormiunt.
8. Aquila trāns altam vallem volat.
9. Caesar bellum aestāte gerēbat; auctumnō mīlitēs in hīberna dūcēbat.
10. Vēre prīmō avēs nīdōs in altīs arboribus aedificant.

B.
1. Of many parts.
2. On a high mountain.
3. By great art.
4. Of hard teeth.
5. They build long bridges over the rivers.
6. With a great multitude of adherents.
7. Of the deep valleys; of high mountains.
8. They will remain many months in the city.

REVIEW

C.
1. He heard the words of the chieftains.
2. They throw large stones into the town.
3. They will seek peace and give hostages to Caesar.
4. We love the trees of the deep valley.

Give Latin words for the following, with their gender and Genitive case: —

1. Valor, body, work, army on the march, foot, cloud.
2. Mountain, part, peace, law, speech, rank, journey.
3. Side, marsh, kind, oak, beam.
4. Ship, oar, sail, rower, captain, war-galley, transport.
5. Spring, summer, autumn, winter, year, month.

LESSON XXIV

THIRD DECLENSION

Neuter "*I*" Stems

Nouns ending **-e, -al, -ar.**

Mare, *sea;* stem, **mari-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mar e	mar ia
Gen.	mar is	mar ium
Dat.	mar i	mar ibus
Acc.	mar e	mar ia
Voc.	mar e	mar ia
Abl.	mar i	mar ibus

Note. — Abl. Sing. **-i**
Nom. Plur. **-ia**
Gen. Plur. **-ium**

Similarly: —

animal, -ālis, *animal.*
vectigal, -ālis, *tax, revenue.*
calcar, -āris, *spur.*

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 288*)

A. 1. In marī māgnō nāvēs multae nāvigant.
2. Herculēs in valle cum animālī saevō contendit.
3. Ancorās in mare altum dēmittunt.
4. Incolae Karthāginis trāns maria lāta nāvigābant.
5. Equitēs Rōmānī māgnōrum cīvitātis vectīgālium pūblicānī erant.
6. Caesar imperium populi Rōmānī tērrā marīque cōnfīrmāre cōnstituit.

B. 1. Into the wide sea. In the wide sea.
2. Of the deep seas. Of many animals.
3. The taxes are great.
4. The chieftain feared the sea.
5. The knight urged his horse with a spur.

Story about a Fleet

Classem māgnam in continentī fabrī aedificant. Nāvēs longae angustae et altae et celerēs erant. Hostēs rōstrīs et rēmīs perterrēbant. Onerāriae autem humilēs ac lātae erant. Onera enim portābant. Mālīs, ancorīs, vēlīs, fūnibus reliquīsque armāmentīs ōrnant. Tum Caesar peditēs suōs et equitēs cōnscendere jubet. Deinde, ubi tempestās est idōnea, solvit et ad sōlis occāsum nāvigat. Britannī ex lītore Caesarem cōnspiciunt. Mīlitēs nāvibus ēgredī[1] prohibēre parant. Caesar tamen māgnō negōtiō mīlitēs exposuit.

Give Latin for: —

1. Oar, anchor, mast, a sail, rope, tackle, prow.
2. Embark, land (intransitive), land (transitive), set sail, to sail, west, weather, storm.

[1] *to disembark*; translate *from disembarking*.

LESSON XXV

THIRD DECLENSION

Irregular Nouns

vīs, f., *force;* stem, **vī**	**bōs**, m. or f., *ox, cow;* stem, **bou-** (**bov-**)	**Jūpiter**, m., *Jupiter;* stem, **Jou-** (**Jov-**)

		Singular		Plural	
Nom.	vīs	bōs	Jūpiter	vīr ēs	bov ēs
Gen.		bov is	Jov is	vīr ium	bov um / bo um
Dat.		bov ī	Jov ī	vīr ibus	bō bus / bū bus
Acc.	vim	bov em	Jov em	vīr ēs	bov ēs
Voc.		bōs	Jūpiter	vīr ēs	bov ēs
Abl.	vī	bov e	Jov e	vīr ibus	bō bus / bū bus

No plural

vīs, in classical Latin, is practically lacking in the Gen. Dat. and Voc. Sing.

Singular, **vīs** = *force, violence, quantity.*
Plural, **vīrēs** = *bodily strength.*
Jūpiter = Jou pater (Jov pater), "*Father Jove.*"

The following are peculiar: —

iter, itineris, n., *journey, road.*
senex, senis, m., *old man;* Gen. pl. senum.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh*; Gen. pl. carnium.
os, ossis, n., *bone*; pl. ossa, ossium, etc.
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth*; pl. ōra, ōrum, etc.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 289*)

A. 1. Māgnā vī hastam contorsit.
2. Vim flūminis pōns sustinet.
3. Vīs māgna frūmentī in oppidīs erat.
4. Māgnīs itineribus in fīnēs Gallōrum contendit.
5. Germānī erant māgnārum vīrium hominēs.
6. Dī hominēsque Jovem timent.
7. Lacte carneque Germānī vīvunt.

B. 1. The strength of the men (*vir*) was great; the men were large.
2. They sacrifice an ox on the shore to Jupiter.
3. He opened a route through Gaul.
4. The roads were long.
5. He hastened by a forced march to the river.
6. The Romans heard the words of the old men.

TESTŪDŌ

Hostēs ad mūrum ruunt. Testūdinem faciunt. Sinistrīs suprā capita scūta tenent. Ita corpora tegunt.

LESSON XXVI

GENDER OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Summary of Rules

Most of the nouns given below have already been mentioned.

MASCULINE

-**er**, -**or**, -**ōs**;
-**ĕs** or -**ēs** (increasing in the Gen.);
-**ō** (except -**dō**, -**gō**, -**lō**).

Also **sōl**, sōlis, *sun*; **sāl**, salis, *salt*.

Exceptions: —

iter, n.; vēr, n.; uxor, f., *wife*; soror, f., *sister*; arbor, f.; aequor, n.; ōs, n. (also os, n., *bone*); carō, f.; linter, f.; cadāver, -eris, n., *corpse*; cor, cordis, n., *heart*; aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze, brass*; quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest*; seges, -etis, f., *field of grain*.

FEMININE

-**dō**, -**gō**, -**lō**;
-**ās**, -**is**, -**aus**, -**x**;
-**ēs** (not increasing);
-**s**, preceded by a consonant;
-**ūs** (except monosyllables), *e.g.* **virtūs**.

Exceptions: —

ordō, m.; cardō, m.; collis, m.; ignis, m.; lapis, m.; fūnis, m.; sanguis, m.; pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*; crinis, -is, m., *hair*; mōns, pōns, fōns, dēns, m.

NEUTER

-**ŭs** (like **opus** and **corpus**);
-**men**;
-**e**, -**al**, -**ar** ("I" stems).

Also **lac**, **caput**, **poēma**, -**atis**; **rōbur**, **fulgur**; the monosyllables, **rūs**, **jūs**, **crūs**.

Exception, lepus, m., *hare*.

Summary of "*I*" Stems

Masculine and Feminine

I. Nouns ending in **-is** and **-ēs**, *not increasing* the number of syllables in the Gen., *e.g.*: —

ignis, ignis, *fire*; caedēs, caedis, *slaughter*. Compare sanguis, sanguinis; miles, militis.

II. Monosyllables with apparent stems ending in two consonants, *e.g.*: —

ars, Gen. plur. art ium; urbs, Gen. plur. urb ium (but not trabs, trab ium); nox, Gen. plur. noct ium.

III. Most nouns ending in **-ns** and **-rs**, and a few others, *e.g.*: —

cliēns, *adherent, retainer*; cohors, *cohort*; linter, *boat*.

Neuter

IV. Nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, *e.g.*: —

mare, *sea*; animal, *animal*; calcar, *spur*.

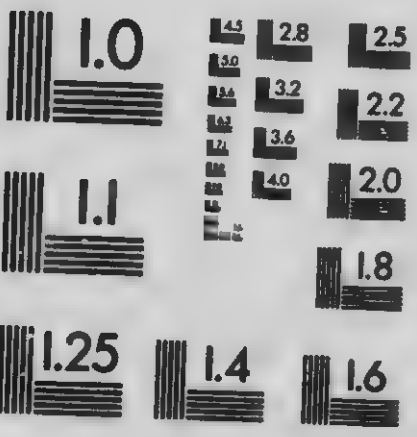
Review Exercise on the Third Declension

sine (Abl.), *without*.
propter (Acc.), *on account of, owing to*.

A. 1. Owing to the cold, many will not come.
2. They took men, women and children. (Why not *homō* here?)
3. A great storm damaged Caesar's ships.
4. Caesar had many rowers.
5. The citizens do not fear Jupiter, father of gods and men. (*homō* or *vir*?)
6. He hastens into the territories of the enemy by forced marches.
7. They placed many old men in the marshes.
8. The road was long; the nights were dark.
9. He hurled his spear with great force.

MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

10. They fear the violence of the enemy.
11. He sends the soldiers without baggage.
12. The ancient Romans had many virtues.
13. Cicero wrote a book about old age.
14. Large trees have strong roots.

On Gender

(*These may be varied in case*)

B. 1. Great fear; tall tree.
2. High mounds; long journeys.
3. First legion; our ranks.
4. Small boat; pleasing spring.
5. Much copper; pure air.
6. Bright sun; many animals.
7. Our state; large vessel (vase).
8. Bright fire; Roman fleet.
9. Great slaughter; many feet.
10. Of long peace; good laws; many kings.
11. Great praise (acc.); distinguished valor.
12. Many stones; of long ropes; by much blood.
13. Third part; high mountain; first cohort.
14. Our rights; large hare; small mouse.

"*I*" Stems

C. 1. Of old men; of cities; of beams.
2. Of feet; of parts; of strength; of men (vir).
3. By blood; by fire; in a ship; on a hill; with an enemy.
4. Of months; of cohorts; of seas.
5. Of soldiers; of citadels; of nights.
6. Of lions; of animals.
7. In the city; in the sea; on the mountain.
8. Of bones; of mouths; of swine; of roads; of oxen.
9. Of birds; of dogs; of young men.
10. Of many ships; of the enemy.

JUNO

(*Greek*, HERA)

Jūnō et conjūnx et soror Jovis fuit. Rēgīna igitur deūm exīstimātur. Jūpiter eī interdum īrāscēbātur et nōnnumquam eam gravissimīs poenīs afficiēbat. Haec dea saevissimē Trōjānōs ōderat quod ab Electrā et Jove nātī sunt. Aliās quoque ob causās eōs ōderat; praecipuē quod Paris fōrmam ējus contemnsit et mālum aureum Veneri dedit.

LESSON XXVII

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of Three Terminations

Ācer, *sharp, keen, fierce;* stem, **ācri-**

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
Gen.	ācr is	ācr is	ācr is	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
Dat.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
Acc.	ācr em	ācr em	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
Voc.	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
Abl.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

Acc. Plur. Mas. and Fem. in **-īs** also occurs.

Decline similarly:—

silvester, *woody.*
equester, *equestrian.*
pedester, *pedestrian.*
terrester, *earthly.*
volucer, *winged.*

celer, celeris, celere, *swift*, retains the **e** before **r**.

The Nom. and Voc. Mas. forms **silvester** and **terrester** are rare. These adjectives are more commonly declined as follows:—

silvestris (M. or F.), **silvestre** (N.), like **fortis** below.

Adjectives of Two Terminations

Fortis, *brave, strong;* stem, **forti-**

	Singular		Plural	
	M. or F.	N.	M. or F.	N.
Nom.	fort is	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
Gen.	fort is	fort is	fort ium	fort ium
Dat.	fort ī	fort ī	fort ibus	fort ibus
Acc.	fort em	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
Voc.	fort is	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
Abl.	fort ī	fort ī	fort ibus	fort ibus

Decline similarly: —

brevis, *short, brief.*
gravis, *heavy, severe.*
tristis, *sad.*
ūtilis, *useful.*
omnis, *all, every.*
turpis, *disgraceful.*
mītis, *mild.*

trēs, tria, *three*, is declined like the plur. of **fortis**.

NOTE. — Most Adjectives of the Third Declension are "*I*" **Stems.**

Comparatives, and a few others, are **Consonant Stems**: Neut. Plur. **-a**; Gen. Plur. **-um.**

Comparatives

Fortior, *braver;* stem, **fortiōr-**

	Singular		Plural	
	M. or F.	N.	M. or F.	N.
Nom.	fort **ior**	fort **ius**	fort **iōrēs**	fort **iōra**
Gen.	fort **iōris**	fort **iōris**	fort **iōrum**	fort **iōrum**
Dat.	fort **iōrī**	fort **iōrī**	fort **iōribus**	fort **iōribus**
Acc.	fort **iōrem**	fort **ius**	fort **iōrēs**	fort **iōra**
Voc.	fort **ior**	fort **ius**	fort **iōrēs**	fort **iōra**
Abl.	fort **iōre**	fort **iōre**	fort **iōribus**	fort **iōribus**

1. Abl. **-ī**, Acc. Plur. **-īs** also occur.
2. **minor**, minus, *less, smaller*, is similar, but without **i**.
3. In **mājor**, *greater*, **pējor**, *worse*, the **j** is merely the consonant form of **i**.
4. For **plūs**, *more*, see page 77.
5. Like **fortior**, decline **ācrior, celerior, longior, brevior**, etc.

EXERCISE

1. Short road; short roads; a short life (*Acc.*); of short roads.
2. Keen frost (*frīgus*); without a heavy burden.
3. On account of a sad disaster (*clādēs*); a fierce (*ācer*) soldier.

4. Severe winter (*ācer*); of severe winters; by a severe winter.
5. On a higher hill; of mild old men.
6. Of a fiercer soldier; swifter ships; of swift ships.
7. A smaller camp; in a smaller camp; of a smaller camp.
8. A larger city; larger cities (*Nom.*); into larger cities.
9. All the time; all times; in all Gaul; into all the rivers.
10. More useful books (*Nom.*); useful books (*Acc.*); of useful books.

LESSON XXVIII

Adjectives of One Termination

Fēlix, *happy;* stem, **fēlīci-** bare stem, **fēlīc-**

Prūdēns, *foreseeing;* stem, **prūdenti-** bare stem, **prūdent-**

	Singular			
	M. or F.	N.	M. or F.	N.
Nom.	fēlīx	fēlīx	prūdēn s	prūdēn s
Gen.	fēlīc is	fēlīc is	prūdent is	prūdent is
Dat.	fēlīc ī	fēlīc ī	prūdent ī	prūdent ī
Acc.	fēlīc em	fēlīx	prūdent em	prūdēn s
Voc.	fēlīx	fēlīx	prūdēn s	prūdēn s
Abl.	fēlīc ī	fēlīc ī	prūdent ī	prūdent ī
	Plural			
Nom.	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ia	prūdent ēs	prūdent ia
Gen.	fēlīc ium	fēlīc ium	prūdent ium	prūdent ium
Dat.	fēlīc ibus	fēlīc ibus	prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus
Acc.	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ia	prūdent ēs	prūdent ia
Voc.	fēlīc ēs	fēlīc ia	prūdent ēs	prūdent ia
Abl.	fēlīc ibus	fēlīc ibus	prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus

1. Similar to **fēlīx** are: —

audāx, audāc is, *bold.* **ferāx**, -ācis, *fertile.*
vēlōx, vēlōc is, *swift.* **ferōx**, -ōcis, *high-spirited.*
tenāx, -ācis, *tenacious.*

2. Similar to **prūdēns** are: —

(*a*) **The Adjectives**: —

sapiēns, *wise;* **dīligēns**, *careful;* **ingēns**, *immense.*

(*b*) **All Present Participles**, *e.g.*: —

amāns, *loving.* **regēns**, *ruling.*
oriēns, *rising.* **patiēns**, *suffering.*

NOTE. — Participles, and Adjectives used as Nouns, take Abl. Sing. in **-ĕ**.

Vetus, *old;* stem, **veter-**. **Plūs**, *more;* stem, **plūr-**

	SINGULAR			
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	———	plūs
Gen.	veter **is**	veter **is**	———	plūr **is**
Dat.	veter **ī**	veter **ī**	———	———
Acc.	veter **em**	vetus	———	plūs
Voc.	vetus	vetus	———	———
Abl.	veter **ĕ**	veter **ĕ**	———	plūr **ĕ**
	PLURAL			
Nom.	veter **ēs**	veter **a**	plūr **es**	plūr **a**
Gen.	veter **um**	veter **um**	plūr **ium**	plūr **ium**
Dat.	veter **ibus**	veter **ibus**	plūr **ibus**	plūr **ibus**
Acc.	veter **ēs**	veter **a**	plūr **ēs -īs**	plūr **a**
Voc.	veter **ēs**	veter **a**	———	———
Abl.	veter **ibus**	veter **ibus**	plūr **ibus**	plūr **ibus**

Pauper, -eris, *poor*, and **dīves**, -itis, *rich*, are of one termination.

NOTE. — (1) **vetus**, **pauper** and **dīves** are consonant stems: Abl. **-ĕ**; Gen. Plur. **-um.**

(2) **plūs** is partly an **i** stem; Gen. Plur. **-ium.**

EXERCISE

1. Fierce minds; of fierce minds; in fertile fields.
2. By a swift wind; swifter winds; bold animals.
3. A tenacious man (Acc.); of tenacious men.
4. We praise the wise and the good. (*What word is understood?*)
5. The master loves diligent boys.
6. He praises the good work of diligent boys.
7. We see the light of the rising sun.
8. Old soldiers; with an old soldier; of old soldiers.
9. The rich gave money to the poor.
10. More (of) time; more soldiers; more kinds; of more men.
11. The Germans had immense bodies.
12. They adorned the forum with the prows of old ships.
13. They collected more forces; more grain.

Review Word List

(*The figure after the word indicates the number of Latin words to be given for the English.*)

Geography

island	town	state	Gaul
sea (3)	village	mountain	Spain
river (2)	country	hill	Britain
city	(one's) country	valley	a people

Kinds of People

farmer	judge	children	old man
sailor	slave	father	youth
rower	man (2)	mother	son
workman	woman	brother	daughter
citizen	people (*pl.*)	sister	a Gaul
king	boy	wife	a Briton
lord	girl	husband	the Roman people

War

war
battle
leader
commander
lieutenant
soldier
infantry
cavalry
standard-bearer
hostage
ambassador
ship
ship-of-war
ship-of-burden
fleet
danger
slaughter
flight
fear
forces
enemy
camp
rampart
ditch
gate
street
mound
tower
baggage
beast of burden
aid
arms
shield
helmet
cuirass
sword
missile
javelin
spear
arrow
sling
battering-ram
war-engine

Adjectives

1. good, bad, wretched, brave, high, low, deep.
2. wise, foreseeing, bold, brave, swift (2), sharp, heavy.
3. sad, fortunate, happy, beautiful, sick, high-spirited.
4. pleasing, large, small, splendid, bright, distinguished, dear, careful.
5. rich, poor, old, young, ancient.

Verbs

First Conjugation

call, tell, fight, praise, give, announce, create, kill, wound, throw, wage war, attack, take-by-storm, prepare, reign, govern, pray, ask, build.

Second Conjugation

advise, see, fear, destroy, answer, have, hold, remain, fill, order.

THIRD CONJUGATION

rule, conquer, send, learn, lead, write, drive, carry (carry on, wage).

FOURTH CONJUGATION

hear, come, fortify, punish, leap down, bury.

PREPOSITIONS

(Recall the Case each governs.)

to, in, into, away from, out of, through, across, around, with, between, before (of place), before (of time), in behalf of, down from, about (concerning), around, without, on account of.

STORIES OF EARLY ROME

The Sibylline Books.

Secession of the Plebs to the Sacred Mount, 494 B.C.

Fable of the Body and the Members. — Tribune of the Plebs.

Coriolanus and the Volscians, 491 B.C.

Cincinnatus, 458 B.C.

The Decemvirs and the Laws of the Twelve Tables.

Appius Claudius and Virginia.

WARS WITH THE GAULS

Romans defeated at Allia, 390 B.C.

Rome occupied by the Gauls for 7 months. — Siege of the Capitol. — The Sacred Geese. — Camillus.

Titus Manlius Torquatus, 361 B.C.

Marcus Valerius Corvinus, 349 B.C.

ROME'S STRUGGLE FOR THE MASTERY OF ITALY

Wars with the Samnites, 345–290 B.C.

Defeat of the Romans at the Caudine Forks, 321 B.C.

Pyrrhus, King of Epīrus, invades Southern Italy in alliance with the people of Tarentum, 282–272 B.C.

Read the story of the Treacherous Slave.

HANNIBAL CROSSING THE RHONE

READING LESSONS

Based on { Declensions I, II, and III
Indic. Act. of **vocō, moneō, regō, audiō.**

(*For Vocabulary, see page 290*)

ROME

1. Rōma pulchrum Italiae oppidum erat. Rōmulus in colle Palātīnō condidit. Incolās Rōmānōs appellāmus. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et patriam amābant. Saepe cum vīcīnīs, Volscīs et Sabīnīs et Samnītibus, prō patriā pugnābant. Saepe hostēs in bellō superāvērunt.

SEVEN KINGS

2. Multās dē Rōmānīs antīquīs fābulās in librīs legimus: dē Cincinnātō, dē Horātiō, dē Camillō et Gallīs, dē mulieribus Sabīnīs, dē caede trīstī Virginiae. Nōn tamen omnēs fābulae vērae sunt. Septem rēgēs Rōmae erant: prīmus et conditor Rōmulus; ūltimus, vir crūdēlis, Tarquinius Superbus. Numa Pompilius, rēx secundus, religiōnem Rōmānīs dedit; multa et splendida templa in urbe aedificāvit. Post rēgēs, cōnsulēs duo quōque[1] annō creābant.

[1] each.

WARS WITH THE CARTHAGINIANS

3. Poenī in oppidō Karthāgine trāns mare habitābant. Hostēs ferōcēs Rōmānōrum semper erant et māgnās classēs ad omnēs ōrās Maris Internī mittēbant. Mercātōrēs et nautae praeclārī erant. Etiam in Ōceanum ad Britanniam vēnērunt. Multās īnsulās circum Sici-

liam, multa in Siciliā oppida habēbant. Hispāniam omnem usque ad flūmen Ibērum superāvērunt et Rōmānōs ex Hispāniā pellere volēbant. Hannibal, adulēscēns strēnuus atque fortis, ā puerō inimīcus Rōmānōrum erat. Hannibalem mīlitēs ducem dēlēgērunt.

HANNIBAL CROSSES THE ALPS

4. Māgnās cōpiās, multōs elephantōs parāvit. Trāns Pȳrēnaeōs montēs in Galliam mīlitēs dūxit et prīncipum animōs Gallōrum verbīs benīgnīs dōnīsque māgnīs conciliāvit. Trāns Rhodanum flūmen mīlitēs, elephantōs, omnia impedīmenta ratibus lintribusque trānsportāvit. Elephantī autem flūmen māgnopere pertimēscēbant. Ad Alpēs tandem vēnit et ascendere contendit. Multa perīcula, multās calamitātēs in itinere sustinēbat. Per nivem, per rūpēs iter fēcit; dē monti' us tandem in Italiam dēscendit. Quīnque mēnsibus [illegible] ex Hispāniā cōnfēcerat. Sed multōs mīlitēs, et ped[illegible]s et equitēs, elephantōrum māgnum numerum āmīserat.

HANNIBAL DEFEATED. CARTHAGE DESTROYED

5. Annōs sēdecim cum Rōmānīs bellum gessit. Multīs in proeliīs Rōmānōs superāvit; multa oppida in Italiā occupāvit. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō tandem, māgnae virtūtis adulēscēns et māgnae bellī scientiae, in Africam vēnit. Hannibalem ex Italiā arcessunt Poenī. Scīpiō Poenōs et ducem Hannibalem apud Zāmam, Africae oppidum, vīcit. Propter tantam victōriam Rōmānī posteā Scīpiōnem Africānum appellābant. Post paucōs annōs, tertiō bellō Poenicō, Rōmānī Carthāginem dēlent et mūrōs rescindunt.

LESSON XXIX

FOURTH DECLENSION

"U" Stems

	Frūctus, m., *fruit*; stem **frūctu-**		**Cornū**, n., *horn*; stem **cornu-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	frūct **ŭs**	frūct **ūs**	corn **ū**	corn **ua**
Gen.	frūct **ūs**	frūct **uum**	corn **ūs**	corn **uum**
Dat.	frūct **uī**	frūct **ibus**	corn **ū**	corn **ibus**
Acc.	frūct **um**	frūct **ūs**	corn **ū**	corn **ua**
Voc.	frūct **ŭs**	frūct **ūs**	corn **ū**	corn **ua**
Abl.	frūct **ū**	frūct **ibus**	corn **ū**	corn **ibus**

Compare the stems in the following Genitive Plurals: —

terrā rum, **dominŏ** rum, **princip** um, **urbi** um, **frūctu** um.

Gender

Most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in **-us** are Masculine. All ending in **-ū** are Neuter, as: —

MASCULINE	NEUTER
exercitus, *army.*	**genū**, *knee.*
fluctus, *wave.*	**verū**, *a spit.*
portus, *harbor.*	
senātus, *senate.*	
cōnspectus, *sight.*	

Exceptions: —

Feminine: **domus**, *house*; **manus**, 1. *hand*, 2. *band*, or *force of men*; **quercus**, *an oak*, and other names of trees; **Idūs**, **-uum**, plur., *Ides* (13th or 15th of the month).

Peculiarities of Declension

1. The ending **-ūbus** is sometimes found instead of **-ibus**. Sometimes **-ubus**: —

artūs, *limbs.*
portus, *harbor.*

dissyllables in **-cus**, as: —

arcus, *bow.* **lacus**, *lake.*
acus, *needle* **quercus**, *oak.*

Always **-ubus**: —

tribus, *tribe.*

2. **Domus**, *house, home,* is partly of the Fourth and partly of the Second Declension: —

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs (Locative, domī)	domuum, domōrum
Dat.	domuī, domō	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs, domūs
Voc.	domus	domūs
Abl.	domō (domū rarely)	domibus

Locative Case. — An old form surviving in a few nouns, denoting "*place where.*"

Note the following values: —

domī (Loc.), *at home* (domūs, *of a house*).
domum, (*to*) *home* (preposition **ad** omitted).
domō, *from home* (preposition **ab** or **ex** omitted).
also **domōs**, *to their homes.*

Names of towns and cities also use the Locative for "*place where,*" and omit the prepositions before the Acc. and Abl., *e.g.*: —

Rōmae (Loc.), *at Rome;* **Rōmam**, *to Rome;* **Rōmā**, *from Rome.*

Corinthī (Loc.), *in Corinth;* **Corinthum**, *to Corinth;* **Corinthō**, *from Corinth.*

Carthāgine (Loc.), *in Carthage;* **Carthāginem**, *to Carthage,* **Carthāgine**, *from Carthage.*

Athēnīs (Loc.), *in Athens;* **Athēnās**, *to Athens;* **Athēnīs**, *from Athens.*

Similarly, **rūs**, *the country*: —

rūrī (Loc.), *in the country;* **rūs**, *to the country;* **rūre**, *from the country.*

Note. — In Singular nouns of the First and Second Declensions, the Locative is identical with the Genitive. In other nouns it is the

same as the Ablative. **Rūrī, domī,** and a few other words are pure Locatives.

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 290*)

A. 1. Māgnō cum exercitū; māgnōrum exercituum dūcēs.
2. Māgnum exercitum habet. Exercitūs māgnī est dux.
3. Hostēs in cōnspectū nōn erant; in cōnspectum nōn vēnerant.
4. Equitātuī equōs dat. Equitibus equōs dat.
5. Nāvēs in fluctibus Ōceanī adflictābat ventus.
6. Multī portūs in ōrīs Galliae erant.
7. Māgnās manūs Gallī coēgerant.
8. Domum meam in agrīs aedificāvī.
9. Splendidae domūs Trōjae erant.
10. Peditātum mīsit; peditēs mittet.
11. Māgnus erat numerus peditum; partem peditātūs mittēmus.

B. 1. The enemy had large armies, — large forces.
2. In the Roman army there were many legions.
3. He led both infantry and cavalry into Gaul.
(Give two words each for *infantry* and *cavalry*.)
4. They nourish their bodies by the fruit of the fields.
5. Oxen have large horns and small feet.
6. He came with a large part of the infantry soldiers.
7. The infantry came with the cavalry (1. —— 2. ——).
8. (*a*) At home. (*b*) He sent the hostages home. (*c*) The Germans had driven the Gauls from home. (*d*) The roof of our house was high.
9. They stretched out their (*suus*) hands to Caesar.
10. The oaks are high; of a high oak; of high oaks.
11. They built large houses on the high hill.

LESSON XXX

FIFTH DECLENSION

"E" Stems

	Diēs, m., *day*; stem, **diē-**	**Rēs**, f., *thing*; stem, **rē-**	**Spēs**, f., *hope*; stem, **spē-**	**Fidēs**, f., *faith*; stem, **fidē-**
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	diē **s**	rē **s**	spē **s**	fidē **s**
Gen.	diē **ī**	rē **ī**	spē **ī**	fidē **ī**
Dat.	diē **ī**	rē **ī**	spē **ī**	fidē **ī**
Acc.	die **m**	re **m**	spe **m**	fide **m**
Voc.	diē **s**	rē **s**	spē **s**	fidē **s**
Abl.	diē	rē	spē	fidē
		PLURAL		
Nom.	diē **s**	rē **s**	spē **s**	——
Gen.	diē **rum**	rē **rum**	——	——
Dat.	diē **bus**	rē **bus**	——	——
Acc.	diē **s**	rē **s**	spē **s**	——
Voc.	diē **s**	rē **s**	——	——
Abl.	diē **bus**	rē **bus**	——	——

1. Compare the stems of **terrā** rum, **servō** rum, **prīncip** um, **hosti** um, **frūctu** um, **diē** rum, and designate the five declensions according to the ending of the stem.

2. Notice that in **diēī**, **speciēī**, **aciēī**, etc., the **e** of the stem is **long after a vowel**; but that in **rĕī**, **spēī**, **fidēī** it is **short after a consonant.**

Gender

All nouns of the Fifth Declension, except **diēs** and **meridiēs**, are **feminine**, as: —

rēs, *thing, matter, affair.*
spēs, *hope.*
fidēs, *faith.*
aciēs, *line of battle.*
speciēs, *appearance.*
plānitiēs, *plain.*

Exceptions :—

Diēs, *day* (usually), and **meridiēs**, *mid-day* (always), are **masculine**.
Diēs is sometimes **fem.** in the **sing.** in the sense *appointed day*.

Peculiarities

1. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout in both sing. and plur.

2. Most other nouns of the Fifth Declension lack the entire plural, especially abstract nouns.

3. **Spēs, aciēs, speciēs,** and a few others have the Nom. and Acc. plur. **spēs,** etc.

4. **Rēs,** *a thing, matter, affair,* etc.

This word may be translated in many different ways, according to the context. Note the following phrases :—

rēs militāris, *military science.*
rēs novae (pl.), *revolution, political change.*
rēs gestae, *achievements, exploits.*
rēs familiāris, *private fortune, business,* etc.

5. The idea of *thing* or *things* is frequently expressed by omitting **rēs** and using the adjective in the neuter as a substantive :—

many things { 1. **multae rēs.** 2. **multa** (n. pl.). } *a good thing* { 1. **rēs bona.** 2. **bonum.** }
goods, property, **bona** (n. pl.).

Rēs pūblica, *commonwealth, republic, public welfare.*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	rēs pūblica	rēs pūblicae
Gen.	reī pūblicae	rērum pūblicārum
Dat.	reī pūblicae	rēbus pūblicīs
Acc.	rem pūblicam	rēs pūblicās
Voc.	rēs pūblica	rēs pūblicae
Abl.	rē pūblicā	rēbus pūblicīs

Numerals

Cardinals		Ordinals	
ūnus, -a, -um,	*one.*	**primus,**	*first.*
duo, -ae, -o,	*two.*	**secundus,**	*second.*
trēs, tria,	*three.*	**tertius,**	*third.*
quattuor,	*four.*	**quārtus,**	*fourth.*
quinque,	*five.*	**quīntus,**	*fifth.*
sex,	*six.*	**sextus,**	*sixth.*
septem,	*seven.*	**septimus,**	*seventh.*
octō,	*eight.*	**octāvus,**	*eighth.*
novem,	*nine.*	**nōnus,**	*ninth.*
decem,	*ten.*	**decimus,**	*tenth.*

The ordinals are declined like **bonus**.

(*For complete list see page 116*)

Expressions of Time

1. **Time "when"** and time "**within which**" are expressed by the **Ablative without a preposition**, as: —

aestāte, *in the summer.*
diē tertiō, *on the third day.*
quinque diēbus, *within five days.*

2. **Time "how long,"** or duration of time, is expressed by the **Accusative of extent**, as: —

multōs annōs rēgnābat, *he reigned many years.*
tōtum diem pugnāvērunt, *they fought all day.*

EXERCISE

(*For Vocabulary, see page 290*)

A. 1. Māgnam spem victōriae habēbant.
2. Aciem triplicem in colle īnstrūxit.
3. Ante tertium diem vēnit; diē quartō veniet.
4. Post paucōs diēs exercitum ē castrīs ēdūxērunt.
5. Multa ante fīnem diēī accident.

6. Nāvium speciēs inūsitāta barbarōs terret.
7. Mīlitēs in aciē trēs hōrās stābant.
8. Virtūs causa est multārum rērum bĕnĕ gestārum.
9. Rōmānī multīs rēbus Gallōs superābant.
10. Obsidēs in fidem suam accipiet.
11. Multās rēs bonā fidē gessit.
12. Omnia bona sua in silvīs dēposuērunt.
13. Rēs mīlitāris mōtum celerem postulat.

B. 1. We praise Caesar's achievements.
2. They report the matter to Caesar.
3. The plain was not large.
4. The days of youth are happy.
5. Before the fifth day; of the fourth day.
6. In five days he took (*expugnō*) the camp.
7. They remained in camp seven days.
8. They came with great hope of victory.
9. We had great hopes.
10. They laid aside all hope of safety.
11. They formed a long line of battle.
12. He ordered the Gauls to bring hostages by (*ad*) the tenth day (*fem.*).
13. (It) is a good (thing) to love good books.
14. The Gauls loved revolution.
15. They fought for the republic; loved the republic; the dangers of the republic; in the republic.

Phrases

aciem instruō, *form line of battle.*
aciem convertō, *face about.*
aciēs cōnferta, *a compact line of battle.*
aciēs oculōru ı, *the fierce, keen gaze of the eyes.*
aciēs ferrī, *edge of the sword.*

(Root **ac-**, *sharp.*)

PECULIAR NOUNS OF ALL DECLENSIONS

(*For reference*)

I. Indeclinable

fās, *right.*
nefās, *wrong.*
nihil, *nothing.*
instar, *likeness.*
māne, *morning.*

II. Defective

1. No plural: —

Proper nouns; as **Rōma**, *Rome.*
Abstract nouns; as **auctōritās**, *influence.*
Names of material; as **aurum**, *gold.*

2. No singular: —

mājōrēs, *ancestors;* **geminī**, *twins;* **faucēs**, *jaws.*
Many names of cities; as **Athēnae**, *Athens;* **Syrācūsae**, *Syracuse.*

arma, *arms.*
dīvitiae, *riches.*
insidiae, *ambush.*
sarcinae, *small baggage.*
mānēs, *the shades of the dead.*
nūptiae, *nuptials.*
reliquiae, *remains.*
tenebrae, *darkness.*

3. Used only in certain cases: —

jussū, *by order;* **nātū**, *by birth;* **fors**, *chance;* **forte**, *by chance;* (ops) **opis**, **opī**, **opem**, **ope**, *help;* plur., **opēs**, **opum**, etc., *wealth, resources, power.*

III. Varying the meaning in the plural

Singular	Plural
aedēs, *temple.*	**aedēs**, *house.*
auxilium, *aid.*	**auxilia**, *auxiliary troops, reinforcements.*
castrum, *fort, castle.*	**castra**, *camp.*
cōpia, *plenty.*	**cōpiae**, (1) *supplies,* (2) *forces, troops.*
finis, *end, limit.*	**finēs**, *boundaries, territories.*
grātia, *favor.*	**grātiae**, *thanks.*
impedīmentum, *hindrance.*	**impedīmenta**, *heavy baggage.*
littera, *letter of the alphabet.*	**litterae**, (1) *epistle,* (2) *literature.*
mōs, *custom.*	**mōrēs**, *morals, character.*
(ops) **opis**, *help.*	**opēs**, *resources, power.*

IV. Heterogeneous nouns (varying in Gender)

locus, m., *place.* { **loca**, n. plur., *places.* / **loci**, m. plur., *topics.*

epulum, n., *feast.* **epulae**, f. plur., *feast.*

V. Heteroclites (of different Declensions)

epulum (sing.), **epulae** (plur.), second and first.
jūgerum, *acre;* plur. **jūgera**, **-um**, **-ibus**, second and third.
vās, **vāsis**, *jar, vase;* plur. **vāsa**, **-ōrum**, third and second.
domus, *house*, second and fourth.

THE OLYMPIC DEITIES

as worshipped by the Romans

JUPITER	JUNO
MARS	MINERVA
NEPTUNE	DIANA
APOLLO	VENUS
VULCAN	CERES
MERCURY	VESTA

MINOR DEITIES AND DEIFIED HEROES

BACCHUS, *god of wine.*

CASTOR and POLLUX ("*The Twins*"), *brothers of Helen of Troy, guardians of sailors.*

THE MUSES (see page 154).

AURORA, *goddess of the dawn.*

HERCULES, *hero of the twelve labors.*

PAN, *god of shepherds.*

PLUTO (Hades), *god of the lower world; brother of Jupiter and Neptune.*

THE FATES (Parcae) (Clotho, Lachesis and Atropos).

AEOLUS, *god of the winds.*

Read the story of Prometheus, Epimetheus and Pandora.

JULIUS CAESAR LANDING IN BRITAIN

READING LESSONS

JULIUS CAESAR INVADES BRITAIN (55 B.C.)

(*See General Vocabulary*)

1. He sails from Gaul. — Cāius Jūlius Caesar ōlim in Galliā bellum gerēbat. Britannī autem Gallīs auxilium saepe subministrāverant. Caesar igitur Britannōs pūnīre et domī manēre cōgere volēbat. Multās nāvēs longās in portibus Galliae habēbat. Multās nāvēs onerāriās fabrōs aedificāre jussit. Ubi tandem tempestās idōnea erat, omnēs cōnscendere jussit et nāves solvit.

2. His landing resisted. — Ventus lēnis peditēs in prīmīs nāvibus ad ōrās Britanniae appulit. Equitēs vērō tempestās māgna ad Galliam rējēcit. Ubi Rōmānī īnsulae appropinquāvērunt, in omnibus collibus Britannōs vīdērunt. Caesar mīlitēs ē nāvibus in terram expōnere incipit. Britannī autem in exercitum Rōmānōrum tēla ex āridō coniciēbant. Mox tamen Rōmānī ad lītus per fluctūs pervēnērunt et barbarōs in silvās reppulērunt.

3. Brave conduct of a standard-bearer. — In hōc proeliō, dum hostēs equōs īnsuēfactōs incitant et Rōmānōs novō genere pugnae perterrent, aquilifer decimae legiōnis sīgnum manibus arripuit et māgnā vōce commīlitōnēs dēsilīre et impetum in hostēs facere jussit. Ubi hōc dīxit, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit et aquilam in hostēs ferre coepit. Tum reliquī omnēs dēsiluērunt et hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

4. The natives submit. His ships wrecked. — Caesar nāvēs in lītus subdūcī et castra mūnīrī jussit. Hostēs

statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt. Caesar obsidēs imperāvit et Britannōs in agrōs suōs remigrāre jussit. Māgna tempestās intereā nāvēs Rōmānōrum in lītore adflictāvit. Fūnēs, ancorās reliquaque armāmenta āmīsērunt. Māgnus erat omnium mīlitum timor. Nāvēs enim nūllas jam habēbant neque ad Galliam pervenīre potuērunt.[1]

5. **The Britons again attack.** — Ubi prīncipēs Britannōr[illegible]alamitātem Caesaris cognōvērunt, domō suōs revocāvērunt atque impetum in castra facere parābant. Legiōnem decimam Caesar frūmentum in castra comportāre jusserat. Britannī subitō in legiōnem impetum fēcērunt et pulverem māgnum rotīs essedārum excitāvērunt. Caesar, ubi pulverem ex castrīs cōnspexit, cohortēs ad locum, ubi Britannī mīlitēs circumvēnerant, dūxit. Britannī per omnēs partēs perequitābant et Rōmānōs strepitū rotārum perturbābant. Ubi vērō Caesarem cum cohortibus vīdērunt, cōnstitērunt atque domum ex agrīs discessērunt.

6. **Final attack of the Britons repulsed.** — Post paucōs diēs prīncipēs māgnam multitūdinem peditātūs equitātūsque coēgērunt et ad castra vēnērunt. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit et proelium commīsit. Hostēs impetum Rōmānōrum sustinēre nōn potuērunt et terga vertērunt. Lēgātōs posteā ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. Caesar numerum obsidum duplicāvit et ad continentem addūcī jussit.

Complūrēs nāvēs fabrī intereā refēcerant. Caesar igitur mīlitēs nāvēs cōnscendere jussit et omnēs incolumēs ad Galliam redūxit.

[1] Perf. of **possum**, *am able, can.*

LESSON XXXI

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Regular Comparison

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, *high.*	**alt ior**, *higher.*	**alt issimus**, 1. *highest;* 2. *very high*
brevis	**brev ior**	**brev issimus**
prūdēns	**prūdent ior**	**prūdent issimus**
audāx	**audāc ior**	**audāc issimus**

The Comparative degree is declined as follows: —

M. AND F.	N.
alt ior	**alt ius**
alt iōris	**alt iōris**
etc.	etc.

(*See page 75*)

The Superlative is declined as follows: —

altissimus, -a, -um,
like **bonus.**

Similarly compare: —

longus, fortis, sapiēns, vēlōx, gravis, ūtilis, cārus.

The Latin word for "*than*" is **quam.**

Note, however, the two constructions following: —

Virtue is more precious than gold.
1. Virtūs cārior **quam aurum** est.
2. Virtūs cārior **aurō** (*Abl.*) est.

1. When "*than*" is expressed by **quam**, the second term of the comparison is put in the same case as the first, *e.g.*: —

virtūs quam aurum.

2. **Quam** may be omitted. Then the second term of the comparison is put in the Ablative. This is called the **Ablative of Comparison**, *e.g.*: —

aurō = quam aurum.

3. **Quam** is not omitted except when both terms of the comparison would otherwise be in the Nominative or the Accusative, *e.g.* :—

(*a*) *He praises the girls more than* (*he praises*) *the boys.*
1. Puellās plūs **quam puerōs** laudat.
2. Puellās **pueris** plūs laudat.

(*b*) *He gives more praise to the girls than to the boys.*
Puellis plūs laudis (*more of praise*) quam **pueris** dat.
It would be wrong here to omit **quam** before the Dative **pueris**.

4. Note the two meanings of the Superlative: —
brevissima via, 1. *the shortest way*; 2. *a very short way.*

5. **Quam** with the **Superlative** expresses the **highest degree possible**, as: —
vir quam sapientissimus, *a man as wise as possible.*

6. The Comparative may signify "*rather*" or "*too*":—
sapientior, 1. *wiser*; 2. *rather wise*; 3. *too wise.*

but sometimes **aequō** or **iūstō**, "*than what is right*," is added to signify "*too.*"

EXERCISE

A. 1. Altiōrēs arborēs.
2. In altiōribus arboribus.
3. Brevius tempus.
4. Breviōris temporis.
5. Breve tempus.
6. Longiōre itinere.
7. In lātiōribus castrīs.
8. Fortiōrum hominum.
9. Noctēs sunt brevissimae.
10. Belgās, Gallōrum fortissimōs, vīcit.
11. Mūrum quam altissimum aedificābunt.
12. Per nivem altiōrem.
13. Maria sunt altiōra; marium altiōrum.
14. In marī altiōre.
15. Librum dīligentiōrī puerō dabimus.

B. 1. In a wider harbor.
2. He drew up a very long line.
3. More useful books.
4. Buy a more useful book.
5. They are the bravest of all.
6. They have the widest territories.
7. He builds as strong ships as possible.
8. Of deeper rivers; into a deeper river.
9. On a higher tower; to a wider shore.
10. He came with a braver army.
11. By a rather long route.
12. Through the thickest woods.

In the following substitute, where possible, another construction to translate "*than.*" Otherwise indicate the reason for not substituting.

C. 1. Pater sapientior est quam fīlius.
2. Germānī Gallīs erant ferōciōrēs.
3. Mīlitēs Germānōrum fortiōrēs erant quam Gallōrum.
4. Librum ūtiliōrem puerō dedit quam puellae.
5. Noctēs breviōrēs in īnsulīs sunt quam in continentī.
6. Onus quam gravissimum portāmus.
7. Onus est gravius. (*Give all possible meanings.*)

D. 1. On a higher hill.
2. A longer road.
3. After a short time; a shorter time; as short a time as possible.
4. The road is very long.
5. The roads are longer; of longer roads.
6. On account of the very deep snow.
7. They drew the baggage through snow deeper than the wheels of the carts.

8. Ships are more useful to Britons than to Gauls.
9. Sons are not wiser than (their) fathers.
10. He chose the boldest of all the soldiers.
11. He will lead the army by a rather long route.
12. Gold is heavier than iron or silver.

Ablative of Difference

In the sentence

Puer sex annīs senior est quam soror,

The boy is (by) six years older than his sister,

annīs denotes the "*difference by which*" and is called the **Ablative of Difference.**

If **sorōre** were substituted for **quam soror,** the sentence would then have an **Ablative of Difference** and an **Ablative of Comparison.**

EXERCISE

Translate in two ways: —

1. The tree is five feet taller than the house.
2. The girls are a few years older than the boys.

M. VALERIUS CORVĪNUS

Exercitus Rōmānus ōlim cum Gallīs bellum gerēbat. Quīdam[1] ex Gallīs ad castra Rōmāna vēnit et māgnā vōce ūnum ex Rōmānīs prōvocāvit.[2]

Tum M. Valērius sē[3] obtulit.[4] Postquam armātus prōcessit, corvus[5] suprā galeam sēdit.[6] Mox, ubi proelium commīsērunt,[7] ālīs[8] et unguibus[9] ōs oculōsque Gallī verberāvit.[10] Ita avis nōn victōriam sōlum sed etiam nōmen Rōmānō dedit.

[1] *a certain one.* [2] *challenge.* [3] *himself.* [4] Perf. of **obferō**, *offer, present.*
[5] *raven, crow.* [6] **sedeō**, *sit.* [7] *join battle.*
[8] **āla**, *wing.* [9] **unguis**, *nail, claw.* [10] *beat.*

EDUCATION DEPARTMENT
REGISTRAR'S OFFICE.

LESSON XXXII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

1. **Adjectives ending in** . . add **-rimus** (not -issimus) to form the **Superlative.**

The **Comparative** drops or retains the **e** before **r**, according to the actual stem; thus, **ācr-**, **ācrior**; but **celer-**, **celerior.**

pulcher	**pulchr ior**	**pulcher rimus**
līber (*free*)	**līber ior**	**līber rimus**
ācer	**ācr ior**	**ācer rimus**
celer	**celer ior**	**celer rimus**
sacer	(no Comparative)	**sacer rimus**

vetus (stem **veter-**) really belongs here:—

vetus	(no Comparative)	**veter rimus**

Compare **aeger, miser, asper, pauper, crēber** (*frequent, numerous*).

2. **The following six adjectives in -ilis** add **-limus** (not -issimus) to form the Superlative:—

facilis, *easy*	**facil ior**	**facil limus**
difficilis, *difficult*	**difficil ior**	**difficil limus**
similis, *like*	**simil ior**	**simil limus**
dissimilis, *unlike*	**dissimil ior**	**dissimil limus**
gracilis *slender*	**gracil ior**	**gracil limus**
humus, *low*	**humil ior**	**humil limus**

Contrast with these **ūtilis, ūtilior, ūtilissimus.**

3. Adjectives ending in **-dĭcus, -fĭcus, -vŏlus** (from dīcō, *say;* faciō, *make, do;* volō, *wish*), base the Comparative and Superlative on the **stem of the present**

participle ending -dīcēns, -ficēns, -volēns; stem, **-dīcent, -ficent, -volent**: —

maledicus, *slanderous*	**maledicent ior**	**maledicent issimus**
māgnificus, *magnificent*	**māgnificent ior**	**māgnificent issimus**
benevolus, *kindly*	**benevolent ior**	**benevolent issimus**

4. The comparison of the following is mixed and quite irregular: —

bŏnus, *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
mălus, *bad*	**pējor**	**pessimus**
māgnus, *large*	**mājor**	**māximus**
parvus, *small, little*	**mĭnor**, *smaller, less*	**minimus**, *smallest, least*
multus, *much*, plur., *many*	**plūs**	**plūrimus**
dīves, *rich*	**dīvitior** (prose) **dĭtior** (poetry)	**dīvitissimus** (prose) **dĭtissimus** (poetry)

plūs in the singular is a **neuter substantive**: —

plūs virtūtis, *more* (of) *valor*.
but **plūrēs cōpiae**, *more forces* (**plurēs** an **adj.**).

EXERCISES

A. 1. Mīles ācrior; corvus veterrimus.
2. Iter est facilius; rēs est facillima.
3. In meliōre nāvī; optimōrum cīvium jūra.
4. Māxima tempestās nāvēs adflictāvit.
5. Puer patrī simillimus erat.
6. Domus est templō multīs partibus minor.
7. Vīcīnus nōn est dīvitior amīcō meō.
8. Nāvēs quam plūrimās aedificant.
9. Difficillimum est mare hieme nāvigāre.
10. Pulverem mājōrem vīdērunt.

B. 1. To the most beautiful of all the girls; to a more beautiful girl.
2. The easiest of the roads was near the sea.
3. By an easier road; the road is rather easy.
4. We live in a very free state.
5. The ships were very low; as low as possible.
6. Keener winters; in the keenest winter; in the most frequent places.
7. The children are very like their parents.
8. The books are most useful.
9. In a larger camp; into a smaller temple; in smaller house.
10. The boys are not better than their fathers.
11. They praise Jupiter, the greatest and best of the gods.
12. The gods are kindly to men; of a more kindly mind.
13. On a more beautiful day; by a swifter march (*celer*).
14. On a very old (*vetus*) tree; on behalf of a better citizen.
15. More (of) praise; with more forces; of more forces; more seas.

LESSON XXXIII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(Continued)

Defective Comparison

The following irregularities in the comparison of adjectives occur: —

1. Lacking the Positive.

(**prae**, *in front of*)	**prior**, *former, previous, first of two*	**primus**, *first, foremost*
(**citrā**, *this side of*)	**citerior**, *nearer*	**citimus**, *nearest*

(**intrā**, *within*)	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**, *inmost*
(**prŏpe**, *near*)	**prŏpior**, *nearer*	**proximus**, *nearest, next*
(**ūltrā**, *beyond*)	**ūlterior**, *farther*	**ūltimus**, *farthest, last*

(*For Reference*)

The following have the positive only in special cases (note also the double superlatives): —

posterō diē, annō, etc., *on the following day*, etc.	**posterior**, *later*	**postremus**, *latest, last*
posterī, -ōrum, *descendants*		**postumus**, *late-born, posthumous*
exterī, *foreigners, "outlanders"*	**exterior**, *outer*	**extrēmus**) *outermost,* **extimus**) *last*
nātiōnēs exterae, *foreign nations*		
Īnferī, *gods of the lower world* (**infrā**, *below*)	**inferior**, *lower*	**intimus**) *lowest* **imus**)
Mare Īnferum, *Lower Sea, Mediterranean*	**ab īnferiōre parte**, *on the lower side*	**imus mōns**, *foot of the mountain*
Superī, *the gods above*	**superior**, (1) *higher*, (2) *previous*	**suprēmus**, *last*
Mare Superum, *Upper Sea, Adriatic*		**summus**, *highest, uppermost, utmost*
		summus mōns, *top of the mountain.*

superior aestās, *the previous summer.*
superiōra loca, *heights.*
summus imperātor, *consummate commander.*

2. Lacking the Comparative.

novus, *new*	——[1]	**novissimus**, *last, latest*
sacer, *sacred*	——	**sacerrimus**
vetus, *old*	——[2]	**veterrimus**

agmen novissimum, *the rear of the column.*
primum agmen, *the van, vanguard.*
novissimi, *those at the rear.*
but **ā tergō**, *behind one's back.*

3. Lacking the Superlative.

ingēns, *immense*	**ingentior**	
juvenis, *young*	**jūnior**,	**nātū minimus**, *youngest* (= "*least by birth*")
senex, *old*	**senior**,	**nātū māximus**, *oldest* (= "*greatest by birth*")

nātū mājor sometimes = **senior.**
mājōrēs, *ancestors* (literally "*elders*").

Adverbial Comparison

Adjectives which end in **-us, preceded by a vowel**, are compared by the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **māximē**, *most*, as: —

idōneus, *suitable*	**magis idōneus**	**māximē idōneus**

Similarly

arduus, *steep;* **dubius**, *doubtful;* **strēnuus**, *active.*

Adjectives in **-quus** are only an **apparent exception**, **-qu** being equal in sound to **kw**, and the **u** consequently being in value a consonant.

antīquus, *ancient,*	**antīquior,**	**antīquissimus.**
inīquus, *unequal, unfavorable.*	**inīquior,**	**inīquissimus.**

[1] *Newer*, **recentior**; *newest*, **recentissimus.** [2] Supplied by **vetustior.**

EXERCISE

A.
1. Priōre diē; prīmā lūce.
2. In summō monte; ad īmum collem.
3. Puer summae industriae.
4. Ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae vēnērunt.
5. Herculēs ad Īnferōs dēscendit.
6. Castra locō māximē idōneō posuit.
7. Locum nostrīs inīquissimum dēlēgērunt.
8. Seniōrēs priōrēs.
9. Ex ūltimīs terrae ōrīs; in citeriōrem Galliam.
10. Multa bella mājōrēs nostrī gessērunt.
11. In ūlteriōre flūminis rīpā hostēs vīdērunt.
12. Belgae sunt Germānīs proximī.

B.
1. On the following day; on the heights.
2. In hither Gaul; into farther Gaul.
3. In the previous year; in early spring (*prīmus*).
4. On the top of a mound; to the foot of a tree.
5. We owe much to our ancestors.
6. Out of a more doubtful contest.
7. Several from the rear withdrew.
8. The enemy made an attack upon the van.
9. He chose a place more suitable for a camp.
10. On the tops of the hills; to the foot of the mountain
11. He drew up a triple line on the farther bank.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

On Comparison

1. He fought in the front rank (*prīma aciēs*).
2. He chose the youngest of the boys.
3. In the van; from the van.
4. Into a colder river; by a swifter (*vēlōx*) wind.
5. Of the wisest citizens.

6. The oldest are not always the best.
7. They will send a better army.
8. Juniors first; seniors later.
9. He left his books to posterity.
10. They occupied the heights with a very large band (*manus*).
11. By a fiercer (*ācer*) attack.
12. He sent the swiftest ships.
13. On the shortest day of the year.
14. Five years older.
15. They will send as many as possible.
16. A worse disaster (Acc.); a fiercer battle.
17. He wrote the most useful books.
18. By the most difficult route.
19. In very numerous (*crēber*) places.
20. The judge is wiser than the king. (Give two versions.)
21. Down from a higher tower.
22. Concerning a better plan.
23. He gave more money to the poorest of his neighbors.
24. They opened more roads; collected more forces.

New Words

Leave, choose, contest, triple line, bank, owe, plan.

LITUUS

Lituus equitēs ad proelium vocat.

MINERVA

(*Greek*, ATHĒNĒ)

Minerva ex capite Jovis armāta exsiluisse dīcitur. Dea bellī et eārum artium fuit quārum mulierēs perītae sunt. Fēminās texere, virōs māximā cum arte bellāre docuit. Haec dea innūpta erat.

Clipeum manū sinistrā tenet. Caput galeā tegitur. Pallas interdum appellātur. Palladium, ējus simulācrum, dē caelō cecidisse dīcēbātur. In templō deae ā Trōjānis positum est.

LESSON XXXIV

Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

Gen. in **-ius**; Dat. in **-i**

Review the declension of **bonus** (page 36). Compare the following declension of **ūnus** and note the irregularities: —

ūnus, *one, alone*

	Singular		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ūn us	ūn a	ūn um
Gen.	ūn ius	ūn ius	ūn ius
Dat.	ūn ī	ūn ī	ūn ī
Acc.	ūn um	ūn am	ūn um
Voc.		(*lacking*)	
Abl.	ūn ō	ūn ā	ūn ō
	Plural		
Nom.	ūn ī	ūn ae	ūn a
		(Like **bonus**)	

Note the following variations: —

Nom. **alius, alia, aliud**, *another, other*
Gen. **alius**
Dat. **aliī**
Acc. **alium, aliam, aliud**
etc. etc. etc.

Nom. **alter, altera, alterum**, *the one of two, the other*
Gen. **alterius**
Dat. **alterī**
etc. etc. etc.

In this manner are declined : —

1. **alius**, alia, aliud, *other.*
2. **sōlus**, -a, -um, *alone.*
3. **tōtus**, -a, -um, *whole.*
4. **ūllus** (= ūn ulus), -a, -um, *any.*
5. **nūllus** (n ūllus), -a, -um, *no, none.*
6. **ūnus**, -a, -um, *one, alone.*
7. **alter**, altera, alterum, *the one, the other, the second.*
8. **uter**, utra, utrum, *which of the two?*
9. **neuter**, neutra, neutrum, *neither.*

(Note that **alterīus** is the only Genitive of this class that has i short.)

alius . . . **alius**, *one* . . . *another.*
aliī (pl.) . . . **aliī** (pl.), *some* . . . *others.*

alter . . . **alter**, *the one* . . . *the other.*
alterī (pl.) . . . **alterī** (pl.), *the one party* . . . *the other party.*

Ūnus is used for *one* in contrasting numbers, *one, two, three,* etc. ; **alter** contrasts the *members of a pair.*

In a series, *first, second, third,* etc., **alter** = *second.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, both.*
uterque cōnsul (not plur.), *both consuls.*
utrīque (plur.), *both parties* or *groups.*

Nēmō (Acc. nēminem), pronoun, = *no one*, never employs the Gen. nēminis or Abl. nēminē. Instead, the adj. forms **nūllīus**, **nūllō**, are used.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Ūnī puerō librum dedit. Utrī dedit?
2. Mīlitēs ūnīus cohortis mīsit.
3. Aliud bellum gessit.
4. Aliī puerō librōs dedit magister.
5. Alīus īnsulae ; alterīus lateris ; alterī virō.
6. Tōtīus Galliae cīvitātēs vīcit.
7. Aliī puellae rosam dat, aliī corōnam, aliī librum.
8. Alterī rosās, alterī librōs dāmus.
9. Utrīus cōnsulis exercitum Hannibal vīcit?
10. Utrīusque exercitūs mīlitēs superāvit.

11. Et exercitum et classem mīsērunt.[1]
12. Ūnō tempore ē nāvibus dēsiliēbant et in fluctibus cōnsistēbant et in hostēs sīgna ferēbant.
13. Gallī et Rōmānī in rīpīs flūminis erant; utrique fortiter pugnābant; alterī equīs, alterī pedibus rem gerēbant.
14. In urbem vēnērunt neque ūllam rem mīram vīdērunt.

[1] Note the difference between the pronominal adj. **uterque**, *both*, and the conjunction **et**, *both*.

B. 1. With one legion; of the other legion; a defence for the whole island.
2. They built another temple in the forum.
3. He gave one boy three books.
4. One boy's book was black, another's red, another's white.
5. To one boy he gave a sword, to the other a beautiful shield.
6. One side was long, the other short.
7. Both boys love books (say "each boy").
8. Both the boys and the girls were playing in the field; the former (= *the one group*, pl.) with swords, the latter (= *the others*) with flowers.
9. Cicero and Demosthenes were most famous orators; the one a Roman, the other a Greek.
10. I shall give a flower to neither girl.

Observe this use of **alius**:—

Alius aliud dīxit, *One said one thing, another another* (lit., "*a different person said a different thing*"). **Alius ex aliā nāvī**, *one from one ship, another from another.*

Translate:—

1. He sent one envoy into one city, another into another.
2. Different soldiers came from different towns.

LESSON XXXV

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

1. From adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions**, adverbs are usually formed by the **suffix -ē**, as: —

altus, *deep*	**altē**, *deeply*
aeger, *ill, feeble*	**aegrē**, *feebly, scarcely, with difficulty*
līber, *free*	**līberē**, *freely*

2. From adjectives of the **Third Declension**, adverbs are usually formed by the **suffix -ter**, as: —

brevis, *brief*	**brevitер**, *briefly*
audāx, *bold*	**audācter**, *boldly*
fēlīx, *fortunate*	**fēliciter**, *fortunately*
ācer, *sharp, fierce*	**ācriter**, *sharply, fiercely*
prūdēns, *prudent*	**prūdenter**, *prudently*

(*Notice the dropping of the* **ti** *of the stem in* **prūdenter** and of **i** in **audācter**.)

EXERCISE

Form adverbs from the following adjectives: —

1. **longus, gravis, fortis, lātus, vēlōx** (like fēlīx), **sapiēns, diligēns.**
2. **pulcher, celer, miser, crēber.**

Irregular Adverbs

3. Some adverbs are formed from a case of the adjective, as follows: —

From the **Neuter Accusative**: —

(1) **multum**, *much.* **parum** (= **parvum**), *too little.*
tantum, *only.* **plūrimum**, *very much.*
sōlum, *only.* **facilē**, *easily.*

(2) **Comparative Adverbs**, as **facilius**, *more easily*; **plūs**, *more.*

From the **Ablative**: —

tūtō, *safely.*
subitō, *suddenly.*
vērō, *true, but.*
brevi (tempore), *in a short time.*
multō, (*by*) *much*, with comparatives.

4. A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form adverbs in **-ter**, as: —

firmus, firmiter, *firmly.*
alius, aliter, *otherwise, differently.*

5. Some adverbs end in **-im**; a few in **-tus**, as: —

statim and **cōnfestim**, *immediately.*
paulātim, *gradually.*
partim, *partly.*
antiquitus, *anciently.*
passim, *everywhere.*
ōlim, *once upon a time.*
divinitus, *by divine interposition.*

6. The following are quite irregular: —

bĕnĕ, *well* (bonus).
mālĕ, *badly, ill* (mālus).
satis, *enough.*
māgnopere, *greatly* (māgnus).
modŏ, *only, just.*
diū, *long* (of time).
saepe, *often.*
semper, *always.*
prope, *near.*
vix, *scarcely.*
nimis, *too much.*

7. Many adverbs of place are formed from pronominal stems: —

hic, *here.*
hūc, *hither.*
hinc, *hence.*
ibi, *there.*
eō, *thither.*
inde, *thence.*
ubi, *where.*
quō, *whither.*
unde, *whence.*

The Comparison of Adverbs

1. The **Comparative Adverb** is formed from the **Accus. Sing. Neut.** of the **Comparative Adjective.**

2. The **Superlative Adverb** is formed by the **suffix -ē** from the stem of the **Superlative Adjective**, according to

the rule for Adverbs from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions: —

altē	altius	altissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē

Similarly compare adverbs from **aeger, liber, pulcher, lātus, longus, miser, brevis, audāx, fēlix, prūdēns, sapiēns, gravis, vēlōx.**

The following are compared irregularly: —

bĕnĕ, *well*	**melius**, *better*	**optimē**, *best*
mălĕ, *badly, ill*	**pējus**, *worse*	**pessimē**, *worst*
māgnopere, *greatly*	**magis**, *more*	**māximē**, *most, chiefly, specially*
parum, *too little*	**minus**, *less*	**minimē**, *least, by no means*
diū, *long*	**diūtius**	**diūtissimē**
saepe, *often*	**saepius**	**saepissimē**
prope, *near*	**propius**	**proximē**, *next, last, most recently*

EXERCISE

A. 1. A happy life (*beātus*); he lives happily; more happily.

2. They fight fiercely (*ācer*); more fiercely; most fiercely.

3. Bravely, braver, more bravely.

4. Easily, easier, more easily, most easily.

5. Quickly (*celer*), quicker, more quickly, as quickly as possible.

6. Beautifully, freely, heavily, wretchedly, wisely.

7. A better boy; he writes better.

8. He is the worst boy, but runs the fastest.

9. The road is longer; he remained longer in Gaul; he drove the enemy farther.
10. He inquired as carefully as possible.

B. 1. Ignāviam tuam graviter ferō.
2. Longē lātēque agrōs vāstant.
3. Lātius errābant.
4. Iter satis longum est; vīrēs meae parum validae sunt.
5. Diū et ācriter pugnant utrīque.
6. Melius scrībit quī (*who*) bene legit.
7. Māgnopere Caesarem ōrant.
8. Vehementer mīlitēs culpat.
9. Fortiter in rē, suāviter in modō.
10. Mīlitēs decimae legiōnis māximē laudat.
11. Quam celerrimē nāvēs aedificant.
12. Impetum hostium nōn diūtius sustinuērunt.

VĒXILLUM

Vēxillum suprā tabernāculum ducis positum sīgnum mīlitibus ad proelium dat.

Aquila vel sīgnum cūjusque legiōnis ab aquiliferō in proeliō portātur.

ROMAN STANDARDS

LESSON XXXVI

NUMERALS

Numerals are classified as follows: —

1. Numeral adjectives: —
   - *a. Cardinals:* **ūnus**, *one;* **duo**, *two*, etc.
   - *b. Ordinals:* **primus**, *first;* **secundus**, *second*, etc.
   - *c. Distributives:* **singulī**, *one by one;* **binī**, *two apiece, two at a time*, etc.
2. Numeral adverbs: **semel**, *once;* **bis**, *twice*, etc.

For beginners it will be sufficient to memorize the first ten of each class and the remainder of the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The full table is given below for reference.

The pupil would do well to write down the *tens* and *hundreds* in parallel columns and memorize them in contrast, noting the following: —

PREVAILING ENDING OF TENS	PREVAILING ENDING OF HUNDREDS
-āgintā	**-ingentī**
-āgēsimus	**-ingentēsimus**
	(**-gent** = **-cent**)

Note the exceptional endings in the list.

Table of Numerals

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives	Adverbs
1 **ūnus, ūna, ūnum**	**prīmus**, *first*	**singulī**, *one by one*	**semel**, *once*
2 **duo, duae, duo**	**secundus**, *second*	**bīnī**, *two by two*	**bis**, *twice*
3 **trēs, tria**	**tertius**, *third*	**ternī (trīnī)**	**ter**, *thrice*
4 **quattuor**	**quārtus**, *fourth*	**quaternī**	**quater**, *four times*
5 **quīnque**	**quīntus**	**quīnī**	**quīnquiēs** [1]
6 **sex**	**sextus**	**sēnī**	**sexiēs**
7 **septem**	**septimus**	**septēnī**	**septiēs**
8 **octō**	**octāvus**	**octōnī**	**octiēs**
9 **novem**	**nōnus**	**novēnī**	**noviēs**
10 **decem**	**decimus**	**dēnī**	**deciēs**
11 **ūndecim**	**ūndecimus**	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
12 **duodecim**	**duodecimus**	duodēnī	duodeciēs
13 **tredecim**	**tertius decimus**	ternī dēnī	terdeciēs
14 **quattuordecim**	**quārtus decimus**	quaternī dēnī	quater deciēs
15 **quīndecim**	**quīntus decimus**	quīnī dēnī	quīnquiēs deciēs
16 **sēdecim**	**sextus decimus**	sēnī dēnī	sexiēs deciēs
17 **septendecim**	**septimus decimus**	septēnī dēnī	septiēs deciēs
18 **duodēvīgintī**	**duodēvīcēsimus**	duodēvīcēnī	octiēs deciēs
19 **ūndēvīgintī**	**ūndēvīcēsimus**	ūndēvīcēnī	noviēs deciēs
20 **vīgintī**	**vīcēsimus**	vīcēnī	vīciēs
30 **trīgintā**	**trīcēsimus**	trīcēnī	trīciēs
40 **quadrāgintā**	**quadrāgēsimus**	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
50 **quīnquāgintā**	**quīnquāgēsimus**	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs
60 **sexāgintā**	**sexāgēsimus**	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
70 **septuāgintā**	**septuāgēsimus**	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs
80 **octōgintā**	**octōgēsimus**	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
90 **nōnāgintā**	**nōnāgēsimus**	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
100 **centum**	**centēsimus**	centēnī	centiēs
200 **ducentī, -ae, -a**	**ducentēsimus**	ducēnī	ducentiēs
300 **trecentī, -ae, -a**	**trecentēsimus**	trecēnī	trecentiēs
400 **quadringentī, -ae, -a**	**quadringentēsimus**	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
500 **quīngentī, -ae, -a**	**quīngentēsimus**	quīngēnī	quīngentiēs
600 **sēscentī, -ae, -a**	**sēscentēsimus**	sēscēnī	sēscentiēs
700 **septingentī, -ae, -a**	**septingentēsimus**	septingēnī	septingentiēs
800 **octingentī, -ae, -a**	**octingentēsimus**	octingēnī	octingentiēs
900 **nōngentī, -ae, -a**	**nōngentēsimus**	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
1000 **mīlle**	**mīllēsimus**	singula mīlia	mīlliēs
2000 **duo mīlia**	**bis mīllēsimus**	bīna mīlia	bis mīlliēs
3000 **tria mīlia**			

[1] The forms **quīnquiēns, sexiēns**, etc., are used as well as those ending in **-iēs**.

1. *Twenty-one* { **vīgintī ūnus**, or **ūnus et vīgintī**.

Similarly *22*, *23*, etc.; *31*, *32*, *33*, etc.

Twenty-first { **vicēsimus prīmus**, or **prīmus et vicēsimus**.

Similarly the other compound ordinals.

2. Up to 90, the numbers 28, 29, etc., are often expressed by subtraction, thus: —

vīgintī octō = **duodētrīgintā**
vīgintī novem = **ūndētrīgintā**
octōdecim (18) occurs as well as **duodēvīgintī**.

3. In compound numbers over 100, the largest number is usually put first, the rest following without **et**, as

centum trīgintā sex, *one hundred and thirty-six.*
annō mīllēsimō nōngentēsimō tertiō, *in the nineteen hundred and third year.*

Yet **et** may be inserted before a *ten* or a *digit*: —

centum et octō or **centum octō**, *one hundred and eight.*
ducentī et quadrāgintā or **ducentī quadrāgintā**, *two hundred and forty.*

4. Ordinals are declined like **bonus**, as **prīmus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Declension of Cardinals

5. For the declension of **ūnus** see page 108.

6. **Duo** is declined as follows: —

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

7. **Trēs** is declined as follows: —

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

8. All the simple cardinals from 4 to 100 are indeclinable.

9. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

10. **Mīlle** is regularly an **adjective in the singular** (meaning **one thousand**), and is **indeclinable**.

In the plural, **mīlia** (*thousands*) is a neuter **substantive**, governing the **Partitive Genitive**,[1] and is declined.

Compare the following: —

	1000 Soldiers	3000 Soldiers
Nom.	**mīlle** mīlitēs	tria **mīlia** mīlitum
Gen.	**mīlle** mīlitum	trium **mīlium** mīlitum
Dat.	**mīlle** mīlitibus	tribus **mīlibus** mīlitum
Acc.	**mīlle** mīlitēs	tria **mīlia** mīlitum
Voc.	**mīlle** mīlitēs	tria **mīlia** mīlitum
Abl.	**mīlle** mīlitibus	tribus **mīlibus** mīlitum

mīlle passūs, *a thousand paces* = 1 *mile* = **quīnque mīlia pedum.**

(A Roman pace was two steps, or the ground covered by the motion of one foot, 5 Roman feet or 4.842 Eng. feet. Thus a Roman mile = $\frac{4842}{5280}$ or about $\frac{11}{12}$ of an Eng. mile.)

duo mīlia passuum, *two thousand paces* = 2 *miles.*
tria mīlia passuum, *three miles.*
quīngentī passūs, 500 *paces, half a mile.*
quīngenta mīlia passuum, 500 *miles.*

[1] **Partitive Genitive** = Genitive **denoting the whole**, of which a part is considered, as **duo mīlia mīlitum** = *two thousands of all possible soldiers.*

mille mīlitēs, 1000 *soldiers.*
tria millia mīlitum, 3000 *soldiers.*
trecentōs mīlitēs occidērunt, *they killed* 300 *soldiers.*

Distributives

The **Distributives**, in addition to their ordinary use (*so many at a time*), are used to denote a **number multiplied**; also with **nouns plural in form but singular in meaning.**

In the latter case **ūnī** and **trīnī** are used instead of **singulī** and **ternī**: —

trīna castra = *three camps.*
ūnās litterās = *one letter.*
bis centēna millia = 200,000.

Time and Extent of Space

1. Time "*when*" and "*within which*" are expressed by the **Ablative without a preposition.**

decimō annō, *in the tenth year.*
decem annīs, *in* (*within*) *ten years.*

2. Time "*how long*" (**duration of time**) is expressed by the **Accusative of Extent.**

decem annōs bellum gerēbant, *they fought ten years.*

3. Distance "*how far*" is expressed by the **Accusative of Extent.**

arbor trēs pedēs alta, *a tree three feet high.*

4. Place "*where*" or "*in which*" is usually denoted by the preposition **in** and the Ablative.

in urbe, *in the city* (place),
but **aestāte**, *in the summer* (time).

(For the Locative in names of towns, etc., see page 85.)

5. For the **Ablative of Difference** see page 99.

6. Time "*by which*" is expressed by **ad** and the Accusative, as: —

Ad diem decimam convenient, *They will assemble by the tenth day.*

7. A date "*for which*" an appointment is made is expressed by **in** and the Accusative. See example 16 below.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Ūnīus librī; trium librōrum; cum nāvibus vīgintī duābus.
2. Legiōnēs decem; legiōnis decimae cohortēs quīnque.
3. Obsidēs ad diem quīntam addūxērunt; diē quīntō.
4. Diēbus quattuor Britannōs superāvit.
5. Mūrum tria mīllia passuum longum aedificāvit.
6. Arborem prō portā trēs pedēs altam posuit.
7. Decimō annō Trōjam expugnāvērunt.
8. Annōs decem pugnābant.
9. Puerī librōs bīnōs ad scholam portant.
10. Nāvēs ternae aut quaternae singulās circumveniēbant.
11. Bis bīna sunt quattuor.
12. Māter puerum sexiēs vocāvit.
13. Septuāgintā; septingentī; sēscentī; sexāgintā; sēdecim.
14. Rōmulus Rōmam annō ante Christum septingentēsimō quīnquāgēsimō tertiō condidit.
15. Mīlitēs circiter octōgintā dūxit.
16. Concilium in diem tertiam convocāvit.

B. 1. Three feet; 3000 feet; 1000 feet; 1 mile; 5 miles; half a mile.

2. On the eighth day; in the third summer; for three summers.

3. The boy is three years older.

4. He sent five cohorts of the tenth legion.

5. They leaped down five at a time.

6. He gave the boys three books each.

7. Caesar stationed his soldiers in three camps.

8. They made an attack three or four times.

9. Across three rivers.

10. In about twenty-two towns.

11. 40, 400; 50, 500; 8, 18, 78, 800.

12. With 332 horsemen.

13. In the year of our Lord 1903. (Use ordinals.)

THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS

Anus[1] quaedam[2] incognita ad Tarquinium rēgem vēnit novem librōs manibus ferēns.[3] Hōs[4] esse[5] dīcēbat dīvīna ōrācula. Tarquinius pretium interrogāvit. Mulier nimium poposcit.[6] Rēx irrīsit.[7]

Tum mulier trēs librōs ex novem ūrit[8] et reliquōs sex eōdem[9] pretiō rēgī vēndere volēbat. Sed Tarquinius id[10] multō magis rīsit.[11] Mulier deinde trēs aliōs exūssit[12] atque rūrsus idem pretium rogāvit. Quamquam trēs modo[13] jam reliquī erant, rēx tantā cōnstantiā victus, ēmit.[14]

[1] **anus, -ūs,** f., *old woman.*
[2] *a certain.*
[3] Pres. Part. of **ferō.**
[4] Acc. Pl. of Pron. **hīc,** *this.*
[5] Inf. of **sum,** = *to be.* (Use an Eng. idiom.)
[6] Perf. of **poscō.**
[7] **irrīdeō,** *laugh (at).*
[8] **ūrō, -ere, ūssī,** *burn.*
[9] Abl. of **idem,** *same;* Abl. of Price.
[10] Acc. Neut. of **is,** Pron. *it, that.*
[11] **rideō.**
[12] **exūrō.**
[13] Adv., *only.*
[14] Perf. of **emō,** *buy.*

VENUS

(*Greek*, APHRODĪTĒ)

(*A photograph of the famous mutilated statue, Venus of Milo*)

Vēnus dea amōris et pulchritūdinis fuit, Jovis et Diōnae fīlia. Aphrodītē ā Graecīs appellābātur quod ex spūmā maris orta esse crēdēbātur. Fīlius ējus, Cupidō, pectora mortālium sagittīs amōris trāiciēbat. Venerī Paris mālum aureum dedit quod sē eī fōrmōsissimam in terrīs mulierem Helenam in mātrimōnium datūram pollicita erat. Ita Venus Trōjānī bellī causa fuit. Māter Aenēae esse dīcēbātur.

LESSON XXXVII

Sum, *I am*

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fui**
Pres. Stem **es-**; Perf. Stem **fu-**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	Plural
su **m**, *I am*	su **mus**, *we are*
e **s**, *thou art*	es **tis**, *you (ye) are*
es **t**, *he is*	su **nt**, *they are*

IMPERFECT

era **m**, *I was* (a continued state)	erā **mus**, *we were*
erā **s**, *thou wast*	erā **tis**, *you (ye) were*
era **t**, *he was*	era **nt**, *they were*

FUTURE

er **ō**, *I shall be*	eri **mus**, *we shall be*
eri **s**, *thou wilt be*	eri **tis**, *you (ye) will be*
eri **t**, *he will be*	eru **nt**, *they will be*

PERFECT

fu **i**, (1) *I have been;* (2) *I*		fu **imus**
fu **isti**	*was* (a completed	fu **istis**
fu **it**	state)	fu **ērunt** (-ēre)

PLUPERFECT

fu **eram**, *I had been*	fu **erāmus**
fu **erās**	fu **erātis**
fu **erat**	fu **erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

fu **erō**, *I shall have been*	fu **erimus**
fu **eris**	fu **eritis**
fu **erit**	fu **erint**

Observe (1) that **sum** = *esum;* **sumus** = *esumus;* **sunt** = *esunt;* (2) that **s** of the stem changes to **r** between vowels, as **eram** = *esam*, etc.

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**

absum, *I am distant, absent.*
absum, abesse, abfuī.

prōsum, *I am serviceable.*
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī.

INDICATIVE

Pres.	ab-sum	ab-sumus	prō-sum	prō-sumus
	ab-es	ab-estis	prōd-es	prōd-estis
	ab-est	ab-sunt	prōd-est	prō-sunt
Imperf.	ab-eram		prōd-eram	
Fut.	ab-erō		prōd-erō	
Perf.	ab-fuī		prō-fuī	
Plpf.	ab-fueram		prō-fueram	
Fut. Pf.	ab-fuerō		prō-fuerō	

Note that **prōsum** inserts **d** before a vowel.

Similar to **absum** are :—

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, *I am present.*
dē-sum, dē-esse, dē-fuī, *I am lacking.*
prae-sum, prae-esse, prae-fuī, *I am at the head of.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Cīvēs līberī cīvitātis līberae sumus.
2. Cūr, puer mī, aberās ā scholā herī?
3. Hostēs nōn longius quam duo mīllia passuum ā castrīs aberant.
4. Fortēs, puerī, estis; patrēs quŏque vestrī fortēs erant.
5. Fuimus Trōēs; fuit Ilium et ingēns glōria Teucrūm (= Teucrōrum).

Note the idea of completion.

6. Rōma quondam orbis terrārum domina fuit.
7. Erant, erunt, fuerint, fuērunt, fuerant.
8. Et amīcīs et cīvitātī prōdest.
9. Exercituī et classī praeerit.

B. 1. Why, soldier, are you not faithful to your country?
2. Good boys will always be diligent.
3. One thing was lacking to Caesar.
4. The end of life is close at hand (**adsum**).
5. Yesterday thou wert a slave; to-day thou art free; to-morrow thou wilt be owner (**dominus**) of wide estates (= fields).
6. We were (continuously); thou hast been; they have been; they will have been.

LESSON XXXVIII

DIRECT QUESTIONS

Direct Questions are of two kinds:—

I. Those introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs, such as:—

quis, *who?*
cūr, *why?*
quandō, *when?*
quantus, -a, -um, *how large?*
quot (indeclinable), *how many?*
quālis, -ē, *of what kind?*
ubi, *where?*
unde, *whence?*
quō, *whither?*
quōmodō, *how?*

These **cannot be answered by Yes or No.**

II. Those which in English have no interrogative sign-word, but which are indicated almost entirely by the inverted order of the sentence. These **must be answered by Yes or No.** For example:—

Assertion	Question
The boy is good.	*Is the boy good?*
He goes to school (= *He does go*, etc.)	*Does he go to school?*

These questions may have three different values, as follows:—

1. They may be asked **merely for information.**

In Latin these are indicated by the **enclitic**[1] **-nĕ** added to some important word at the beginning of the sentence, as: —

Bonusne est puer? Is the boy *good* (or *bad*)?
Estne puer bonus? *Is* the boy good (or *was* he)?
Puerne est bonus? Is the *boy* good (or is the *girl*)?

Compare with **Quis est bonus?** *Who is good?* (no enclitic).

2. They may suggest the answer "**Yes**": —

Nōnne puer est bonus, *Is not the boy good?*
(*The boy is surely good, is he not?*)

(Notice that the presence of *not* indicates that "*Yes*" is expected. *Not?* = **nōnne?**)

3. They may suggest the answer "**No**": —

Num puer est malus? *Is the boy bad?* (uttered with strong tone of surprise or protest) = "*Surely the boy is not bad, is he?*"

4. **Yes** and **No** are usually expressed by repeating the important part of the question in the form of a statement, as **Puerumne vidisti? Vīdī,** *Yes;* or **Nōn vidī,** *No.*
Valdē, *certainly;* **Minimē,** *by no means.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Cūr Canadam amāmus? Quod patria nostra est.
2. Quis colit agrōs? Agricola.
3. Ubi sunt agricolae? In agrīs.
4. Amāsne, puer, patriam tuam? Amō.
5. Num nauta agrōs colit? Nōn nauta sed agricola.
6. Nōnne est Britannia patria nautārum? Valdē, patria nautārum est.

[1] **Enclitic**, a word added as an extra syllable to a previous word, as **estne?** **terrā marīque**; **pāx bellumve.**

7. Num magister puerōs malōs amat? Minimē. Malōs castīgat neque laudat.
8. Quō, puer, librōs portās? Ad scholam, magister.
9. Erāsne in scholā herī, puercule? Eram.
10. Unde ad Britanniam Caesar nāvigāvit? Ā Galliā.
11. Unde agricolae frūmentum comportābunt? Ex agrīs.
12. Quanta est Britannia? Nōnne est parva īnsula? Hibernia nōn est tanta.
13. Quālēs erant Britannī antīquī? Num ignāvī īnfīrmīque erant? Minimē. Fortēs erant atque validissimī. Tālēsne, puerī, eritis?
14. Nōnne parentēs amāmus?
15. Gallīne Caesarem timēbant?
16. Quot mīlitēs? Quantae īnsulae? Tot librī; tantae īnsulae.

B. 1. Whence do we get (*parō*) food? From the earth.
2. Was Caesar a very brave leader?
3. Did not Caesar conquer Gaul?
4. Hannibal did not conquer the Romans, did he?
5. How large are the apple-trees? Are they not very small?
6. How many trees are there in the garden?
7. Whither are they carrying ropes and other tackle?
8. Does a brave sailor fear the sea? By no means.
9. When do the farmers plough their fields? In winter? No, either in spring or in autumn.
10. How did the Romans fortify a camp? By rampart and trench.
11. Boys, have you finished your lessons (*pēnsum*)? Certainly, Sir. Will you not now let us out (*dīmittō*) to play? (Not infinitive. Use **ad** with a noun.)

LESSON XXXIX

REVIEW EXERCISE ON VERBS (ACTIVE INDICATIVE)

A. 1. Timet, mittet, nūntiat, mūnit, mūniet.
2. Veniēbat, veniet, portābat, portābit.
3. Habent, aedificant, scrībunt, veniunt.
4. Vincet, vincit, vīcit, vincunt, vīcērunt.
5. Nōnne vīcistī? Cūr nōn vīcerat?
6. Num vincēs, sī ignāvus eris?
7. Scrīpsitne puer ad mātrem litterās?
8. Pellit, pellet, pellunt, pellent, pepulit.
9. Pellēbant, nāvigābant, mūniēbant.
10. Vocās, dēlēs, mittīs, audīs, dūcīs, vēnīs.
11. Vocātis, dēlētis, mittītis, audītis, dūcītis.
12. Vēnītis, vēnistis, veniunt, regunt.

B. 1. Thou sendest, thou comest, they send, they come.
2. He will send, he will carry, he will fear, he will come.
3. You (*plur.*) hear, you (*plur.*) rule, we rule, we hear.
4. They hear, they will hear, they heard (continually), they heard (once).
5. We are coming, we were coming, we shall come.
6. We send, we were sending, we shall send.
7. He sees, he will see, he saw (continuously), he saw (once).

REVIEW WORD LISTS

1. **Porta, portus, unda, fluctus, frūmentum, frūctus, cōnspectus, domus, manus, quercus, cornū, genū, verū, arcus, lacus, exercitus.**

2. **Equus, eques, equitātus, Īdūs, cīvis, cīvitās; pēs, pedes, peditātus; senātūs-cōnsultum, conjūrātor.**

3. **Adflictō, cōgō, occidō, pandō, īnstruō, expugnō, dēpōnō.**

4. Day, thing, hope, faith, appearance, line-of-battle, plain, mid-day, revolution, achievement, property, military science, commonwealth.

5. Give the Cardinals and Ordinals up to 10.

6. Once, twice, thrice, ten times, ten apiece, one by one, four, fourth, four at a time, four times, five times, fifth, five.

7. Forty, four hundred; 20, 30, 300; eight, eighth, eighteen, 28, 80, about 800.

8. Aid, troops, boundaries, thanks, epistle, character, places, resources.

9. **Ōlim, statim, paulātim, cōnfestim, saepe, semper, igitur, tamen, tandem, autem, vērō, mox, ubi, tum.**

10. **Tempestās, cōnscendō, expōnō, appellō (ere), appellō (āre), appropinquō, incipiō, ventus, āridus, perveniō, repellō, subdūcō, lēgātus, obses, imperō, jubeō, remigrō, āmittō.**

11. **Timor, revocō, subitō, impetus, pulvis, rota, esseda, excitō, cōnspiciō, circumveniō, strepitus, perturbō, cōnsistō, discēdō.**

12. **Pauci, cōnstituō, proelium committō, sustineō, duplicō, addūcō, complūrēs, intereā, reficiō, incolumis.**

13. **Crēber, corvus, vicinus, agmen novissimum, posterī, exterī, Superī, Inferī, fīdus, mājōrēs, idōneus, antīquus.**

14. Top of a hill, foot of the mountain, daybreak, previous day, rear, van, at the rear, youngest, oldest, ancestors, steepest, more unfavorable, pitch camp, front rank, choose, farther bank, first of two, heights, occupy.

15. Whole, the other, another, both, no one, no (adj.), alone; one . . . another; some . . . others; the one . . . the other.

16. Far, long (time), soon, enough, too much, too little, near, immediately, easily, am indignant at, cowardice, lay waste, blame.

17. **Quandō, ubi, unde, quō, quantus, tantus, quālis, tālis, quot, tot, quōmodō.**

18. Foot, pace, mile, miles, day, night, month, year.

LESSON XL

IMPERATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
ĕs, *be thou.* (sum)	**es te**, *be ye.*
vocā, *call thou.*	**vocā te**, *call ye.*
monē, *warn thou.*	**monē te**, *warn ye.*
regĕ, *rule thou.* (capĕ.)	**regi te**, *rule ye.* (capite.)
audī, *hear thou.*	**audi te**, *hear ye.*

1. Observe that the Singular is the same as the Present Stem. Compare **-te** of the Imperative with **-tis** of the Indicative.
2. There is no first or third person in the Present Imperative.

The following Irregular Imperatives should be noted: —

dīc, **dūc**, **fer**, **fac**, *say*, *lead*, *bear*, *do* or *make* (for **dīce**, etc.). So pl. **ferte** (for *ferite*). But **dīcite**, **dūcite**, **facite** are regular.

FUTURE TENSE

The Future Imperative is seldom met with. Its use is restricted to: —

(1) Laws, treaties, wills.

(2) Commands relating to the distant future, "*Thou shalt*," etc.

The Fut. Imper. has both the second and the third person.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2.	**es tō**, *thou shalt be.*	**es tōte**, *ye shall be.*
3.	**es tō**, *he shall be.*	**su ntō**, *they shall be.*
2.	**vocā tō**, *thou shalt call.*	**vocā tōte**, *ye shall call.*
3.	**vocā tō**, *he shall call.*	**voca ntō**, *they shall call.*
2.	**monē tō**, *thou shalt warn.*	**monē tōte**, *ye shall warn.*
3.	**monē tō**, *he shall warn.*	**mone ntō**, *they shall warn.*

	Singular	Plural
2.	**regī tō**, *thou shalt rule.*	**regī tōte**, *ye shall rule.*
3.	**regī tō**, *he shall rule.* (capitō.)	**regu ntō**, *they shall rule.* (capiuntō.)
2.	**audī tō**, *thou shalt hear.*	**audī tōte**, *ye shall hear.*
3.	**audī tō**, *he shall hear.*	**audiu ntō**, *they shall hear.*

Negative Commands

1. **Nē** is the negative for a command; **nōn** for a statement.

2. In classical prose, however, **nē** is not used with the Imperative, except in the Future.

The most common form of a prohibition in the Second Person is **nōlī** (*be thou unwilling*), plur. **nōlīte** (see page 251), with the Infinitive, as: —

Nōlī, puer, malōs laudāre, *Do not, boy, praise the bad.*

Nōlīte, puerī, cum malis lūdere, *Do not, boys, play with the bad.*

But: —

Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō, *Thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Cavē canem; valē; valēte.
2. Cantāte Dominō; laudāte Dominum.
3. Nōlīte, mīlitēs, hostēs timēre.
4. Dīvide et imperā.
5. Gallī obsidēs nōn mittent.
6. Obsidēs, Gallī, ad castra mea mittite.
7. Fīlius meus omnia mea habētō.
8. Mīlitēs fortēs sunt. Fortēs este. Fortēs estis.
9. Nōlī, puer, librōs malōs legere.
10. Salūs populī suprēma lēx estō.

B. 1. He will not send messengers.
2. Do not hesitate, Gauls, to send hostages.
3. Thou shalt not kill.
4. Call thou; thou callest; call ye; you (*plur.*) call.
5. Hold thou; conquer ye; hear thou; come ye.
6. Give (*sing.*); do not give (*plur.*); they do not give.
7. Thou shalt love thy neighbor.
8. Hear ye; take thou; send thou; come thou.
9. Announce ye; behold ye (*cōnspiciō*); lead thou; lead ye.
10. He says (*dīcō*); say thou; thou sayest not; do not (thou) say.
11. You (*plur.*) do not say; say ye; say ye not; thou shalt not say.

ROMAN TOGA
Statue of the Emperor Tiberius

Cīvis Rōmānus pāce togā virīlī indūtus est; bellō sagum sūmit. Ducis vestītus est palūdāmentum; Togam praetextam senātor habet; eandem puer.

DIANA

(*Greek*, ARTEMIS)

Diāna soror Apollinis et fīlia Lātōnae fuit. In īnsulā Dēlō cum frātre nāta est. In caelō Lūna erat; in terrīs Diāna; apud Īnferōs Hecatē triformis colēbātur. Bestiās silvārum arcū et sagittīs vēnātrīx sectābātur. Pharetram humerīs fert; vestem juxtā genū succinctam gerit. Māximum et splendidissimum ējus templum Ephesī erat.

LESSON XLI

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON		
		SINGULAR			
			M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ego**, *I*	**tū**, *thou*	**is**, *he*	**ea**, *she*	**id**, *it*
Gen.	**meī**, *of me*	**tuī**, *of thee*	**ējus**	**ējus**	**ējus**
Dat.	**mihi**	**tibi**	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**
Acc.	**mē**	**tē**	**eum**	**eam**	**id**
Voc.		**tū**			
Abl.	**mē**	**tē**	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**
		PLURAL			
Nom.	**nōs**, *we*	**vōs**, *you*	**eī (iī)**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**nostrum**, **nostrī**, *of us*	**vestrum**, **vestrī**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**nōbis**	**vōbis**	**eis (iīs)**	**eis (iīs)**	**eis (iīs)**
Acc.	**nōs**	**vōs**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Voc.		**vōs**			
Abl.	**nōbis**	**vōbis**	**eis (iīs)**	**eis (iīs)**	**eis (iīs)**

1. The Genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are Partitives.

2. **Is** and **ea** may mean *it* when they represent objects whose Latin names are masculine or feminine, as: — **eam**, *it* (= **insulam**, *the island*); **eum**, *it* (= **librum**, *the book*); **eās**, *them* (*the islands*); **eōs**, *them* (*the books*); **eam**, *her* (*the girl*); **eum**, *him* (*the boy*); **eōs**, *them* (*the boys*); **ea**, *them* (*the wars*).

3. The Genitives **ējus**, **eōrum**, **eārum** (*of him, of her, of them*) are used instead of possessives of the third person, = *his, her, their,* when the reference is not to the subject.

Possessives

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
meus, -a, -um, *my.*	**tuus, -a, -um,** *thy, your.*
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*	**vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your (addressing more than one).*

THIRD PERSON

Referring to the subject: —

suus, -a, -um, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*

Not referring to the subject: —

ējus (Genitive = *of him*, etc.), *his, her, its.*
eōrum, eārum (= *of them*), *their.*

Meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus are adjectives and therefore agree with the nouns they modify.

Examples: —

Librōs meōs habeō, *I have my books.*
Filiam tuam vident, *They see your daughter.*
Librum ējus (eōrum) habeō, *I have his (their) book.*
Librōs suōs habet, *He has his (own) books.*

Reflexive Pronouns

A Reflexive Pronoun has the following characteristics: —

1. It stands in some objective relation.
2. It points back to the subject.

Laudō mē, *I praise myself.*
Laudās tē, *Thou praisest thyself.*
Laudat sē, *He praises himself.*

From their nature, Reflexive Pronouns lack the *Nom.*

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
		Singular	
Gen.	**meī,** *of myself*	**tuī,** *of thyself*	**suī,** *of himself, etc.*
Dat.	**mihi**	**tibi**	**sibi**
Acc.	**mē**	**tē**	**sē** or **sēsē**
Abl.	**mē**	**tē**	**sē** or **sēsē**

PLURAL

Gen.	**nostrī**, *of ourselves*	**vestrī**, *of yourselves*	**suī**, *of themselves*
Dat.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	**sibi**
Acc.	**nōs**	**vōs**	**sē** or **sēsē**
Abl.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**	**sē** or **sēsē**

1. Observe that in the first and second persons the Reflexives are really the Personal Pronouns.

I praise myself = in Latin, *I praise me.*

2. The preposition **cum**, *with*, is an enclitic (see page 126) with the ablatives **mē**, **tē**, **nōbīs**, **vōbīs**, **sē**, but not with the ablative of **is**; as — **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **nōbīscum**, **vōbīscum**, **sēcum**, *with me*, etc.; but **cum eō**, *with him*; **cum iīs**, *with them.*

3. The Personal Pronouns are not expressed as subjects except for emphasis.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Dā nōbīs pācem.
2. Pāx vōbīscum.
3. Cum eīs tē mittam.
4. Tēcum eum mittent.
5. Mēcum veniet.
6. Cum eō vēnērunt.
7. Librum habeō; eum tibi dabō.
8. Ex īnsulā vēnimus; eam amāmus.
9. Librōs mihi dedit. Eōs ad mē mīsit.
10. Fabrōs sēcum trānsportāvit.
11. Eōs sibi obsidēs dare jussit.
12. Exercitum suum in eōrum fīnēs dūxit.
13. Ējus exercitum ex suīs fīnibus pepulērunt.
14. Patrem suum amat. Patrem ējus amō.
15. Nōs tē amāmus; tū nōs nōn culpābis.

B. 1. I have given you many books. Read them carefully.
2. We shall not grant you peace.

3. They gave him hostages.
4. I have it (*the book*); we love it (*the city*); I saw it (*the temple*).
5. He gives them (*the books*) to me.
6. We have not seen them (*the ships*).
7. In it (*the place*); in it (*the city*); into them (*the places*).
8. We shall praise, not ourselves, but him.
9. He will praise, not himself, but us.
10. Do not praise yourself; do not praise yourselves.

Third Personal Possessives

C. 1. They do not fear his army.
2. He will attack their camp.
3. He will lead his forces into their state.
4. They will drive his army out of their state.
5. They had not seen his cavalry.
6. He was coming with his cavalry.
7. They fought with his infantry.
8. They will gather (*comportō*) all their effects (*things*) into the woods.
9. They report the matter to their (friends).

Medusa

LESSON XLII

Demonstrative Pronouns and Demonstrative Pronominal Adjectives

Hīc, haec, hōc, *This* (denoting nearness to the speaker).

Often applied by an advocate in court to his client.

Ille, illa, illud, *That* (denoting remoteness).

That yonder; that other.

The celebrated; the well-known.

Often used to denote "*the enemy.*"

Is, ea, id, *That* (without strong demonstrative force).

Iste, ista, istud, *That of yours.*

That of which I have told you.

That fellow (contemptuously).

Often applied to an accused person in court.

Hīc, *the latter;* **ille**, *the former.* This order may be inverted: **Hīc**, *the former, the one;* **ille**, *the latter, the other.*

Hīc, *This*, plur. *These.*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Ille, *That*, plur. *Those*.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

Iste is declined like **Ille**. For **is, ea, id**, see page 134.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Hī librī bonī sunt; illī malī.
2. Hōs lege; dēlē illōs.
3. Huīc virō laudem dant; illum culpant.
4. Haec est patria nostra.
5. Hūjus urbis mūrī nōn altī erant.
6. Hōc vult; illud nōnvult.
7. Iste, jūdicēs, vir improbus est.
8. Ab explōrātōribus haec omnia cognōvit.
9. Sine morā imperātōrī ea nūntiat.
10. Hostēs in iīs collibus videt. Illī impetum facere parant.
11. Cōpiās ad id bellum comparat.
12. In eum locum vēnit.

B. 1. This city (*Nom.*); this city (*Acc.*); in this city; these cities (*Nom.*); into these cities; in these cities.
2. The cavalry and the infantry fight: the latter (*these*) on foot, the former (*those*) on horseback (*ex equīs*).
3. These ships (*Acc.*); of those rivers; in that city.
4. By this road (*iter*); those roads; that road.
5. They prepared themselves for (*ad*) that war, — for this war.
6. Grain is not ripe in these fields.
7. He chose this place for a camp.

LESSON XLIII

Emphatic or Intensive Pronouns

Ipse, *self, very.*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	etc.	etc.	etc.
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**		like **bonus**	
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**			
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**			

Distinguish the Emphatic **ipse** from the Reflexive **sē**.

Ipse (1) may be in the *Nom.;*
(2) may be in any person;
(3) usually is in apposition to the word emphasized.

Sē must be an object pointing back to the subject and is always third person.

Īdem, *the same.*

(**Is**, *he, that,* and suffix **-dem**, *the same.*)

	Singular		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**
Gen.	**ējusdem**	**ējusdem**	**ējusdem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**

	Plural		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**eīdem (iīdem)**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**
Acc.	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**	**eīsdem (iīsdem)**

Idem = *is-dem;* **idem** = *id-dem.*

Observe the phonetic change in

eumdem to **eundem**,
eōrumdem to **eōrundem**,

on the "principle of ease," **n** being an easier sound than **m** before **d**.

Īdem is often translated *also*.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Puerum ipsum laudāvī, nōn ējus frātrem.
2. Puer sē nōn laudābit.
3. Ipse cum equitibus ad īmum collem properāvit.
4. Eōdem tempore hostēs vīdit.
5. Eandem cīvitātem amāmus.
6. Ipse hōc dīxit.
7. Īdem multa bella gessit. Ĭdem bellum gessit.
8. Imperātōris ipsīus verba audīvī.
9. Nōs eum laudāmus; sē ipsum nōn laudat.
10. In eādem urbe vīvimus.
11. Eādem ipsā nocte impetum in eōs fēcit.

B. 1. The island itself; of the city itself; in the same [illegible].
2. They blamed themselves, not him.
3. He blamed themselves, not their soldiers.
4. On that very day they captured the town.
5. He was consul the same year (*Abl.*).
6. The same (man) said it; he said the same (thing).
7. Of the same states; in the same state; into the same state.
8. In the state itself; the state will protect (*dēfendō, -ere*) itself.
9. They reported this to their (friends).
10. We shall see that in their city.

LESSON XLIV

The Relative (or Conjunctive) Pronoun

Quī, *who, which, that.*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**cūjus**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

The usual duty of the so-called Relative Pronoun is *to join* a clause to an antecedent in the same sentence.

In Latin, the Relative is freely used to introduce a new sentence, where English would use a Demonstrative.

In the following examples observe the **rules that decide the form of the relative** : —

1. **Puerum quī** librum habet videō.
   I see the boy who has the book.
2. **Puer quem** videō librum habet.
   The boy whom I see has the book.
3. **Puerī quōrum** librōs habēmus eōs nōbīs dabunt.
   The boys whose books we have will give them to us.
4. **Puellae quārum** librōs habēmus, etc.
   The girls whose books we have, etc.
5. **Urbs quam** aedificāvit est māgna.
6. **In urbe quae** in colle est.
7. **Liber quem** scrīpsit est bonus.
   The book (that) he wrote is good.
8. **Ego**, quī hōc tibi **dixī**.

In these examples the following principles are to be noted : —

1. **The Relative Pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the antecedent.** (*For person, note the verb in example 8.*)

2. **The Relative does not take its case from the antecedent, but from its own relation in its own clause.**

Note that the **relative is never omitted** in Latin. (*See example 7, above.*)

Is quī = *he who, that one who, the man who.*
Iī quī = *those who.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Urbs quam vīdistī est Rōma.
2. Urbem, quae est omnium māxima, cēpit.
3. Eae cīvitātēs, quās superāvit, obsidēs dedērunt.
4. Mūrī, quibus Rōmam mūnīvit, nōn altī erant.
5. Mūrī quōs aedificāvit; lēgātus cuī exercitum dedit.
6. Cīvēs, quōrum amor patriae māximus est, iī optimī sunt.
7. Templum quod est mājus vīdī.
8. Librum quī melior est habeō.
9. Quod ubi audīvit, lēgātōs dīmīsit.

B. 1. The boy to whom I gave a book; the boys to whom.
2. To the boy whom I see; of the boy who sees.
3. The girl whose books I have.
4. In the city which he captured.
5. The city in which he lived.
6. The war which he waged; the wars that he waged.
7. All the books I have.
8. The house you built; in the river which we see.
9. He reported to Caesar that which he had learnt.
10. Those who say these things err.
11. He who sees believes.
12. We help (*adjuvō, -āre*) those we love.
13. We who see; thou who sendest; you (*plur.*) who believe.

LESSON XLV

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Quis, *who?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis		quid	quī		quae
Gen.	cūjus		cūjus	quōrum		quōrum
Dat.	cuī		cuī	quibus		quibus
Acc.	quem		quid	quōs		quae
Abl.	quō		quō	quibus		quibus

The Fem. is practically not used as a pure Pronoun.

Observe, **quis** (not *quī*); **quid** (not *quod*).

The **Interrogative Adjective** is

quis (or **quī**)	**quae**	**quod** (not *quid*)
etc.	etc.	etc.

quis vir? or **quī vir**? *what man?*
quī exercitus? *what army?*
quis dīxit? *who said it?*
vir quī dixit, *the man who said it.*
quid fēcit? *what did he do?*
quod bellum gessit? *what war did he wage?*
bellum quod gessit, *the war which he waged.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Quis tibi hōc dīxit?
2. Is quī dīxit, errāvit.
3. Quid mihi dīxistī?
4. Id quod dīxistī nōn vērum est.
5. Quod templum est sacrum iīs quī exercitūs nostrōs dūcunt?

6. Quem vīdistī? Quid vīdistī? Quam urbem amās?
7. Quis puer mihi librum dabit?
8. Quā in urbe habitās?

B. 1. The man who conquered Gaul.
2. Who led the army which conquered Gaul?
3. What army crossed (*superō*) the Alps?
4. Whose army nearly captured Rome? Hannibal's.
5. Whose books are these? Are they the boys'?
6. What army did he lead?
7. What states did he conquer?
8. What sea do they sail?
9. What will they see?
10. Whom do the citizens choose?
11. To whom do we give praise? Who gives?

Sagittārius arcum tendit. Pharetram ā tergō gerit. Optimī sagittāriī ex īnsulā Crētā veniēbant.

SAGITTĀRIUS

LESSON XLVI

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Aliquis (aliqua), aliquid, *some one.*

Quis, quae *or* qua, quid, *any* (after **sī**, *if*, **nē**, *lest*, and a few other words).

Quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, *any* (in a negative connection, expressed or implied).

nec quisquam, *nor any one* = *and no one.*
vix quisquam, *scarcely any one.*
fortior quōquam, *braver than any one* (all others excluded).

Quisque, quaeque, quidque, *each.*
Uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, both.*
Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain one.*
Quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, } *any one you please.*
Quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet, } *any one whatever.*

Quīdam has Acc. Sing. **quendam, quandam**; Gen. Plur. **quōrundam, quārundam.**

Quicquam is often used for **quidquam.**

The preceding pronouns may be turned into adjectives by changing **quis** to **quī** and **quid** to **quod.** They are declined like **quis** or **quī.** **Uterque** is declined like **uter.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Sī quid vīdistī, dīc mihi.
2. Nōnne aliquid dīxistī?
3. Vix quidquam audīvī.
4. Nec quemquam āmīsērunt.
5. Optimum quemque laudat.
6. Quemvīs dēlige; quidlibet dīc.

7. Utrumque cōnsulem occīdērunt.
8. Nec quicquam vestītūs praeter pellēs habent.

B. 1. If he saw (*plpf.*) any one, he always told (*imperf.*) me.
2. If any one comes (= *shall have come*), I will tell you.
3. And no one remained in the camp (say "nor any one").
4. Lead the army by any-way-you-like.
5. Did you hear some one?
6. Give to each boy a crown.
7. If anything — lest any one — lest to any one — and nothing (do not say *et nihil*, but "nor anything").
8. They conquered both fleets.

Review Word List

1	2	3	4
vetō	**faber**	**verbum**	**nēmō**
obses	**necō**	**mēdō**	**nūllus**
bona (*n. plur.*)	**vāstō**	[illegible]	**quisquam**
mortuus	**ipse**	**līvus**	**aliquis**
nōlī	**īdem**	**quīdam**	**hīc**
	īmus collis	**quisque**	**ille**

5	6	7	8
him	this	the man who	each (of several)
us	that	the men whom	both consuls
thee	these (men)	what man?	a certain
thy	these (things)	what did he say?	that one who
his	same	lest any	those to whom
his own	the very man	if any	believe
your	who? whom?	nor any one	praise
except	on account of	some one	blame
		without	clothing
			skin (fur)

VESTA

(*Greek*, HESTIA)

Vesta māximē ā Rōmānīs colēbātur. In ējus templō ignis perpetuus ā virginibus Vestālibus cūstōdiēbātur. Dea castitātis et domestici foci erat. Aenēas imāginem ējus ex Trōjā incēnsā sēcum ad Italiam tulisse existimābātur.

LESSON XLVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular		Plural	
1. **vooo r**	*I am called*	**vocā mur**	*we are called*
2. **vocā ris** (-re)	*thou art called*	**vocā mini**	*you (ye) are called*
3. **vocā tur**	*he is called*	**voca ntur**	*they are called*

(*The 2 Sing.* **vocāre** (= **vocāris**) *is mostly poetic.*)

IMPERFECT

Singular		Plural
1. **vocā bar**	*I was being called*	1. **vocā bā mur**
2. **vocā bā ris** (-re)		2. **vocā bā mini**
3. **vocā bā tur**		3. **vocā ba ntur**

FUTURE

Singular		Plural
1. **vocā bor**	*I shall be called*	1. **vocā bi mur**
2. **vocā bĕ ris** (-re)		2. **vocā bi mini**
3. **vocā bi tur**		3. **vocā bu ntur**

Compare with these the forms of the corresponding active tenses, *e.g.* **vocā bam, -bās, -bat,** etc. It will be noticed that the passive can be obtained from the active in these three tenses by substituting as follows: —

Active Endings		Passive Endings
(-m)	*I*	**-r**
-s	*thou*	**-ris** (-rĕ)
-t	*he*	**-tur**
-mus	*we*	**-mur**
-tis	*you*	**-mini**
-nt	*they*	**-ntur**

In **vocābis, vocāberis,** note that **-bi** is changed to **-be.**

vocābant, *they were calling;* **vocābantur,** *they were being called.*

Ablative of the Agent

1. The **person by whom** an act is performed is called the **agent**. In Latin the **agent** is expressed with the Passive Voice by the *Ablative Case, governed by the preposition* **ā, ab.**

Ā mātre puer vocātur, *The boy is called by his mother.*
Ā senātū condemnātur, *He is condemned by the senate.*

Ablative of the Means or Instrument

2. The **means** or **instrument**, the thing by which an act is performed, is expressed by the *Ablative without a preposition.*

Lapide necātur, *He is killed by a stone.*
Vī superātur, *He is overcome by means of force.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Vocat, vocātur; vocābat, vocābātur; vocābit, vocābitur.
2. Necās, necāris; necābās, necābāris; necābis, necābĕris.
3. Laudāmur, laudābāmur, laudābimur, laudābimus.
4. Bestiae in silvīs ā Diānā fugantur.
5. Deī ab hominibus in perīculīs ōrantur.
6. Diāna bestiās fugat; hominēs deōs ōrant.
7. Ab amīcīs laudāris; ab inimīcīs condemnāris.
8. Tōta Gallia ā Caesare superātur.
9. Per hōs annōs Gallī ā Rōmānīs superābantur.
10. Frūmentum carrīs in tēcta portābitur.
11. Nāvēs parābunt; nāvēs ab eīs parābuntur.
12. Librī tibi ā mē dabuntur.
13. Tēlīs hostium multī mīlitēs necantur.

B. 1. Caesar gives the signal; the signal is given by Caesar.

2. These books are given me by you (*sing.*).

3. A bridge will be built by the Romans by means of ships.

4. A war-ship is very quickly prepared by the workmen.

5. The battle was fought long and fiercely by both (parties). (Use the impersonal "*it was fought.*")

6. The city is surrounded with a wall by the citizens.

7. Beasts of burden used to be procured (*parō*) in Gaul.

8. The Gauls are very greatly pleased with beasts of burden (*dēlectō*).

9. He is giving; it is given; he was giving; it was being given.

10. Ships will be prepared by them; they will prepare ships.

11. Thou wilt be called; thou wilt call.

12. We shall praise; we shall be praised.

Scūtum

Scūtum sinistrā mīles legiōnārius portat.
Ita dextrum latus est apertum.
Quae sunt alia arma mīlitis Rōmānī?

LESSON XLVIII

THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The Supine: Acc. **-um**; Abl. **-ū**

The Principal Parts of the verb **vocō**, as usually given in dictionaries, are: —

vocō	**vocāre**	**vocāvī**	**vocātum**
pres. indic.	pres. inf.	perf. indic.	supine

The term **Supine** is applied in Latin Grammar to a certain kind of **Verbal Noun.** This noun is of the Fourth Declension, and is used in two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: —

e.g. Acc. **vocātum**
Abl. **vocātū**

Theoretically, **vocātus, -ūs,** etc., means *the act of calling.*

1. The **Accusative Supine** is used to denote **purpose in connection with a Verb of Motion,** and is usually rendered in English by the Adverbial Infinitive: —

Vocātum vēnērunt, *They came to call.*
Lēgātōs pācem petītum mittunt, *They send ambassadors to seek peace.*

(N. B. — The Infinitive is never used in good Latin prose to denote Purpose.)

2. The **Ablative Supine** is used in a few phrases as a **modifier of an Adjective,** as: —

horribile dictū, *horrible to see.*
optimum factū, *the best thing to do.*

Literally, *horrible in the telling, best in the doing.*

The Perfect Passive Participle

3. The Supine occurs but rarely. Its form has acquired an importance in Latin grammar from the fact that most dictionaries and grammars give it as one of the principal parts of [illegible] verb, and in this connection it is especially important. Because from it we obtain the **Stem of the Perfect Passive Participle** and **all the Perfect Passive tense parts** of the Verb. Thus:—

SUPINE	PERF. PASS. PARTICIPLE	
vocātum	**vocātus**	*called*
stem, **vocāt-**		*having been called*
monitum	**monitus**	*warned*
scriptum	**scriptus**	*written*
dătum	**dătus**	*given*
pulsum	**pulsus**	*driven*
missum	**missus**	*sent*
visum	**visus**	*seen*

The Perf. Pass. Participle is declined, **vocātus, -a, -um** like **bonus**, and **agrees**, like an adjective, **with its noun.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Find in the Vocabulary and write the Principal Parts of **nūntiō, creō, dēleō, capiō, jubeō, vincō, gerō, audiō, trahō**, noting the Supine Stem.

2. Give Latin Participles meaning:—

announced, created, destroyed, taken, ordered, conquered, waged (carried on), heard, drawn.

B. 1. Lēgātī obsidēs datum vēnērunt.

2. Mīlitēs mīsit Germānōs ex Galliā pulsum.

3. Hōc est difficile dictū.

4. Obsidēs ā Gallīs datōs ad urbem mīsit.

5. In urbe captā; urbem ā Caesare captam vīdī.

6. Mīlitēs ā Rōmānīs missī Germānōs ex Galliā pepulērunt.
7. Mīlitēs missōs timēbant Germānī.
8. Ā mīlitibus missīs superantur.
9. Sīgnum ā duce datum audīvērunt.
10. Servus epistolam ā dominō scrīptam in urbem portat.
11. Leō est asper tāctū.

Distinguish carefully the Perf. Part. from the Supine.

C. 1. The walls of the city taken by our (men) were high.
2. I have the book given me by you.
3. A story easy to tell (*nārrō*).
4. He came to tell a story.
5. The wars waged by Caesar were difficult.
6. The cities destroyed were many.
7. In the city destroyed; in the town destroyed.
8. The ships taken were long and swift.
9. The enemy seen on the hills were infantry.
10. Did you read the letter sent you by me?
11. In the house built by you; in the ship taken by him.

Caution. — *Beware of the tendency to think that the Supine is a usual equivalent of the English Infinitive.*

The Muses

CLĬŌ, *History*
EUTERPĒ, *Lyric Poetry*
THALĪA, *Comedy*
MELPOMĔNE, *Tragedy*
TERPSICHŎRĒ, *Choral Dance*
ERĂTŌ, *Amorous Poetry*
POLYHYMNIA, *Sublime Verse*
ŪRĂNIA, *Astronomy*
CALLĬŎPĒ, *Epic Poetry*

LESSON XLIX

PERFECT PASSIVE TENSES OF Vocō

Indicative Mood

The following is a synopsis of the Indicative Passive: —

Present	**vocor**	*I am (now) called, am being called*
Imperfect	**vocābar**	*I was being called, was called (repeatedly)*
Future	**vocābor**	*I shall be called*
Perfect	**vocātus sum**	(1) *I have been called,* (2) *I was called (once)*
Pluperfect	**vocātus eram**	*I had been called*
Fut. Perf.	**vocātus erō**	*I shall have been called*

PERFECT

Singular	Plural
vocātus sum	**vocāti sumus**
vocātus es	**vocāti estis**
vocātus est	**vocāti sunt**

PLUPERFECT

vocātus eram	**vocāti erāmus**
vocātus erās	**vocāti erātis**
vocātus erat	**vocāti erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

vocātus erō	**vocāti erimus**
vocātus eris	**vocāti eritis**
vocātus erit	**vocāti erunt**

1. The phrase **vocātus sum**, *I was called* or *have been called*, is not to be translated in the same way as the words taken separately: **sum**, *I am*; **vocātus**, *called.*

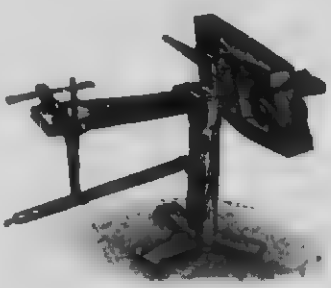
vocor = *I am (now) called.*
vocātus sum (Perfect) = *I am (in the position of having been) called*, i.e. *I have been called; was called; am (already) called.*

2. Note the agreement of the participle in **puella vocāta est**; **puellae vocātae sunt**; **templum aedificātum est.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Mūrī aedificātī sunt; aedificantur; aedificātī erant.
2. Haec rēs nōbīs nūntiāta est.
3. Mājōrēs cōpiae jam parātae erant.
4. Māxima classis ā Rōmānīs comparāta erit.
5. Frūmentum in oppida comportātur.

B. 1. A temple is being built; is (already) built.
2. Temples were being built; were (already) built.
3. The Gauls were conquered by the Roman people.
4. Large ships will have been prepared.
5. The consuls were elected (created) by the people (once); were elected (repeatedly).
6. Thou art (now) called; thou hast been called.
7. We were (continually) called; we were called (once).



CATAPULTA

Haec est māchina ad tēla ingentis māgnitūdinis conicienda idōnea.

LESSON L

SECOND CONJUGATION

Passive Voice

Principal Parts

moneō,	**-ēre,**	**monuī,**	**monitum,**	*warn, advise.*
teneō,	**-ēre,**	**tenuī,**	**tentum,**	*hold.*
habeō,	**-ēre,**	**habuī,**	**habitum,**	*have.*
dēleō,	**-ēre,**	**dēlēvī,**	**dēlētum,**	*destroy.*
videō,	**-ēre,**	**vīdī,**	**vīsum,**	*see.*

Indicative Mood

Present	**moneor**	**videor**
Imperfect	**monēbar**	**vidēbar**
Future	**monēbor**	**vidēbor**
Perfect	**monitus sum**	**visus sum**
Pluperfect	**monitus eram**	**visus eram**
Fut. Perf.	**monitus erō**	**visus erō**

Present

singular	plural
moneo r, *I am advised*	**monē mur**
monē ris (-re)	**monē mini**
monē tur	**mone ntur**

Imperfect

monē ba r, *I was being advised*	**monē bā mur**
monē bā ris (-re)	**monē bā mini**
monē bā tur	**monē ba ntur**

Future

monē bo r, *I shall be advised*	**monē bi mur**
monē bĕ ris (-re)	**monē bi mini**
monē bi tur	**monē bu ntur**

PERFECT

monitus sum { 1. *I have been advised* / 2. *I was advised* (*once*) **moniti sumus**

PLUPERFECT

monitus eram, *I had been advised* **moniti erāmus**

FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō, *I shall have been advised* **moniti erimus**

Vocō		Moneō	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
vocō	vocor	moneō	moneor
vocābam	vocābar	monēbam	monēbar
vocābō	vocābor	monēbō	monēbor
vocāvī	vocātus sum	monuī	monitus sum
vocāveram	vocātus eram	monueram	monitus eram
vocāverō	vocātus erō	monuerō	monitus erō

EXERCISE

A. 1. Monēris ā patre; pater tē monet.
2. Hostēs vīsī sunt; vidēbantur.
3. Collis ā nostrīs tenēbātur.
4. Castra ab hostibus tenēbuntur.
5. Nihil ab eīs respōnsum est.
6. Vidēmur, vidēmus; vidēbis, vidēberis.
7. Urbs ā mīlitibus dēlēta est.
8. Nāvēs tempestāte dēlētae erant.
9. Oppidum ab exercitū tenētur; exercitus oppidum tenet; tenētis, tenēmus.
10. Monēmus, monēmur; timent, timentur.
11. Jubētur, jubēbantur, jubēbitur, jussus est.
12. Vidēminī, vidētis; monēs, monēris; tenēmur, tenēminī.

B. 1. The enemy are seen on the top of the mountain.
2. Our ships will be destroyed by the waves.
3. The hills are held by Caesar.
4. Thou art seen, thou seest.
5. Caesar's ships were now seen (*being seen*) from the shore.
6. The soldiers will be kept (*contineō*) in camp.
7. The ship will have been destroyed.
8. The war-ships were feared (*timeō*) by the Britons.
9. Thou wilt be feared by all.
10. Who was feared by the Gauls?
11. The Gauls were ordered (*jubeō*) to bring hostages.
12. We order, we are ordered; you (*plur.*) hold; you (*plur.*) are being held, you (*sing.*) were being held; you were holding.
13. Thou wilt see; thou wilt be seen.

Ballista saxa in hostem conicit. Catapulta et ballista sunt tormenta.

LESSON LI

THIRD CONJUGATION

Passive Voice

Principal Parts

regō, -ĕre, rēxī, rēctum, *rule.*
vincō, -ĕre, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*
gerō, -ĕre, gessī, gestum, *carry, carry on, do.*
mittō, -ĕre, mīsī, missum, *send.*
dūcō, -ĕre, dūxī, dūctum, (1) *lead,* (2) *think.*
scrībō, -ĕre, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.*
cognōscō, -ĕre, cognōvī, cognitum, *learn, ascertain.*
pellō, -ĕre, pepulī, pulsum, *drive.*
petō, -ĕre, petīvī, petītum, *seek.*
frangō, -ĕre, frēgī, frāctum, *break.*

Regō, *I rule*

Indicative Mood

Present

rego r, *I am ruled, am being ruled*	**regi mur**
regĭ ris (-re)	**regi mini**
regi tur	**regu ntur**

Imperfect

regē ba r, *I was being ruled, was ruled (continuously)*	**regē bā mur**
regē bā ris (-re)	**regē bā mini**
regē bā tur	**regē ba ntur**

Future

rega r, *I shall be ruled*	**regē mur**
regĕ ris (-re)	**regē mini**
regē tur	**rege ntur**

Compare the Active: **regam**, **-ēs**, **-et**, etc.

PERFECT

rēctus sum { 1. *I have been ruled* / 2. *I was ruled* (a completed occurrence) — **rēcti sumus**

PLUPERFECT

rēctus eram, *I had been ruled* — **rēcti erāmus**

FUTURE PERFECT

rēctus erō, *I shall have been ruled* — **rēcti erimus**

Similarly: —

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
vincō	vincor
vincēbām	vincēbar
vincam	vincar
vīcī	victus sum
vīceram	victus eram
vīcerō	victus erō

Make an Active and Passive Synopsis for each of the following: **gerō, mittō, dūcō, scrībō, cognōscō, pellō, petō, frangō.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Regĕris, regēris; regitur, regētur.
2. Reguntur, regentur, regēmur, regimur.
3. Gallia a Caesare vincēbātur.
4. Multī mīlitēs in Galliam dūcentur.
5. Dum haec geruntur.
6. Multa bella ā Rōmānīs gerēbantur.
7. Scrībis, scrīpseris, scrībitur, scrībētur.
8. Cīvēs malī ex cīvitāte pelluntur.
9. Lēgātī ad Caesarem dē pāce mittentur.

10. Mittĕris, mittēris, mīseris, mīsērunt.
11. Gallia victa est; lēgāti missī sunt.
12. Epistolae missae erant.
13. Vincī, vīcī, vincĕre, vincĕris, vīcĕris, vincēris.
14. Mittimur, mittiminī; vincimus, vincēmur, vincēbāmur.

B. 1. Thou art conquered, he is conquered; thou wilt be conquered, he will be conquered.
2. We are sent, we shall be sent; they are sent, they will be sent; the letter is (already) sent; is always sent.
3. Ambassadors were sent to the general about these matters.
4. War is being waged, will be waged, has been waged.
5. Wars are being waged, will be waged, had been waged.
6. He had learnt all these things from scouts.
7. They are driven out of the states; they will be driven; they will have been driven; they were being driven.
8. Letters were written; had been written; the letter is being written; the letter will be written; was (already) written.
9. Thou writest, thou art driven, thou wilt be sent.
10. While this war was being waged (say *is being waged*).
11. While he was waging these wars (say *is waging*).
12. Peace is sought by the Gauls; will be sought; has been sought.
13. Camp will be pitched (*pōnō*); is being pitched; is pitched daily; is already pitched.

LESSON LII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Passive Voice

Principal Parts

audiō, -īre, audīvī, audītum, *hear.*
sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultum, *bury.*
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, *open.*
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *find* (after searching).
inveniō, -īre, invēnī, inventum, *find* (unexpectedly).
vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*
mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, *fortify.*

Audiō, *I hear*

Indicative Mood

Present

audio r, *I am heard, am being heard*	**audī mur**
audī ris (-re)	**audī minī**
audī tur	**audiu ntur**

Imperfect

audiē ba r, *I was being heard, I was heard (continuously or repeatedly)*	**audiē bā mur**
audiē bā ris (-re)	**audiē bā minī**
audiē bā tur	**audiē ba ntur**

Future

audia r, *I shall be heard*	**audiē mur**
audiē ris (-re)	**audiē minī**
audiē tur	**audie ntur**

Compare the Active, **audiam**, **-iēs**, **-iet**, etc.

PERFECT

audītus sum, 1. *I have been heard*	**audīti sumus**
2. *I was heard (once)*	

PLUPERFECT

audītus eram, *I had been heard*	**audīti erāmus**

FUTURE PERFECT

audītus erō, *I shall have been heard*	**audīti erimus**

Similarly: —

sepelior	**sepultus sum**
sepeliēbar	**sepultus eram**
sepeliar	**sepultus erō**

1. Make an Active and Passive synopsis for **aperiō, reperiō, veniō, vinciō, mūniō.**
2. Compare **vincō** with **vinciō.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Lēgātus audītur, mittitur, audiētur, mittētur, audiēbātur, mittēbātur, audītus est, missus es.
2. Verba lēgātōrum ā Caesare audiuntur; audīta sunt.
3. Cadāvera hominum in sepulchrīs sepeliuntur.
4. Multa et māxima animālia in silvīs inveniēbantur.
5. Epistola ā Iuce aperītur.
6. Haec omnia ā mē reperta sunt.
7. Invenīris, mittēris, inveniēris, mittēris.
8. Manūs captīvōrum vincientur; vinctae erant
9. Nōnne castra ā nostrīs locō māgis idōneō mūnientur; pōnentur; mūnīta sunt; posita erunt?
10. Vincītur, vincītur; vinciuntur, vincuntur.

11. Quis vinciētur? Cūr nōn audītur?
12. Num vincētur? Ā quō victī sumus? Vinctī sumus.
13. Oculōs, epistolās aperīmus; portam, viam patēfacimus.

B. 1. Thou art heard; thou art placed (*pōnō*); he is being placed; he is heard.
2. Your hands have not been bound by him; will not be bound; are not being bound.
3. The conditions of peace have not been heard by us.
4. Was the camp being fortified by a rampart?
5. He will soon be discovered by them.
6. They will very quickly discover him.
7. Thou art binding; thou art being bound; we are being bound.
8. Thou art conquering; thou art being conquered.
9. Their eyes were opened; the camp had been fortified; the bodies will have been buried.

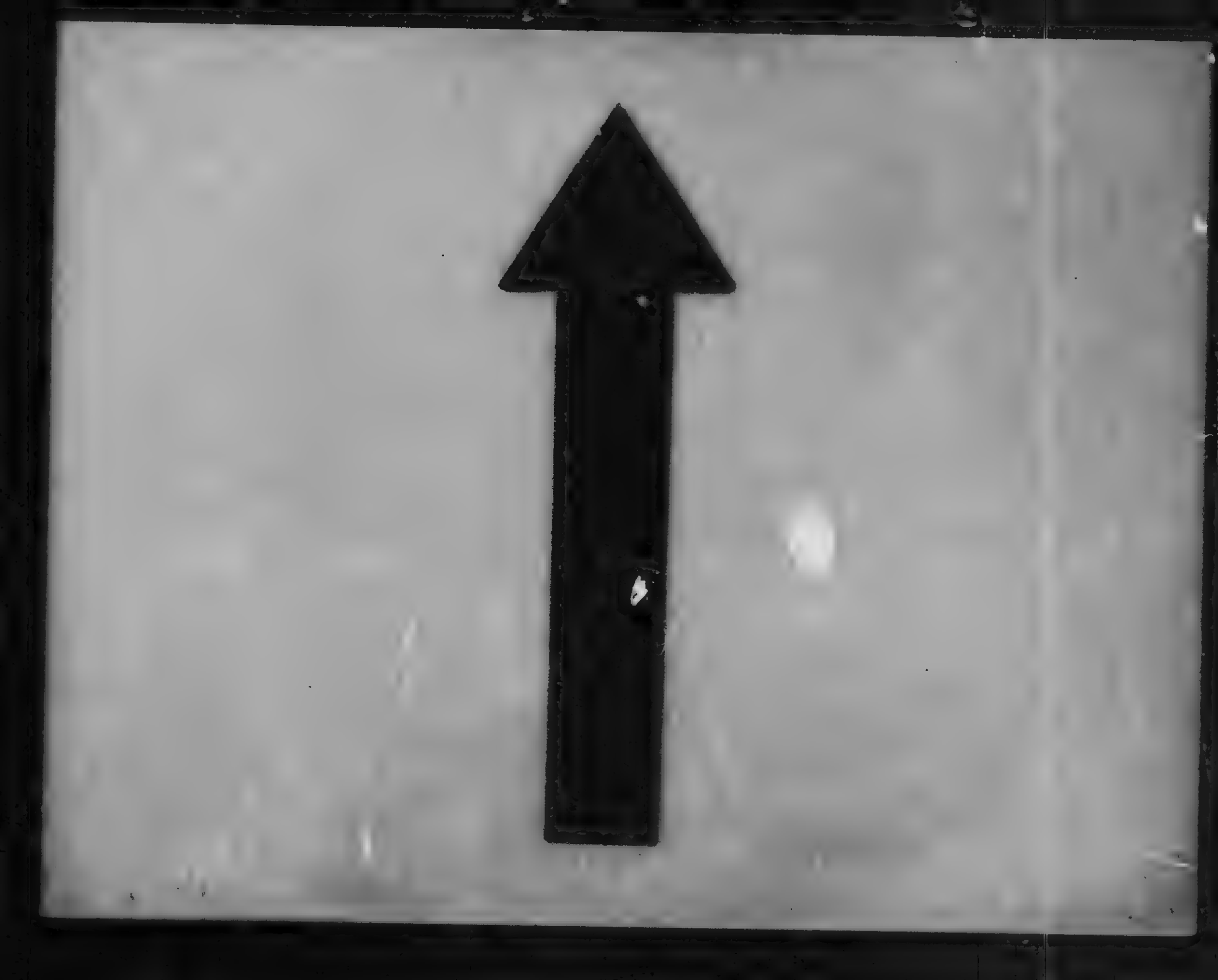
Mūsae

Mūsae, quae novem fuērunt, apud Helicōnem montem habitāre exīstimābantur. Parnassus mōns et fōns Castāliae etiam iīs sacrī erant. Poētae nōmina eārum invocābant. Sī quis cum iīs carmine contendere audēbat, gravibus poenīs afficiēbātur. Virginēs novem, sīc fert fābula, Pierī fīliae, hōc tāle ausae, in speciem avium mūtātae sunt.

(*See page* 154.)

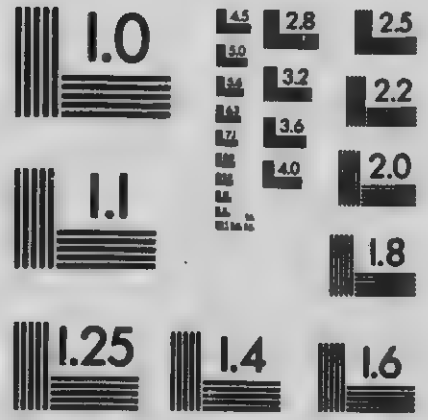
Vōs lēne cōnsilium et datis et datō
Gaudētis almae.

HORACE, *Odes* III, 4.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

SYNOPSIS OF REGULAR VERBS

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

I **Vocō** (-āre)	II **Moneō** (-ēre)	III **Regō** (-ĕre)	IV **Audiō** (-īre)
vocō, -ās, -at	moneō, -ēs, -et	regō, -is, -it	audiō, -is, -it
vocābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
vocābō	monēbō	regam, -ēs, -et	audiam, -iēs, -iet
vocāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
vocāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
vocāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō

PASSIVE VOICE

I **Vocor** (-ārī)	II **Moneor** (-ērī)	III **Regor** (-ī)	IV **Audior** (-īrī)
vocor, -āris (-re), -ātur	moneor, -ēris (-re), -ētur	regor, -ĕris (-re), -itur	audior, -īris (-re), -itur
vocābar	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
vocābor, -bĕris (-re)	monēbor, -bĕris (-re)	regar, -ēris (-re), -ētur	audiar, -iēris (-re), -iētur
vocātus sum	monitus sum	rēctus sum	audītus sum
vocātus eram	monitus eram	rēctus eram	audītus eram
vocātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	audītus erō

CERES

(*Greek*, DĒMĒTĒR)

Cerēs dea agricultūrae fuit, Jovis soror et Prōserpinae māter. Frūmenta hominibus nūtrit. Fīlia ējus ā Plūtōne in Īnferōs abrepta est. Ā mātre reperta illa tertiam partem annī uxor cum Orcō cōnsūmere coācta est; reliquam partem cum mātre in terrīs manēre ei licēbat.

LESSON LIII

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Passive Voice

FIRST CONJUGATION

Present

vocāre, *be thou called* — **vocāmini**, *be ye called*

Future

vocātor, *thou shalt be called* — ———

vocātor, *he shall be called* — **vocantor**, *they shall be called*

See Imperative Active, page 130.

SECOND CONJUGATION

Present

monēre — **monēmini**

Future

monētor — ———

monētor — **monentor**

THIRD CONJUGATION

Present

regĕre — **regimini**

Future

regitor — ———

regitor — **reguntor**

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present

audire — **audīmini**

Future

auditor — ———

auditor — **audiuntor**

IMPERATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT 2. vocā, vocāte	PRESENT 2. monē, monēte	PRESENT 2. regĕ, regĭte (capĕ, capĭte)	PRESENT 2. audī, audīte
FUTURE 2. vocātō, vocātōte 3. vocātō, vocantō	FUTURE 2. monētō, monētōte 3. monētō, monentō	FUTURE 2. regitō, regitōte 3. regitō, reguntō	FUTURE 2. audītō, audītōte 3. audītō, auduntō

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT 2. vocāre, vocāminī	PRESENT 2. monēre, monēminī	PRESENT 2. regĕre, reglmini (capĕre, capiminī)	PRESENT 2. audīre audīminī
FUTURE 2. vocātor 3. vocātor, vocantor	FUTURE 2. monētor 3. monētor, monentor	FUTURE 2. regitor 3. regitor, reguntor	FUTURE 2. audītor 3. audītor, auduntor

EXERCISE

A. 1. Vocā, vocāre, vocāris, vocās.
2. Monēs, monē, monēris, monēre.
3. Regere, regis, rege, regeris, regī, regēris.
4. Audī, audīs, audīris, audīre.
5. Vince, vincī, vīcī, vincere (*imperat.*), vinceris, vincēris, vincis, vincēs.
6. Tenēre, tenētor, tenēminī, tenentor, tenentur.
7. Vincīre (*inf.*), vincīrī, vincīre (*imperat.*), vincī, vincīs, vincīris.
8. Vocāminī (*two values*); regere (*three values*).

B. 1. Lead thou, lead ye, be thou led, be ye led.
2. Thou shalt lead, thou wilt lead, they will lead, they shall lead.
3. Thou shalt be led, thou wilt be led, they will be led, they shall be led.
4. To send, to be sent, send thou, be thou sent.
5. Thou sendest, thou art sent, thou wilt be sent.
6. He shall send, he shall be sent, they will be sent, they shall be sent.
7. They are called, they shall be called, they will be called, thou shalt call, thou shalt be called.

SIGNIFER VEL AQUILIFER

Is qui signum fert.

LESSON LIV

PASSIVE VOICE OF Capiō

capior, capī, captus sum, *I am taken*

What is the rule for inflecting **capiō**? *See page 48.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	capior	capĭmur
	capĕris(-re)	capĭmini
	capĭtur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
FUTURE	capiar	capiēmur
	capiēris(-re)	capiēmini
	capiētur	capientur
PERFECT	captus sum	capti sumus
PLUPERFECT	captus eram	capti erāmus
FUTURE PERFECT	captus erō	capti erimus

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	capere	capimini
FUTURE	capitor	———
	capitor	capiuntor

EXERCISE

A. Read aloud carefully and translate: —

1. Regĭs, audīs, capĭs; regĭtur, audītur, capĭtur.
2. Pōnunt, veniunt, faciunt; pōneris, pūnīris, capĕris.
3. Mittĭmur, audīmur, capĭmur.
4. Capiēs, capiēris; capiet, capiētur.

5. Cīvēs interficitur; Gallia vincitur; manus vincītur.
6. Epistola ā tē accipitur; litterae accipiuntur.
7. Capī, cēpī, cape; accipit, accēpit, accipī, accipe.

B. Translate orally: —

1. Thou art sent, thou art punished, thou art taken.
2. The camp is placed; the enemy are punished; the guards are slain.
3. He will be sent; he will be killed.
4. The villages were being plundered by the enemy.
5. He is being taken; he is being punished; he will be taken.
6. The city has been plundered by the army.
7. We are being plundered by the rich.
8. All this time darts were being hurled.

SĪGNUM LEGIŌNIS

Sīgna ex auro aut argentō facta sunt.

LESSON LV

DEPONENT VERBS

(Dēpōnō, *I lay aside*)

Deponent verbs are those which have "laid aside" their active conjugation and assumed **active meanings for their passive forms**, e.g. : —

I Conj. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus,** *try, attempt.*
II Conj. **vereor, verērī, veritus,** *fear.*
III Conj. **sequor, sequī, secūtus,** *follow.*
IV Conj. **ōrdior, ōrdīrī, ōrsus,** *begin.*

Cōnor, *try, attempt*

Indicative Mood

Pres.	**cōnor, -āris**(-re), **-ātur**, etc.,	*I try.*
Imperf.	**cōnābar, -bāris**, etc.,	*I was trying.*
Fut.	**cōnābor, -beris**, etc.,	*I shall try.*
Perf.	**cōnātus sum,**	*I tried, have tried.*
Plup.	**cōnātus eram,**	*I had tried.*
Fut. Perf.	**cōnātus erō,**	*I shall have tried.*

The inflections of **cōnor** are the same as those of **vocor** (see page 155).

Similarly: **hortor,** *exhort;* **moror,** *delay;* **suspicor,** *suspect;* **cunctor,** *hesitate.*

The pupil may similarly work out **vereor, sequor, ōrdior,** taking **moneor, regor, audior** as models (see page 166).

EXERCISE

A. 1. Vocat, vocātur, cōnātur, vocāmus, cōnāmur.
2. Vocās, vocāris, hortāris, hortāminī, vocāte.
3. Laudābant, morābantur, suspicābātur.

4. Cōnābimur mīlitēs hortārī.
5. Nōlīte, mīlitēs, cunctārī.
6. Suōs sē sequī jubet.
7. Vocāvērunt, cōnātī sunt, vocātī erant.

B. 1. They praise; they exhort; we are exhorting.
2. You (*plur.*) are praising; you (*plur.*) are not hesitating.
3. He will call; he will try; he was trying.
4. He wishes to try, to follow, to begin.
5. Thou dost not suspect; thou hast delayed.
6. Do not, lieutenant, delay.

C. 1. Make a synopsis of the Indicative of each of the following verbs: **hortor, vereor, sequor, ōrdior.**
2. Write out in full the Pres. Indic. of **hortor, vereor, sequor, ōrdior.**
3. Write out the Fut. Indic. Active and Passive of **regō** and the Fut. Indic. of **sequor.**
4. Write the same as in 3 for **audiō** and **ōrdior.**

C. JULIUS CAESAR

Born 100 B.C. Consul 59 B.C. Joined Pompey and Crassus in the First Triumvirate. Campaigns in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, 58–49 B.C.

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate. Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C. Caesar sole master of the Roman Empire. Appointed Dictator for ten years. Assassinated 44 B.C.

[LATĪNĒ]

C. Jūlius Caesar, annō urbis conditae sēscentēsimō quīnquāgēsimō quārtō nātus est. Annōs quadrāgintā ūnum nātus, cōnsul creātus est. Cum Pompēiō et Crassō in societātem iniit; novem circiter annōs prōcōnsul bellum in Galliā, Britanniā, Germāniā gerēbat.

Posteā, ubi Pompēius et senātus ei bellum indīxērunt, exercitum in Italiam dūxit; inimīcōs superāvit. Post quattuor annōs ipse ā conjūrātōribus occīsus est.

LESSON LVI

DEPONENT VERBS

(*Continued*)

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

INDICATIVE MOOD

I	II	III	IV
cōnor, -āris, *etc.*	vereor, -ēris, *etc.*	sequor, -ēris, *etc.*	ōrdior, -īris, *etc.*
cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	ōrdiēbar
cōnābor	verēbor	sequar, -ēris, *etc.*	ōrdiar, -iēris, *etc.*
cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	ōrsus sum
cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	ōrsus eram
cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	ōrsus erō

See Passive Voice of vocō, moneō, regō, audiō, *page 166.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Pres.	*Pres.*	*Pres.*	*Pres.*
cōnāre, -āminī	verēre, -ēminī	sequere, -iminī	ōrdire, -iminī
Fut.	*Fut.*	*Fut.*	*Fut.*
cōnātor, *etc.*	verētor, *etc.*	sequitor, *etc.*	ōrditor, *etc.*

CAPIŌ DEPONENT VERBS

patior, pa[illegible] passus, *I suffer, allow*

INDICATIVE

patior, -ēris, -itur, *etc.*
patiēbar
patiar, -iēris, -iētur, *etc.*
passus sum, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE

Pres. patere, -iminī

Fut. patitor, *etc.*

Semi-Deponents

audeō, -ēre, ausus, *dare.*
gaudeō, -ēre, gavīsus, *rejoice.*
soleō, -ēre, solitus, *accustomed.*
fidō, -ere, fīsus, *trust, rely upon.*

These verbs are Deponent in the Perfect Tenses only.

List of Deponent Verbs

FIRST CONJUGATION

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *think.*
hortor, -ārī, hortātus, *exhort.*
cunctor, -ārī, cunctātus, *hesitate.*
moror, -ārī, morātus, *delay.*
mīror, -ārī, mīrātus, *admire.*

SECOND CONJUGATION

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, *promise.*
cōnfiteor, -ērī, cōnfessus, *confess.*
misereor, -ērī, miseritus, *pity* (*Governs the Gen.*).
videor, -ērī, vīsus, *seem* (*practically a Deponent in meaning*).
videor also = *am seen.*

THIRD CONJUGATION

loquor, -ī, locūtus, *speak.*
queror, -ī, questus, *complain.*
proficīscor, -ī, profectus, *set out.*
ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *use* (*Governs the Abl.*).
nāscor, -ī, nātus, *am born.*
nancīscor, -ī, nactus, *find, obtain.*

Like **Capiō**

prōgredior, -ī, prōgressus, *advance.*
morior, -ī, mortuus, *die.*

Also, **patior**, *suffer.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

experior, -īrī, expertus, *make trial, test.*
potior, -īrī, potītus, *gain possession* (*Governs the Abl.*).
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, *measure.*
mentior, -īrī, mentītus, *lie, speak falsely.*
orior, -īrī, ortus, *arise.*

Note. — **Orior** takes some forms of the Third Conj.: **orĕris, orĭtur.**
Distinguish **queror**, *complain*, from **quaerō**, *ask.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Cōnābimur loquī; ab initiō ōrdiēmur.
2. Verērī neque audēre vidētur.
3. Nunc sequeris; mox nōn sequēris.
4. Gallī Caesarī obsidēs pollicitī sunt.
5. Paucōs diēs in eā regiōne morātur.
6. Questus est quod obsidēs, quōs pollicitī erant, nōn dederant.
7. Quaesiit eōrum sententiam.
8. Queritur, quaerit; quereris, quaerēs, querēris.
9. Nōnne querī vidēris, Caesar?
10. Dē hīs rēbus cum lēgātīs loquēmur.
11. Rhēnus fluvius ex Alpibus oritur.
12. Prīncipēs in castrīs colloquēbantur.
13. Queruntur, quaerunt; morātur, moritur, moriētur.

B. 1. They will attempt to set out.
2. He obtained suitable weather.
3. A very great storm is arising; has arisen.
4. He tells many lies (*he lies many things*).
5. They seem to suspect.
6. Why do you hesitate, soldiers? Leap down.
7. Thou speakest; we suffer; they begin; he confesses.
8. They delay; they die; he complains; he will complain.
9. He dares; he hears; he was daring; he will dare; he will hear.
10. He has dared; he has heard; they rejoice; they had rejoiced.
11. Follow (thou); follow (ye); dare (thou); dare (ye); to speak; speak (thou); speak (ye).
12. He exhorts them.
13. They will set out for home.
14. He fears an uprising (*mōtus, -ūs*) of the Gauls.

British Warriors

READING LESSON

CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN

1. Caesar ipse cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra. Montibus angustīs mare continēbātur. Ex locīs superiōribus etiam ad lītus tēlum adigī poterat. Locus ad ēgrediendum[1] nēquāquam idōneus erat. Caesar igitur reliquās nāvēs in ancorīs ad hōram nōnam exspectāvit; tum ab eō locō circiter mīllia passuum septem prōgressus est. Reliquae nāvēs, quae equitēs trānsportā-

[1] Gerund of ēgredior, *for disembarking, see page 216.*

bant, nōn ad īnsulam pervēnērunt sed tempestāte ad continentem rējectae sunt.

2. At barbarī, quī cōnsilium ējus cognōverant, equitātum et essedāriōs praemīserant et eum exspectābant. Ubi Rōmānī ēgredī cōnātī sunt, illī eōs prohibēbant. Ex āridō enim in aquam prōgrediēbantur, tēla audācter coniciēbant, equōs incitābant. Māgna erat difficultās Rōmānōrum. Hīs enim omnibus rēbus perterritī sunt neque pristinō studiō ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior, rēmīs incitārī et ad dextrum latus hostium cōnstituī jussit. Barbarī, nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū perterritī, pedem rettulērunt.[1] Aquilifer legiōnis decimae māgnā vōce "Dēsilīte," inquit, "mīlitēs, nisi vultis[2] aquilam hostibus prōdere." Tum ē nāvī sē ējēcit et sīgnum ad hostēs īnferre[3] incēpit. Reliquī eum sequēbantur et hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

New Words

Attingō, ibi, armātus, contineō, etiam, adigō, nēquāquam, ēgredior, reliquus, tum, perveniō, rēiciō, essedārius, praemittō, prōgredior, āridus, incitō, difficultās, perterreō, pristinus, studium, animadvertō, inūsitātus, cōnstituō, mōtus (-ūs), re-ferō, prōdō, ēiciō, inferō, appropinquō.

Samples of Parsing

Ipse (*page 178, line 1*): Intensive Pron.; Nom., Sing., Mas.; in apposition to the subject *Caesar*.

Cōnspexit (*line 3*): Verb, *cōnspiciō, ĕre, -spexī, -spectum*; Perf. Indic., Act., 3 Sing.; agreeing with the subject *Caesar*.

Order of Parsing:—(1) General description; (2) Particular statement of inflectional form; (3) Syntax or Relation.

[1] See *referō*. [2] See *volō, velle*. [3] Pres. Inf. of *inferō*.

LESSON LVII

PARTICIPLES

A Participle is a Verbal Adjective.

1. It does **not assert**, but it may govern an object, and otherwise has the force of the Verb. It is a **Verbal word** but **not a Verb.**

2. As a **descriptive word or modifier**, it is attached to a noun or pronoun. Hence it is of the nature of an **Adjective**, is **declined** and **agrees** in case, number and gender with the word modified, *e.g.*:—

Sōlem orientem vidī, *I saw the sun rising.*

Orientem here is a participle agreeing with **sōlem** in the Acc. Sing. Mas.

Scheme of Participles

Vocō, *call*

Pres. Stem, **Vocā-**; Supine Stem. **Vocāt-**

	Active	Passive
Pres.	**vocā ns,** (*while*) *calling.*	———
Perf.	———	**vocāt us,** (1) *called.* (2) *having been called.*
Fut.	**vocāt ūrus,** (*when*) *about to call*	———

1. Notice that the following are lacking in Latin: —

Perfect Active Participle = *having called.*
Present Passive Participle = *(while) being called.*
Future Passive Participle = *(when) about to be called.*

2. The so-called Present Participle does not necessarily designate present time. It represents an action as **going on** (*not yet completed*) **at whatever time the sentence refers to,** whether that be past, present or future, as

vīdī sōlem orientem, *I* **saw** *the sun rising,* — PAST.
videō sōlem orientem, *I* **see** *the sun rising,* — PRESENT.
vidēbō sōlem orientem, *I* **shall see** *the sun rising,* — FUTURE.

A more accurate name would be **Imperfect Participle.**

3. The **Perfect Participle** represents something as **completed before the time designated** by the principal verb.

4. The **Future Participle** represents something as **expected to take place after the time designated** by the principal verb.

The Formation of Participles

5. The **Present Participle Active** is formed from the **Present Stem** (**vocā**) + **ns,** and is declined **vocāns,** Gen. **vocantis** (see **prūdēns,** page 76).

6. The **Future Participle Active** is formed from the **Supine Stem** (**vocāt**) + **ūrus, -a, -um,** declined like **bonus.**

7. The **Perfect Participle Passive** is formed from the **Supine Stem** (**vocāt**) + **us, -a, -um,** declined like **bonus.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Dāns, datus, datūrus; mīlitēs dantēs; librī datī; ducēs datūrī.

2. Puerum stantem vīdī. Puerōsne stantēs vīdistī?

3. Cum puerō stante; cum puerīs stantibus collocūtus est.
4. Arma mīlitum pugnantium.
5. Mihi vocantī nōn respondit. Ducibus vocantibus nōn respondētis.
6. Rem nūntiātam audīvī. Rēs nūntiātās audiēs.
7. Mīlitēs pugnātūrī deōs ōrābant.
8. Mīlitēs pugnātūrōs Caesar hortātus est.
9. Vōcem Caesaris laudantis audiēbant.

B. 1. He saw the cavalry (*plur.*) fighting.
2. With the guards standing in the camp.
3. They were frightened by the affair reported.
4. (When) about to prepare forces, they sent out (*dīmittō*) messengers.
5. They wept (when) begging peace (use *ōrō*).
6. Tne words of the envoys imploring Caesar were heard.
7. They made no reply to his question (say *They replied nothing to him asking*), (*rogō*).
8. He did not believe them (when) reporting these things (*crēdō governs the Dat.*).
9. Of the boys standing. They heard him praising.
10. In the city freed by him; of the city freed.

Active Periphrastic Conjugation

The simple future is **vocābō**, *I shall call.*
The periphrastic ("round-about") future is: —

vocātūrus sum, *I am about to (intend to) call.*
vocātūrus eram, *I was about to (intended to) call.*
vocātūrus erō, *I shall be about to call.*

EXERCISE

1. The soldiers intended to fight.
2. The ambassadors intend to ask peace.
3. Caesar does not intend to grant (give) peace.
4. The queen had intended to free the islands.
5. I heard the envoys asking peace.
6. Caesar pitied them (*Gen.*) (when) asking peace.
7. He granted the peace asked by the Gauls.
8. The scouts were about to report to Caesar.
9. They will fight; they are going-to-fight.

SACRIFICE TO BACCHUS

LESSON LVIII

PARTICIPLES

(*Continued*)

Study the following schemes of Participles: —

Transitive Verbs

Moneō, *warn, advise*

Pres. Stem, **monē-**; Supine Stem, **monit-**

PARTICIPLES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	**monē ns**	——
Perf.	——	**monit -us**
Fut.	**monit -ūrus**	——

Regō, *rule*

Pres. Stem, **reg-** (**rege**); Supine Stem, **rēct-**

PARTICIPLES

Active	Passive
regē ns	——
——	**rēct -us**
rēct -ūrus	——

Vocāns, **vocātūrus**, **vocātus** have been given on page 181.

Audiō (**īre**), *hear*

Pres. Stem, **audī-**; Supine Stem, **audīt-**

PARTICIPLES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	**audiē ns**	——
Perf.	——	**audīt -us**
Fut.	**audīt -ūrus**	——

Capiō (**ere**), *take*

Pres. Stem, **capi-**; Supine Stem, **capt-**

PARTICIPLES

Active	Passive
capiē ns	——
——	**capt -us**
capt -ūrus	——

Intransitive Verbs

Veniō, *come*

Pres. Stem, **venī-**; Supine Stem, **vent-**

PARTICIPLES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	**veniē ns**	——
Perf.	——	*none except in the imper sonal* **ventum est**
Fut.	**vent -ūrus**	——

Observe the four endings of Present Participles according to the four Conjugations: —

1	2	3	4
-āns	**-ēns**	**-ēns (regēns)** but -iēns (capiēns)	**-iēns**

based upon the **Pres. Stems,**

vocā-	**monē-**	**reg- (rege-)** capi- (capie-)	**audī- (audie-)**

Form Present Participles from: —

faciō	**teneō**	**pugnō**
nūntiō	**creō (-āre)**	**mittō**
sentiō	**videō**	**servō**
spoliō (-āre)	**pāreō**	**vincō**
cōnspiciō	**parō**	**vinciō**
mūniō	**parcō**	**conīciō (-ere)**
jubeō	**pariō (-ere)**	**cognōscō**

EXERCISE

A. Give Latin for: —

1. Taken, heard, calling, seeing, seen.
2. Warning, about to rule, hearing.
3. Given, giving, about to take, coming.

4. I saw the cities taken by the enemy.
5. We saw the enemy taking the city.
6. She was about to hear; they were about to rule; the enemy intend to take.

B. 1. *Write out the principal parts of* **teneō, vincō, videō, mittō, jubeō, gerō, faciō, petō, cōgō, sentiō, pōnō, relinquō, servō, mūniō.**

2. *Write a scheme of participles for each of the foregoing verbs.*

C. Translate the following and account for the case of every participle:—

1. Multī, Galliam vincentēs, interfectī sunt.
2. Litterās ā tē missās accēpī.
3. Lēgātī ā Gallīs missī pācem ā Caesare petīvērunt.
4. Caesar lēgātōs pācem petentēs audīvit.
5. Pācem Gallīs petentibus dedit; pācem petītam dedit.
6. Mīlitēs, ā duce jussī, castra posuērunt.
7. Hostēs impetum in eōs, castra pōnentēs, fēcērunt.
8. Caesar hostēs impetum facientēs subitō adortus est.
9. Britannī celeritātem Rōmānōrum sentientēs pedem rettulērunt (*referō*).
10. Gallia victa est; manūs virginis sunt vinctae.

D. 1. The difficulties of Caesar (when) conquering Gaul were great.
2. Many soldiers were killed (when) waging war in Gaul.
3. They intended to send ambassadors and seek peace
4. I have received the books sent to me by them.

5. The Gauls made an attack upon the Romans (as the latter were) fortifying camp.
6. To me seeking; by him asking; of him ordering.
7. In the town taken; of the Romans taking.
8. Out of the city seen; the enemy seeing Caesar; they were about to see.
9. Hercules freed the maiden bound by the king.
10. Caesar spared the Gauls (*Dat.*) (when) conquered.

E. *Translate by a participle, where possible, or indicate where such translation is impossible:* —

1. Seeing, having seen, seen, about to be seen.
2. About to send, having been sent, (while) being sent, sending, having sent, being (already) sent.
3. Waging, having waged, (when) about to wage, (while) being waged, (already) waged, about to be waged.
4. Given, giving, having given, having been given, (when) about to give.

SCĀLAE

LESSON LIX

PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS

Cōnor, *attempt*

PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	**cōnāns,** *attempting.*	none
Perf.	**cōnātus,** *having attempted*	none
Fut.	**cōnātūrus,** *about to attempt*	none

1. In Deponent Verbs, the Present Participle and the Future Participle are taken from the Active Conjugation.

2. The Perfect Participle is a pure Deponent: Passive in form, Active in meaning.

3. Many Deponent Verbs show a tendency to avoid the Present Participle: —

veritus, *fearing* (= *having conceived fear*) — not **verēns.**
arbitrātus, *thinking* — not **arbitrāns.**
ūsus, *using* — not **ūtēns.**
suspicātus, *suspecting* — not **suspicāns.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. *Write schemes of participles for* —

vereor, sequor, potior, prōgredior, morior, moror, polliceor, proficiscor.

Translate: —

2. Prōgressus, moritūrus, sequēns, pollicitus, pollicitūrus, prōgrediēns.

3. Prōgressūrī erant; mīlitēs prōgredientēs.

4. Caesar proficīscēns castra mūnīrī jussit.
5. Impetum in Rōmānōs ē nāvibus ēgredientēs fēcērun' , impetum in Rōmānōs ēgressōs fēcerunt.
6. Caesar, impetum veritus, praesidium relīquit.
7. Moritūrī tē salūtāmus, Caesar.

B. Translate where possible, otherwise indicate : —

1. Having feared, having been followed, having followed, (while) exhorting, having exhorted, (when) about to exhort.
2. (While) trying, having been tried, having tried.
3. (When) dying, (when) about to die, having died.
4. Caesar, thinking the place suitable, pitched camp (say *having thought*).
5. They came, using the same guides (say *having made use of*). (*Utor* governs the Abl.)
6. The Gauls, fearing Caesar, sought peace (*having feared*).
7. Having exhorted the soldiers, Caesar gave the signal.
8. Caesar, suspecting a renewal of the war (*rebelliō*), sent cohorts.

Ariēs

LESSON LX

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. The ordinary relations of a Noun or Pronoun, are as follows: —

As Subject of a Verb.
Object of a Verb.
Object of a Preposition.
Predicate Nominative.
Predicate Objective (Accus.).
Adverbial Objective of Extent, etc.
Appositive.

In the following sentence, the noun has none of the ordinary **case-deciding relations**; it is, in a sense, "cut loose," and is said to be **absolute** (**ab**, *from*; **solvō**, *I loose*): —

The **sun** *rising, they set out* (= *as the sun was rising*, etc.).

In English the noun "**sun**" is said to be in the **Nominative Absolute**: it is modified by the participle "*rising*," but has none of the ordinary relations.

The English **Nominative Absolute** is represented in Latin by the **Ablative Absolute**, *e.g.*: —

Sōle oriente, profectī sunt.

Notice that the participial modifier agrees with its noun. These together form an **Absolute Phrase**, denoting some adverbial notion of *time*, *cause*, etc.

The sun rising, may mean { (1) *when* (or *as*) *the sun was rising.* (2) *because the sun was rising.*

2. The same may be used with a Perfect Participle, as: —

Sōle ortō, profecti sunt, *the sun having risen, they set out.*

3. A common use of the Ablative Absolute is in such phrases as: —

Mariō cōnsule { *Marius (being) consul,* / *in the consulship of Marius,* / *when Marius was consul.*

tē duce { *you (being) leader,* / *under your leadership,* / *with you as leader.*

There is **no present participle of the verb "sum."** Hence "*being*" is not expressed in Latin.
Compare

tē invītō { *you (being) unwilling,* / *against your will,* / *without your consent.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. The rising sun was seen.
2. We saw the light (*lūx*) of the rising sun.
3. They saw the rising sun.
4. They were pleased (*dēlectō*) with the rising sun.
5. As the sun rose, they embarked (*nāvem cōnscendō*).
6. He set out as the stars were rising.
7. He set out when the stars had risen ("*the stars having risen*").
8. He was born in the consulship of Pompeius and Crassus.
9. The Romans, under the leadership of Caesar, conquered Gaul.

B. 1. Sīgnō datō, mīlitēs proelium commīsērunt.
2. Castrīs mūnītīs, legiō quiētem cēpit.

3. Rē nūntiātā, omnem equitātum mīsit.
4. Cōnsulēs creātī ad exercitum profectī sunt.
5. Cōnsulibus creātīs, dux ad exercitum profectus est.
6. Lēgātī ā Gallīs missī pācem petīvērunt.
7. Lēgātīs missīs, pācem petīvērunt Gallī.
8. Gallīs, Dīvitiacō petente, pācem dedit.
9. Oppidum occupāvit, nūllō resistente.
10. Castrīs, Caesare invītō, ēgressī sunt.
11. Catilīna, Cicerōne cōnsule, conjūrātiōnem fēcit.

LESSON LXI

PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE AND THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. It has been noted that (except in Deponent Verbs) Latin lacks a Perfect Active Participle. Thus there is no literal translation for: —

1. *Having taken the city,* he returned home.
2. *Having given the signal,* he joined battle.
3. *Having seen the enemy,* the scouts reported.

The nearest Latin would mean: —

1. *The city having been taken,* he returned.
2. *The signal having been given,* he joined battle.
3. The scouts, *the enemy having been seen,* reported.

Here *city, signal, enemy,* would be **absolute**.

In Latin, thus: —

1. Urbe captā, domum revertitur.
2. Sīgnō datō, proelium commīsit.
3. Explōrātōrēs, hostibus vīsīs, Caesarī rem nūntiāvērunt.

2. Hence **with Perfect Participles the Ablative Absolute is a very common construction**, owing simply to the lack of a Perfect Active Participle. In most cases a literal translation into English of a Perfect Passive Participle thus used, would be very awkward, as in No. 3 above. In such cases, it is better to render the meaning *in English* by the corresponding Perfect Active Participle, or by a "*when*" clause.

3. **The English Present Participle loosely used.**

In such cases as the following, English uses the present participle where the perfect is meant: —

1. *Throwing away their javelins, they made a charge,*
   = *Having thrown away*, etc., not (*while*) *throwing.*
2. *Sending ambassadors, they asked peace,*
   = *Having sent*, etc., not (*while*) *sending.*

Latin: —

1. **Tēlīs abjectīs, impetum fēcērunt.**
2. **Lēgātīs missīs, pācem petīvērunt.**

4. Note that there is no difficulty in regard to Deponent Perfect Participles, the construction being the same as in English, as: —

1. **Caesar, legionem hortātus, signum dedit.**
   Caesar, having exhorted the legion (not *legiōne hortātā*), *gave the signal.*
   Hortātus agrees with the subject **Caesar.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Caesar, rē audītā, ad flūmen iter fēcit.
2. Nāvibus cōnspectīs, ad lītus properābant.
3. Hostēs, māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs, ad castra vēnērunt.
4. Caesar, septem mīllia passuum prōgressus, nāvēs cōnstituit.

5. Caesare ad eum locum prōgressō, Britannī etiam eōdem cum equitibus contendēbant.
6. Gallīs obsidēs pollicitīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit
7. Gallī, obsidēs pollicitī, ea quae rogāverant impetrāvērunt.
8. Gallīs (*Dat.*) pācem petentibus obsidēs imperāvit.
9. Lēgātī, obsidēs pollicitī, ad suōs revertuntur.
10. Caesar, Volusēnum idōneum arbitrātus, ad Britanniam praemīsit.

B. Translate the following participles, noting the difference between the Deponent Perfect and the Passive Perfect:—

victus	**morātus**	**locūtus**
arbitrātus	**vulnerātus**	**dictus**
missus	**cōnātus**	**pollicitus**
ēgressus	**profectus**	**cunctātus**

C. 1. The soldiers, having landed, were making their way (*contendō*) towards the camp.
2. When the soldiers had landed, the Gauls made an attack. (Say, "*the soldiers having landed.*")
3. Caesar, suspecting these things, did not grant peace.
4. On seeing the army, they fled.
5. On learning these things, they sent envoys concerning peace.
6. Being driven from Rome, he went to Athens.
7. Having driven the conspirators out of the city, Cicero made a second (*alter*) speech.
8. Having delivered the speech (*ōrātiōnem habeō*), he dismissed the assembly.
9. Having said these things, he sat down.

Use (a) *dīcō*, (b) *loquor*.

D. Translate: —

1. Having seen the city.
2. Having waged war.
3. Having conquered Gaul.
4. Having wounded several.
5. Having received few wounds.
6. Having sought peace.
7. Having drawn up a line of battle.
8. Having led his army.
9. The cavalry, having followed the Gauls, killed many.
10. They intended to follow.
11. He saw them following.
12. Leaving a guard, he hastened towards the enemy.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum

1. *Translate (or indicate where translation is impossible):* —

1. seen	4. (while) being seen
2. having seen	5. (when) about to see
3. (while) seeing	6. (when) about to be seen

2. *Write the Latin for the above in the form of a scheme, showing the blanks (see page 184).*

3. *Write a similar exercise based upon* **scrībō**, *write;* **dō**, *give.*

THE CHIEF ROMAN MAGISTRATES

Consuls	Censor
Praetors	Pontifex Maximus
Quaestors	Tribune of the Plebs
Aediles	(Dictator, occasional)

(*These words are Anglicized. Use Eng. pronunciation.*)

READING LESSONS

The Greedy Dog

Canis ōlim per flūmen carnem ōre ferēns natābat, cum subitō simulācrum suum sīcut in speculō in aquā tranquillā cōnspexit. Alteram praedam ab alterō cane ferrī arbitrātus, ēripere voluit. Spēs tamen eum fefellit; dum enim aliēnō cibō potīrī cōnātur, eum quem suō ōre tenēbat dīmīsit. Avidum canem posteā omnēs eum appellābant.

Is quī aliēnum appetit saepe suum āmittit.

Distinguish **alius** from **aliēnus**. Notice the **Vivid Present** with **dum**, *while*.

Fefellit, see **fallō**. **Simulācrum**, *image, likeness*. **Speculum**, *mirror*.

Translate **spēs eum fefellit** idiomatically.

The Sacred Geese

Gallī ōlim Rōmam petiērunt. Exercitum Rōmānum apud Alliam flūvium superāvērunt et victōrēs ad urbem pervēnērunt. Adventū eōrum cognitō, Rōmāna juventūs cum Mānliō in arcem, quae in monte Capitōlīnō posita est, fūgit; seniōrēs vērō domōs regressī adventum Gallōrum expectābant. Hī omnēs in sēdibus suīs trucīdātī[1] sunt.

Gallī deinde impetum facere in arcem statuunt. Nocte sublūstrī,[2] aliī aliōs[3] trahentēs, in summum saxum ēvāsērunt. Nōn cūstōdēs sōlum fefellērunt sed nē canēs quidem excitāvērunt. Nōn ānserēs[4] tamen fefellērunt, quibus[5] in summā inopiā[6] Rōmānī abstinuerant, quia avēs erant Jūnōnis sacrae. Namque clangōre eārum ālārumque crepitū[7] excitātus est Mānlius. Gallī deinde facile dēturbantur.

[1] **trucīdō, -āre**, *slaughter, butcher*. [2] **sublūstris, -e**, *rather dark*. See page 109; 4. [4] **ānser, -eris**, f., *goose*. [5] Abl. of Separation, *from*, etc. [6] *want, scarcity*. [7] **crepitus, -ūs**, *noise, clapping, flapping*.

THE SACRED GEESE

LESSON LXII

INFINITIVES

Sum, *I am*

Pres. Stem, **es-**; Perf. Stem, **fu-**; Fut. Part. **fut-ūrus**

INFINITIVES

Pres.	**esse**, *to be.*
Perf.	**fu-isse**, *to have been.*
Fut.	**fut-ūrus esse**, *to be about to be.*

fore is often used instead of **futūrus esse**.

Vocō, *I call*

Pres. Stem, **vocā-**; Perf. Stem, **vocāv-**; Supine Stem, **vocāt-**

INFINITIVES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	**vocāre**, *to call*	**vocārī**, *to be called*
Perf.	**vocāv-isse**, *to have called*	**vocāt-us esse**, *to have been called*
Fut.	**vocāt-ūrus esse**, *to be about to call*	**vocāt-um īrī**, *to be about to be called*

(Fut. Pass. **vocātum īrī** is the Supine + the Pres. Inf. Pass. of **eō**, *I go.* The phrase cannot be translated literally.)

Moneō, *I call*

Pres, Stem, **monē-**; Perf. Stem, **monu-**; Supine Stem, **monit-**

Regō, *I rule*

Pres. Stem, **reg-**; Perf. Stem, **rēx-**; Supine Stem, **rēct-**

INFINITIVES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	monē-re	monē-rī
Perf.	monu-isse	monit-us esse
Fut.	monit-ūrus esse	monit-um īrī

INFINITIVES

Active	Passive
rege-re	reg-ī
rēx-isse	rēct-us esse
rēct-ūrus esse	rēct-um īrī

Audiō, *I hear*

Pres. Stem, **audī-**; Perf. Stem, **audīv-**; Supine Stem, **audīt-**

Capiō, *I take*

Pres. Stem, **cap(e-)**; Perf. Stem, **cēp-**; Supine Stem, **capt-**

INFINITIVES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	audī-re	audī-rī
Perf.	audīv-isse	audīt-us esse
Fut.	audīt-ūrus esse	audīt-um īrī

INFINITIVES

Active	Passive
cape-re	cap-ī
cēp-isse	capt-us esse
capt-ūrus esse	capt-um īrī

An Infinitive used as a Substantive is **neuter**, as: —

Dulce est prō patriā morī, *It is sweet to die for one's country.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Regere, regī, sequī; rēctus esse, secūtus esse; rēxisse.

2. Audīrī, mentīrī; audītus esse, audīre, audītum īrī.

3. Capī, cēpī, cape; cēpisse, captus esse.

4. Vocātus, vocātus essē, captūrus esse, captūrus.

5. Captus, captum īrī, captus esse, captūrus erat.

6. Audīre vidētur; sequī vidēbantur; vocāvisse videntur.

7. Oppidum capere vult; oppidum capī vult.

8. Urbem captūrī esse vidēmur.
9. Multōs annōs rēxisse dīcitur.
10. Castra paucīs diēbus expugnātūrī esse videntur.
11. Haec legiō urbem captūra esse vīsa est.
12. Hae legiōnēs captūrae esse vīsae sunt.
13. Puerīs grātum est lūdere.

B. 1. To rule; to be ruled; to have ruled; to have been ruled.
2. To be called; to be about-to-call; to be about-to-be-called.
3. To have heard; the voices seem to have been heard.
4. The soldiers are thought to have been advised.
5. They did not seem to be likely to (*about to*) capture the heights.
6. The heights seemed to have been taken.
7. Take thou; I have taken; to be taken; to have taken.
8. To advise; to be advised; to rule; to be ruled.
9. Having been heard; to have been heard; about to hear; to be about to hear; to have heard.
10. It is pleasant to hear sweet songs.
11. To give is better than to receive.
12. They seem to have been wise; to be about to be free.

FABLE

The Fox and the Tragic Mask

Persōnam tragicam forte vulpēs vīderat,
"O quanta speciēs" inquit "cerebrum nōn habet!"
Hōc illīs dictum est, quibus honōrem et glōriam
Fortūna tribuit, sēnsum commūnem abstulit.

LESSON LXIII

THE FORMATION OF INFINITIVES

PRESENT

Active

vocā-re, monē-re, rege-re, audī-re.

Passive

vocā-rī, monē-rī, reg-ī, audī-rī,

Based upon the **Present Stems, vocā-, monē-, reg-** (**rege-**), **audī-.**

Note the form, **reg-ī,** as compared with the others.

PERFECT

Active

vocāv-isse, monu-isse, rēx-isse, audīv-isse;
Based upon **Perf. Stem.**

Passive

vocātus esse, monitus esse, rēctus esse, audītus esse;
Perf. Passive Participle (from Supine Stem) + **esse.**

FUTURE

Active

vocātūrus esse, etc. **Future Participle Active** (from Supine Stem) + **esse.**

Passive

vocātum īrī, etc. **Supine of Purpose** + **īrī** (Pres. Pass. Infin. of **eō,** *go*).

1. The Future Passive Infinitive must be translated mechanically, the nearest possible literal translation for **vocātum īrī** being: —

"*the-act-of-going to-be-performed towards-calling.*"

(Supine of Purpose with a verb of motion.)

Infinitives of **videō**: —

Prin. Parts, **videō, -ēre, vidī, visum**, *see.*
Stems, **vidē-, vid-, vis-.**

INFINITIVES	
vidē-re	vidē-rī
vid-isse	vis-us esse
vīs-ūrus esse	vis-um īrī

Similarly form Infinitives from

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*
Stems, **vinc-, vic-, vict-.**

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, *send.*
Stems, **mitt-, mis-, miss-.**

cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum, *ascertain.*
Stems, **cognōsc-, cognōv-, cognit-.**

EXERCISE

A. Write out the Principal Parts and Stems of the following verbs and make for each a table (a) of Participles, (b) of Infinitives: —

creō, pōnō, jubeō, spoliō, veniō (*active only*), **cōnspiciō, relinquō, respondeō, pellō, gerō, dō.**

B. Translate:—

1. Cognōvisse, cognōscēns, cognitus, cognitum īrī, cognōscī, cognitūrus, cognitūrus esse.
2. Mittī, mīsī, missī sunt; lēgātīs missīs; lēgātī missī esse videntur; lēgātōs mīsisse vidētur.
3. Māgnō cum exercitū vēnisse exīstimātur.
4. Ventūrī esse dīcuntur.
5. Omnēs bonōs sapientēsque cīvitāte pepulisse vīsī sunt.

6. Urbe pulsī esse cīvēs vidēbantur.
7. Omnibus impedīmentīs relictīs; omnia impedīmenta relinquī jussit.

C. Translate:—

1. He ordered camp to be pitched; they seem to have pitched.
2. To be robbed, to have created, to be seen, to have seen, to have been seen, seen.
3. To have sent, to be sent, sent (*participle*), to have been sent.
4. Writing, written, to write, to be written, to have written, to be about to write, to be about to be written.
5. Having waged war; the Romans (while) waging war; they seem to be waging; they seem to have waged.
6. Having given the signal; of the leader (when) giving; he is thought to have given; they stood still (*cōnsistō*) (when) about to give; she seemed to be about to give.
7. Having learnt these things, he sent soldiers.
8. They believed him to have learnt.
9. We thought them to be coming, to be sending, to have sent, to be sent, to have been sent.
10. He declared himself to have saved his country. (What noun clause could be substituted for *himself to have*, etc.?)

Proverbs

Ars longa; vīta brevis.
Verbum sapientī sat (*verb. sap.*).
Nōn sine pulvere palma.
Vōx populī vōx Deī.

LESSON LXIV

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

Verbs signifying **Say, Think, Know, Hear, See, Believe,** etc., turn an English *that* clause into a Latin **Infinitive phrase. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative Case.**

(This construction is used also with such expressions as **vērum est,** *it is true;* **manifestum est,** *it is evident.*)

English	Latin
He says *that I am rich,*	He says *me to be rich.* **Dicit mē dīvitem esse.**

(*dīvitem* is a Predicate Adj. agreeing with **mē,** subject of **esse.**)

We know *that he came,*	We know *him to have come.* **Scīmus eum vēnisse.**
I believe *that they will send,*	I believe *them to be about to send.* **Crēdō eōs missūrōs esse.**

Tense Values of the Infinitive

It is a mistake to represent the *time values* of the Tenses of the Infinitive by the terms Present, Past and Future.

1. Examine the following: —

Eum stāre sciō = *I know him to be (now) standing,*
that he is standing,
that he stands.

Eum stāre sciēbam = *I knew him to be (then) standing,*
that he was standing,
that he (then) stood.

Eum stāre sciam = *I shall know him to be standing, that he is (then) standing.*

Notice that in all these cases the so-called **Present Infinitive** represents the **same time** as that referred to by the **governing verb**, whether that be **present, past,** or **future.**

2. Compare the following: —

Dīxit sē **venīre** = *He said that he* **was** *(then) coming.*

Dīxit sē **vēnisse** = *He said that he* **had** *come (himself to have come, at some* **previous time**).

Dīxit sē **ventūrum esse** = *He said that he* **would** *come (himself to be about to come* **afterwards**).

TENSE VALUES

PRESENT INFINITIVE—the **same** time as
PERFECT INFINITIVE—time **before**
FUTURE INFINITIVE—time **after**
} that expressed by the governing verb.

EXERCISE

Translate all Infinitive phrases by "that" clauses.

A. 1. Eum patriam servāre crēdimus.
2. Eum patriam servāre crēdidimus.
3. Sē patriam servāvisse dīcit.
4. Sē patriam servāvisse dīxit.

(*Note the difference between* **eum** *and* **sē**.)

5. Caesarem pācem datūrum esse arbitrantur.
6. Eum pācem datūrum esse arbitrātī sunt.
7. Eōs oppidum captūrōs esse spērāvit.
8. Urbem captam esse audīvit.
9. Urbem captum īrī vidēbant.
10. Explōrātōrēs Caesarī nūntiāvērunt hostēs castra expugnāvisse, — impetum in castra facere, — castra ab hostibus oppugnārī, — castra oppugnāta esse, — castra expugnātum īrī.

11. Bonum esse melius est quam dīvitem esse.
12. Bonus esse vult. Bonī fuisse videntur.

B. 1. We heard that they were coming, that he had come, that you (*plur.*) would come.
2. They say they are fighting, fought, will fight.
3. She said she had been sent.
4. They saw that the hill was held by the enemy.
5. They reported that a greater dust was seen.
6. They reported that they saw, had seen.
7. We believe they saw, were seen, are seen, will see.
8. It is true that the city has been taken.
9. It was evident that they would ask peace.
10. They believed their country was safe.

C. **Aciem īnstruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *I form line of battle.*

Translate: —

1. Having formed line of battle, they waited.
2. The enemy attacked[1] them (when) forming line of battle.
3. They intended to form.
4. He saw that they were forming, had formed.
5. He learned that line of battle was being formed by them.
6. He believed they would form, that line had been formed, that line would be formed.

[1] *adorior.*

D. **Bellum gerō**, -ere, -gessī, gestum, *I wage war.*

Translate: —

1. Having waged war, he returned home.
2. Many were killed (while) waging war.
3. It was our intention to wage war.

4. He said they were waging, that he had waged, that many wars had been waged, would be waged.
5. They knew he would wage.
6. We wage, we shall wage; they wage, they will wage.

Similar exercises may be made from:—

cōpiās cōgō	**pācem petō**
castra pōnō	**lēgātōs mittō**
urbem videō	**Galliam vincō**
etc.	etc.

LESSON LXV

DEPONENT INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE
Pres.	**sequī**, *to follow.*
Perf.	**secūtus esse**, *to have followed.*
Fut.	**secūtūrus esse**, *to be about to follow.*

Similarly:—

cōnārī	**verērī**	**adorīrī**
cōnātus esse	**veritus esse**	**adortus esse**
cōnātūrus esse	**veritūrus esse**	**adortūrus esse**

Notice that the future infinitive of deponent verbs is the active form, not *secūtum īrī*, etc.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Cognōvit eōs castra pōnere cōnārī.
2. Eī nūntiāvērunt sē hostēs multa mīllia passuum secūtōs esse.
3. Caesarem sequī vīdērunt.

4. Mīlitēs nāvibus ēgressōs esse atque ad castra contendere intellegēbant.

B. 1. He thought they would follow.
2. They said they did not fear (*they denied that they*).
3. They saw that the war-ships had advanced.
4. He said he would set out next day.
5. He perceived that they were hesitating.
6. They heard he would send war-ships.
7. They perceived that he did not believe these things.
8. It was reported that he was setting out; had set out; would set out.

Proverbs

1. *Salūs populī suprēma lēx.*
2. *Bona ancilla dīvitiae, domina pessima.*
3. *Puer nōn rēs est sed spēs.*
4. *Quot hominēs tot sententiae.*
5. *Quod nōn opus est asse cārum est.*
6. *Semper inops quīcumque cupit.*
7. *Poēta nāscitur, nōn fit.*
8. *Quod scrīptōrī clārum, nōnnumquam lēctōrī obscūrum est.*
9. *Nīl dēspērandum.*
10. *Dē gustibus nōn est disputandum.*
11. *Vincit quī sē vincit.*
12. *Possunt quia posse videntur.*

Contentment

Multa petentibus
Dēsunt multa.

HORACE, *Odes* III, 16.

LESSON LXVI

HOPE, PROMISE, UNDERTAKE

Examine the following: —

Spērō mē vīsūrum esse, *I hope to see.*

(literally, *I hope myself to be about to see, that I shall see.*)

Spērās tē vīsūrum esse, *Thou hopest to see.*
Spērant sē vīsūrōs esse, *They hope to see.*

RULE. — Verbs signifying *hope, promise, undertake,* where English would have the present infinitive without a pronoun, take in Latin the **pronoun with the future infinitive.**

This is really equal to a "*that*" clause; *he promised to* = *he promised that he would.* Of course **Spērō eum ventūrum esse** = *I hope* (*that*) *he will,* etc.

He promised to come, **Pollicitus est sē ventūrum esse** (*not* venīre).

They undertook to finish the work, **Sē opus cōnfectūrōs esse susceperunt** (*not* cōnficere).

The verb *swear* is really a verb of *promising.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hope.*
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, *promise.*
suscipiō, -ere, suscēpī, susceptum, *undertake.*
jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *swear.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Mē (esse) ventūrum spērāvī.
2. Tē missūrum (esse) pollicitus es.
3. Sē scrīptūram (esse) pollicita est.

NOTE. — The fut. inf. often omits **esse.**

4. Suscēpimus nōs opus cōnfectūrōs.
5. Vōs victūros jūrāvistis.
6. Sē scrīptūrās pollicitae sunt.

B. 1. Spērāvit eōs armā trāditūrōs esse.
2. Sē aut victūros aut moritūrōs jūrāvērunt.
3. Nōs hunc diem numquam vīsūrōs esse spērāvimus
4. Spērat sē ad flūmen ūnō diē perventūrum esse.
5. Rēgīna sē numquam pauperum oblītūram esse pollicētur.
6. Jūrant sē patriam dēfēnsūrōs.
7. Spērāsne mē hōc factūrum ?

C. 1. We swear to drive the enemy from our native land.
2. He undertook to finish the war in three months.
3. She hoped to come; they hope to come.
4. You (*sing.*) promised to ascertain all (things).
5. Do you (*pl.*) swear to do or die?
6. They promise not to set out before daybreak.
7. They will undertake to collect larger forces.
8. He had hoped to take the city.
9. We hope to see, to follow, to use, to live.
10. They promised to return in three days.
11. I hoped he would come.

Abbreviations

i.e.,	*id est.*
e.g.,	*exemplī grātiā.*
N.B.,	*Notā bene.*
P.S.,	*Post scrīptum.*
A.M.,	*Ante merīdiem.*
P.M.	*Post merīdiem.*

READING LESSON

THE WOLF AND THE LAMB

Lupus et āgnus ad eundem fluvium, sitī coāctī, vēnērunt. Superior stābat lupus, longē īnferior āgnus. "Cūr mihi," inquit lupus, "aquam turbulentam bibentī fēcistī?" "Quōmodō," ait āgnus, "illud facere potuī? Ā tē enim ad mē fluit rīvus." "Abhinc sex mēnsēs mihi maledīxistī." "Ego vērō," respondit ille, "nōndum nātus eram, cāre lupe." "Pater tuus igitur," ait lātrō lupus, "mihi maledīxit." Tum, capite āgnī arreptō, dentibus eum saevissimē lacerāvit.

Cuī bonō est cum lātrōne disputāre?

Translate:—

1. He says that the wolf stood higher up.
2. He said that the lamb had made the water muddy.
3. The lamb did not see that he (the wolf) was drinking.
4. The wolf said the lamb's father had reviled him (*reflexive*), and that therefore he would tear the lamb.

LESSON LXVII

INTRANSITIVE VERBS THAT GOVERN THE GENITIVE, THE DATIVE, OR THE ABLATIVE

Many verbs, which in English are transitive, do not govern the Accusative case in Latin. They are intransitive, and govern, some the Genitive, some the Dative and some the Ablative.

This is owing to some peculiar hidden meaning, which in most cases can be traced.

Genitive Verbs

reminiscor, -ī (no perfect), *remember*
oblīviscor, -ī, **oblītus**, *forget*
misereor, -ērī, **miseritus**, *pity*

EXERCISE

A. 1. He pities the poor.
2. We pity the women and children of the enemy.
3. They do not forget their valor; he forgets.
4. He will forget them.
5. He will not see them.
6. They will forget him.
7. Pity me.
8. Do not forget us.
9. Remember, soldiers, your old-time valor.

Dative Verbs

(*For Principal Parts, see Vocabulary.*)

The following verbs, denoting Advantage or Disadvantage, govern the Dative: —

1. **invideō**, *envy*
parcō, *spare*
pāreō, *obey*
crēdō, *believe* (*put confidence in*)
persuādeō, *persuade*
imperō, *command*

ignōscō, *pardon* **noceō**, *hurt, injure*
subveniō, *aid* **serviō**, *serve*
resistō, *resist*

2. Compounds of the verb **sum**, and many other compounds, as: —

Dēsum cīvitāti, *I am lacking to (I fail) the state.*

Bellum tibi inferō, *I wage war upon you.*

NOTE. — **Juvō** and **adjuvō**, *aid*, govern the Acc. **Jubeō**, *order*, governs the Acc. with the Infinitive. **Crēdō**, *I believe a thing*, Acc.

EXERCISE

B. 1. They spare me.
2. He will not spare you (*sing.*).
3. He envies you (*plur.*).
4. Thou wilt pardon them.
5. They believe him.
6. Whom (*sing.*) will he persuade?
7. He commands the army (*imperō*).
8. They go to the aid of their friends.
9. They aid Caesar (*adjuvō*).
10. You (*plur.*) serve your country.
11. We save our country.
12. This injures the state.
13. He pities me.
14. He will forget thee.
15. They remember us.

ABLATIVE VERBS

(*For Principal Parts, see Vocabulary.*)

The following govern the Ablative: —

ūtor, *use* **fruor**, *enjoy* **fungor**, *fulfil, perform*
potior, *gain possession* **vescor**, *eat, feed upon*

Fīdō, *trust, rely upon*, and its compounds govern the Dat. of a person but the Abl. of a thing.

EXERCISE

C. 1. He uses cavalry.
2. They enjoy peace.
3. He will not gain possession of our city.
4. They will perform their duty.
5. They feed upon milk and flesh.
6. They trust you (*sing.*).
7. They relied upon their valor.
8. We shall not believe him.
9. He will not persuade us.
10. You (*sing.*) will not forget your country.

Perseus

Perseus fīlius Danaae et Jovis fuit. Avus Acrisius propter ōrāculum nepōtem timēbat. Arcam igitur fēcit et mātrem fīliumque in eā inclūsōs in mare conjēcit. Jūpiter arcam ad ōrām īnsulae cūjusdam appulit, cūjus Polydectēs erat rēx. Ille Danaēn in mātrimōnium dūxit. Mox eum paenituit quod Perseus domī manēbat. Eum igitur domō abīre jussit. Perseus id quod facere jussus erat libenter fēcit et in aliās regiōnēs orbis terrārum profectus est. Postquam caput Medūsae māgnō cum perīculō abscīdit, in fīnēs Aethiopum pervēnit. Ibi Cēpheus rēgnābat. Horribile autem mōnstrum eotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et illīus agrōs vāstābat. Deus quīdam Cēpheum fīliam suam, Andromedam, virginem fōrmōsissimam, mōnstrō dare jussit. Quamquam id graviter ferēbat, deō pārēre cōnstituit et fīliam ad rūpem, quae in marī haud procul ā lītore erat, adligārī jussit. Mox mōnstrum in cōnspectum vēnit. Sed dum virginem dēvorāre parat, Perseus advēnit et mōnstrum necāvit.

PERSEUS AND ANDROMED.

LESSON LXVIII

THE GERUND

1. The Gerund is a **Verbal Noun.**

The following is its declension: —

Nom.	(lacking), supplied by present infinitive.	
Gen.	**vocand ī,** *of calling.*	
Dat.	**vocand ō,** *for calling*	(rare; chiefly after adjectives of Fitness).
Acc.	**vocand um,** *calling*	(after prepositions, **ad**, etc.).
Abl.	**vocand ō,** *by calling.*	

Difference between the Participle and the Gerund

2. The participle has been seen to be a verbal adjective: —

vir **vidēns** crēdit, a man *seeing* believes.

Here **vidēns** is a participle modifying **vir.**

videntis does not mean *of seeing;* **vidente** does not mean *by seeing.*

virī videntis = *of a man seeing.*
ā virō vidente = *by a man seeing.*

Here **videntis** and **vidente** are descriptive modifiers, not nouns.

videndī causā = *for the sake of seeing.*
videndō crēdimus = *we believe by seeing.*

Here **videndī** is the Gen. of the Gerund (a noun) governed by **causā**; **videndō** is the Abl. of the Gerund used as an Abl. of Means.

3. Compare **causā** and **ad** in the following: —

1. **vocandī causā**
2. **ad vocandum** } = *for the purpose of calling.*

causā governs the Gen. and stands after its case.
ad governs the Acc. and stands before.

4. The Infinitive supplies the place of the Nom. Gerund, as: —

vidēre est crēdere, { *seeing is believing.* / *to see is to believe.*

Formation of the Gerund

5. Notice the parallel between the types of the Present Participle and those of the Gerund: —

	1	2	3	4
Participle	**vocā ns**	**monē ns**	**regē ns** (**capiēns**)	**audiē ns**
Gerund	**voca ndī**	**mone ndī**	**rege ndī** (**capiendī**)	**audie ndī**
	-andī	**-endī**	**-endī** (**-iendī**)	**-iendī**

The Gerund is based upon the **Present Stem**; thus, **regendī** (**reg-**), not based upon **rēx-** or **rēct-**.

6. Deponents take their Gerund from the Active Conjugation.

EXERCISE

A. Form (1) *Pres. Participle*, (2) *Perf. Participle*, (3) *Gerund*, from **videō, nūntiō, creō, vincō, parō, mittō, gerō, faciō, mūniō, scrībō, dō, hortor, sequor, polliceor.**

B. Translate: —

1. Seen; (when) seeing; for the purpose of seeing; seeing (= to see).
2. (While) giving; given; by giving.
3. Giving is better than receiving.
4. (While) fortifying; having been fortified; for fortifying (*ad*).
5. Of writing; written; (while) writing.

6. By reporting; (when) reporting; having been reported.
7. Taken; (while) taking; by taking; for taking (*ad*).
8. Water is useful for drinking (*Dat.*).
9. Weather suitable for sailing (*ad*).
10. We learn by teaching.

LESSON LXIX

OBJECT OF THE GERUND

The Gerund may govern the same case as the Verb governs: —

senibus parcendō, *by sparing the old men.*
lūdōs videndī causā, *for the purpose of s. ing the games.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Pauperum miserendō.
2. Gallōs vincendī causā.
3. Ad amīcis persuādendum. (*What is the object of* **ad**?)
4. Nāvibus ūtendō (*Abl.*).
5. Ad urbem videndum.
6. Pācem petendī causā.

B. 1. By sending ambassadors.
2. By seeking peace.
3. For the purpose of seeing the soldiers.
4. For the purpose of gaining possession of the camp. (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*.
5. The place is suitable for pitching camp (*ad*).
6. By aiding (*subveniō*) the poor.
7. For the purpose of conquering these states (*vincō* and *superō*). (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*.
8. The art of writing letters.

PURPOSE

Examine the following modes of expressing Purpose: —

He came to see the city.

1. **Urbem vīsum vēnit** (*Supine; see page 152*).
2. **Ad urbem videndum vēnit.**
3. **Urbem videndī causā vēnit.**

The Infinitive is not used in good Latin prose to express Purpose. Other expressions for Purpose will be learnt under the Subjunctive Mood.

EXERCISE

Translate in three ways: —

1. Ambassadors came to seek peace.
2. They sent Caesar to conquer Gaul.
3. Many came to hear the speech.
4. They set out to get grain (*frūmentor, -ārī*).

Proverbs

1. *Post tenebrās lūx.*
2. *In vīnō vēritās.*
3. *Nē sūtor ūltrā crepidam.*
4. *Est modus in rēbus.*
5. *Ex nihilō nihil fit.*
6. *Labor omnia vincit.*
7. *Nōn omnem errōrem stultitiam oportet dīcere.*
8. *Experientia docet.*
9. *Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī.*
10. *Dulce est dēsipere in locō.*
11. *Hūmānum est errāre.*

LESSON LXX

THE GERUNDIVE

The Gerundive is a **Passive Verbal Adjective** denoting **Necessity, Fitness, Obligation.** Its form resembles that of the Gerund: —

vocandus, -a, -um, *such-as-ought-to-be-called.*

puer laudandus = *a boy deserving-to-be-praised.* / *that-ought-to-be-praised.* / *that-must-be- (has-to-be-) praised.*

epistola scribenda = *a letter that-has-to-be-written.*

Because it expresses an obligation, *i.e.* something that *must be done in the future,* the Gerundive is sometimes called a Future Passive Participle, but **puer laudandus** (*a boy who ought to be praised*), although implying that the act *is to be done* or *ought to be done* in the future, is not the passive of **puer laudātūrus** (*a boy who-is-about-to-, going-to-, likely-to-praise*). There is strictly no participle that means "*about-to-be-praised*" as a prediction of mere futurity.

Note the following variations in form: —

laudandus, -a, -um, *that-ought-to-be-praised,*
vincendus, -a, -um, *that-must-be-conquered,*
capiendus, -a, -um, *that-has-to-be-taken.*

Contrast the following: —

GERUND		GERUNDIVE		
		M.	F.	N.
Nom. lacking	*Nom.*	**vocandus**	**vocanda**	**vocandum**
Gen. **vocandī**	*Gen.*	**vocandī**	**vocandae**	**vocandī**
Dat. **vocandō**		etc.	etc.	etc.
Acc. **vocandum**				
Abl. **vocandō**				
like **bellum**			like **bonus**	

EXERCISE

A. Form *Perfect Participles* and *Gerundives* from **videō, mittō, nūntiō, gerō, moneō, regō, audiō, cognōscō, parō, petō.**

B. Translate: —

1. Sīgnum dandum.
2. Rēs nūntianda.
3. Cōpiae cōgendae.
4. Opus faciendum.

C. Translate: —

1. Things to-be-done (*gerō*).
2. A city to-be-taken; cities to-be-taken.
3. A town to-be-stormed (*expugnō*); walls to-be-stormed.
4. A bridge to-be-built.

Observe that the Passive Infinitives, gerī, capī, expugnārī, do not express obligation.

Periphrastic Passive Conjugation

1. **Urbs est capienda,** *the city is to-be-taken,* is called the Periphrastic Passive Conjugation, just as **urbem captūrus est** (*he intends to take*) is called the Periphrastic Active Conjugation. The following contains another example: —

Dīcit **urbem capiendam esse,** *He says that the city must-be-taken.*

Dative of the Agent

2. Usually the Agent with the Passive Voice is expressed by **ā, ab,** and the Ablative, as: —

Gallia ā Caesare victa est, *Gaul was conquered by Caesar.*

But **with the Gerundive the Agent is usually expressed by the Dative,** which is really a **Dative of Interest;** thus,

Gallia mihi vincenda est, *Gaul is to-be-conquered by me,*

really means

"To me (the person interested) Gaul is a country to-be-conquered."

3. Observe that the **Gerundive is Passive.** Hence, *We must praise the boy* is not *Laudandī puerum sumus*, but **Puer nōbīs laudandus est. Laudandī sumus** = *We are to be praised*, **not** *We are to praise.*

4. **The Gerundive of Deponent Verbs is Passive** in meaning: —

Mīlitēs hortandī sunt (hortor), *The soldiers are to be exhorted.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Pāx est nōbīs petenda.
2. Pāx ā nōbīs est petīta.
3. Gallia Caesarī erat vincenda.
4. Gallia ā Caesare victa erat.
5. Hīc liber mihi legendus erit.
6. "Dēlenda est Carthāgō," inquit Catō.
7. Classis nōbīs est aedificanda.
8. Classis ā Rōmānīs aedificāta est.
9. Māgnum bellum est tibi gerendum.
10. Mājus bellum ā tē est gestum.
11. Multae epistolae hodiē mihi sunt scrībendae.
12. Paucae epistolae herī ā mē scrīptae sunt.
13. Dīxit Galliam sibi vincendam esse.
14. Classem sibi aedificandam esse arbitrātī sunt.

B. 1. A letter is to be written by me.
2. A letter has been written by me.
3. The city had been taken by him.
4. The city was to-be-taken by him.
5. Caesar must lead an army; had to lead many armies (*were to-be-led*).
6. We must send hostages.

7. You will have to read the letter (*the letter will be to-be-read*).
8. Hostages were sent by them.
9. The letter will have been read by you.
10. They saw that they must seek peace.
11. I must conquer the Gauls.
12. Caesar will have to build a bridge.
13. The Gauls have been conquered by me.
14. A bridge was built by him.
15. He knew that he had to conquer the Gauls.
16. They knew that a bridge had been built by him.

Similar sentences may be formed with: —

aciem īnstruō	**castra pōnō**
cōpiās cōgō	**rem nūntiō**

LESSON LXXI

THE GERUNDIVE SUBSTITUTED FOR THE GERUND

While the Gerundive properly denotes obligation, there is a common use of it, in which this meaning seems to be obscured or weakened.

There are two ways of translating the following: —

"I shall win glory by taking the city":

(1) Laudem **urbem capiendō** (*Gerund*) parābō.
(2) Laudem **urbe capiendā** (*Gerundive*) parābō.

In (1) **capiendō** = "*by taking*" and **urbem** is the object of the Gerund: "I shall win glory *by taking* (*the city*)."

In (2) the meaning is "I shall win glory *by means of the city* (*but it is one*) *that-must-be-taken*."

In the one case the glory is won *by the act of taking*, in the other *by the thing taken*.

Compare : —

(1) **Lēgāti ad pācem petendum vēnērunt.**

petendum, Gerund (*Acc.*) object of **ad**, and **pācem** the object of the Gerund.

(2) **Lēgāti ad pācem petendam vēnērunt.**

pācem the object of **ad**, and **petendam** the Gerundive — a modifier agreeing with **pācem**.

In (1) they came *for seeking —— peace.*
(Emphasis falling on the act.)

In (2) they came *for peace —— viewed as something to be sought.*
(Emphasis falling on the thing.)

1. This substitution of the Gerundive for the Gerund is possible only where the Verb **governs the Accusative.**

2. In such cases the **Gerundive** is nearly always the **preferred construction.**

Instead of the Gerund :		use the Gerundive :	
Gen.	**pācem petendī,**	**pācis petendae,**	*of seeking peace.*
Dat.	**pācem petendō,**	**pāci petendae,**	*for seeking peace.*
Acc.	**ad pācem petendum,**	**ad pācem petendam,**	*for seeking peace.*
Abl.	**pācem petendō,**	**pāce petendā,**	*by seeking peace.*

Summary

Two uses of the Gerundive : —

1. Denoting Obligation, Necessity, etc. —

Pāx mihi est petenda.

(Periphrastic Passive Conjugation, accompanied by the Dative of the Agent.)

2. Substituted for the Gerund —

Ad pācem petendam.

(The idea of obligation being weakened; possible only with Transitive Verbs.)

Gerund	Gerundive
1. **A Verbal Noun.**	1. **A Verbal Adjective.**
2. **Active.**	2. **Passive.**
3. **Governs a Case.**	3. **Agrees with a Noun.**

The Gerundive is usually preferred.

But the Gerund is used in the following cases: —

1. When the Gerund is in the Genitive Case and its Object is a *neuter* pronoun or adjective used as a noun, as **aliquid faciendī, cupiditās plūra habendī.**

2. When the verb is Intransitive (*i.e.* does not govern the Acc.), as **victīs parcendō** (not *victīs parcendīs*), **frūmentandī causā.**

But **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** which governed the Acc. in old Latin, regularly take the Gerundive construction, as **spēs potiundōrum castrōrum.**

3. With **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,** the Gerund, qualified by the possessive adj., is used rather than (*a*) the Gerund governing the Acc., or (*b*) the Gerundive agreeing in gender and number, as **suī pūrgandī causā** (not **sē pūrgandī** or **suī pūrgandōrum**), *for the purpose of clearing themselves = for the sake of their own clearing.*

This is sometimes explained as a Gerundive, agreeing with **meī,** etc., a neuter substantive = *of my (being)*, etc.

4. There is a decided tendency to regard euphony by avoiding the Genitive Plural of the Gerundive and noun, especially when the noun ends in **-ōrum** or **-ārum**, as **Gallōs vincendī causā,** rather than **Gallōrum vincendōrum causā.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Gallī in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs sunt.
2. Ea quae cognōvī mihi sunt dissimulanda.
3. Māgna pars equitātūs trāns flūmen frūmentandī causā missa est.

4. Lēgātī mihi nōn audiendī sunt.
5. Tempus Gallīs ad cōnsilia capienda nōn dandum est.
6. Spatium eīs ad arma capienda nōn dedit.
7. Epistolīs scrībendīs exercēmur.
8. Hominēs poētīs legendīs ērudiuntur.
9. Māgnam nāvium cōpiam ad mīlitēs trānsportandōs pollicēbantur.
10. Summa difficultās erat pontis faciendī.

(*In each of the following, give the preferred construction.*)

B. 1. He sent Volusēnus for the purpose of ascertaining these things. *Use* (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*, (3) *the Supine.*
2. Ambassadors came to seek peace. *Avoid the Infin. Use* (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*, (3) *the Supine.*
3. They came to see the city (*translate in three ways*).
4. Caesar delays for the purpose of preparing ships.
5. By persuading his friends; by advising his friends.
6. For the purpose of aiding his friends (*ad*). (1) *veniō* (*Dat.*); (2) *adjuvō* (*Acc.*).
7. For the purpose of hearing; of complaining.
8. By ordering the soldiers. (1) *jubeō*; (2) *imperō.*

Proverbs

1. *Cito dare est bis dare.*
2. *Ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem.*
3. *Festīnā lentē.*
4. *Vigilantibus nōn dormientibus servit lēx.*
5. *Suus cuīque mōs.*
6. *Facilis dēscēnsus Avernō.*
7. *Victrīx fortūnae sapientia.*
8. *Dum spīrō, spērō.*
9. *Dum vītant stultī vitia, in contrāria currunt.*
10. *Necessitās nōn habet lēgem.*
11. *Cūrandum est ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō.*

READING LESSON

Lŏbŏ Rēx Currumpae

(Latinized from the story of Ernest Thompson Seton in "Wild Animals I Have Known," by kind permission of the author.)

In Novā Mexicōne abhinc haud multīs annīs lupus ferōcissimus et sagācissimus habitābat. Ingentī corporis māgnitūdine fuit et gregem sibi similium sed minus sagācium dūcēbat. Hī semper eī pārēbant et ad ējus ululātūs undique ex silvīs montibusque concurrēbant.

Māgna in agrīs armenta, multī pāstōrēs armentōrum hunc rēgem lupōrum pertimēscēbant. Noctū enim dē montibus dēscendēbat et māne bovēs pinguissimī dēsīderābantur. Venēnō illum necāre aut īnsidiīs caecīs et accūrātissimē parātīs excipere frūstrā diū cōnātī sunt.

Adulēscēns tandem, strēnuus ac fortissimus, ex Canadā vēnit. Fāmā hūjus lupī acceptā, praemiīs adductus, ad eum locum multa mīllia passuum per cīvitātēs multās ad illum excipiendum iter fēcerat.

Omnia expertus, quae cēterīs nōta erant, novam tandem rem animadvertit. Lupa enim alba, quae numquam anteā cōnspecta erat, jam cum grege currēbat. Nōn tamen rēgī tam dīligenter quam cēterī obtemperābat illa. Nam īnsidiās nōn pertimēscēbat, propiusque, rēge invītō, appropinquāre audēbat. Quod ubi animadvertit adulēscēns, cōnsilium novum cēpit. Complūribus pedicīs dispositīs, ēventum exspectābat. Mox lupa, quam Blancam pāstōrēs jam appellāverant, excepta est.

Corpore domum lātō, adventum amātōris exspectābat. Ille vērō procul remanēns ululātūs horrendōs ad sīdera tollēbat neque aedificiīs appropinquāre volēbat. Deinde adulēscēns, ūnō pede lupae mortuae excīsō, in campīs multīs locīs terram sīcut vēstīgiīs tetigit. Rēx uxōrem appetēns, vēstīgia ista simulāta secūtus, tandem exceptus atque vinctus domum adlātus est.

Cibum vērō sūmere nōlēbat. Frāctī animī; diūtius vīvere, uxōre mortuā, jam molestissimum erat. Ita uxōrem, incautiōrem quidem sed tamen cārissimam, lūgēns, Lōbō rēx Currumpae mortuus est.

Review Word List

1. Sciō, intellegō, arbitror, exīstimō, putō, crēdō, videō, audiō, cognōscō, audeō, nūntiō, dīcō, nārrō, sentiō, loquor, certiōrem faciō.

2. Vērum est, manifestum est, polliceor, spērō, suscipiō, jūrō, juvō, subveniō.

3. Cōnficiō, servō, serviō, oppugnō, expugnō, adorior, impetum faciō, aciem īnstruō, cōpiās cōgō, hōc tē facere cōgō.

4. Think (3), believe, see, understand, perceive, feel, am aware, learn (= ascertain), learn (a lesson), teach, inform, tell, say, announce, dare, hear, speak.

5. Hope, promise, undertake, it is true, swear, aid, finish, attack (2), take by storm, make an attack upon, collect, compel, form line.

A Well-balanced Mind

Aequam mementō rēbus in arduīs
Servāre mentem, nōn secus in bonīs
Ab īnsolentī temperātam
Laetitiā, moritūre Dellī.

Horace, *Odes* II, 3.

A Roman War Galley

LESSON LXXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The Indicative is the Mood of **Fact.**

The Subjunctive is the Mood of **Conceived Possibility.**

The uses of the Subjunctive in Latin are many and varied, and it is impossible to give any fixed translation for the Subjunctive forms.

Latin employs the Subjunctive in many places where English would have the Indicative. All these uses can be learnt only after careful study and considerable experience in reading the language.

Two very common uses, in which English and Latin agree in employing the Subjunctive, are as follows: —

1. A Wish.
2. A Purpose.

Wish: —

1. **Rēx diū vivat,** { *Long live the King.* / *May the King live long.*

Purpose: —

2. **Edimus ut vivāmus,** { *We eat that we may live.* / *We eat to live.*

3. **Nē obliviscāmur,** *Lest we forget.*

Compare the Subjunctive forms, **vivat, vivāmus, obliviscāmur,** with the Indicative forms expressing Fact: —

vivit, *he lives;* **vivimus,** *we live;* **obliviscimur,** *we forget.*

Sum, *I am*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Tense	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**sim,** sīs, sit	sīmus, sītis, sint
Imperf.	**essem,** essēs, esset	essēmus, essētis, essent
Perf.	**fu-erim,** fu-eris, fu-erit	fu-erimus, fu-eritis, fu-erint
Pluperf.	**fu-issem,** fu-issēs, fu-isset	fu-issēmus, fu-issētis, fu-issent

1. Notice the same **personal endings** as in the Indicative: **-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt.**

2. Observe that there are only four tenses in the Subjunctive, — the Future and Future Perfect not being represented.

3. A Periphrastic Future Subjunctive is used: —

futūrus sim; **futūrus essem.**

4. Observe that the Imperfect Subjunctive can be obtained by adding **-m**, etc., to the Pres. Inf. **esse**. This applies to all verbs.

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	**est,**	*he is.*	**ut sit,**	*in order that he* **may** *be.*
Imperf.	**erat,**	*he was.*	**ut esset,**	*in order that he* **might** *be.*
Perf.	**fuit,**	*he has been.*	**utinam fuerit,**	*O that he* **may have** *been.*
Pluperf.	**fuerat,**	*he had been.*	**utinam fuisset,**	*O that he had been.*
			fuisset,	*he* **would have** *been.*
			si fuisset,	*if he had been.*

Some Common Uses of the Subjunctive

1. **Ut**, *in order that;*
Nē, *lest, in order that not,* } take a **Subjunctive of Purpose.**

Quis, after **nē**, = *any.*

2. **Cum**, *since,* in all tenses takes the Subjunctive of Cause (**Causal Subjunctive**).

This corresponds to the Eng. Indicative. Compare **quod**, *because,* with the Indicative.

3. **Cum**, *when,* (*a*) in the **Pres.**, **Fut.**, and **Perf.** (*Primary Tenses*) takes the **Indicative**;

(*b*) in the **Imperf.** and **Pluperf.** (*Historical Tenses*) usually takes the **Subjunctive.**

EXERCISE

A. 1. Sunt; ut sint.
2. Nōn sumus; cum nōn sīmus.
3. Erat; ut esset.
4. Nōn erant; nē essētis.
5. Nōn fuit.
6. Cum nōn fueris.
7. Eram; cum essem.
8. Cum fuisset.
9. Beātus sīs (*a wish*).
10. Nē quis sit; nē quis esset.

B. 1. May she be happy.
2. May they be happy.
3. They are not wise.
4. Lest thou be foolish.
5. In order that he might be king.
6. Since we are.
7. When you had been.
8. Since thou art.
9. When he shall be; when he was (*Impf.*); when thou hadst been.
10. You (*plur.*) are not; in order that you may not be.

Arietēs, turrēs, vīneae ad mūrum aguntur.

LESSON LXXIII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

	Vocō	Moneō	Regō	Audiō
Pres.	voc em ēs et ēmus ētis ent	mon eam eās eat eāmus eātis eant	reg am ās at āmus ātis ant	aud iam iās iat iāmus iātis iant
Impf.	voc ārem ārēs āret ārēmus ārētis ārent	mon ērem ērēs ēret ērēmus ērētis ērent	reg erem erēs eret erēmus erētis erent	aud īrem īrēs īret īrēmus īrētis īrent
Perf.	vocāv erim eris erit erimus eritis erint	monu erim eris erit erimus eritis erint	rēx erim eris erit erimus eritis erint	audīv erim eris erit erimus eritis erint
Plupf.	vocāv issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent	monu issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent	rēx issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent	audīv issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent

Capiō

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Present	**capiam**, -iās, -iat, -iāmus, -iātis, -iant.
Imperfect	**caperem**, caperēs, etc.
Perfect	**cēp-erim**, etc.
Pluperfect	**cēp-issem**, etc.

Similarly: —

	dō (dăre)	**videō (ēre)**	**vincō (ĕre)**	**veniō (īre)**
Present	dem	videam	vincam	veniam
Imperfect	dărem	vidērem	vincerem	venīrem
Perfect	dederim	vīderim	vīcerim	vēnerim
Pluperfect	dedissem	vīdissem	vīcissem	vēnissem

Notice the difference between the following: —

Pres. Subj. **regam, -ās, -at**, etc.
Fut. Indic. **regam, -ēs, -et**, etc.

An Exhortation or Command in the 1st or 3d Person (Eng. *let us, let him*) is expressed in Latin by the Present Subjunctive, as: —

ōrēmus, *let us pray.*
jūstitia fiat, *let justice be done.*

EXERCISE

A. Outline the Subjunctive Active, 1. sing., of the following verbs: —

nūntiō, respondeō, mittō, faciō, mūniō, pāreō, parō, parcō, cognōscō.

B. Translate: —

1. Ut vocet, ut moneās, ut vincat, ut audiāmus.
2. Cum vocās; cum vocēs; cum sunt; cum sint.
3. Vocābāmus; cum vocārēmus.
4. Cum vocāvit; cum vocāverit.

5. Cum vēnisset, ut venīret, ut veniātis.
6. Vincit, vincēs, cum vincātis, ut vincat, ut vincerēmus, cum vinceret, ut vinceret, ut vincās.
7. Cum videant, ut vidērent, cum vīdissent.
8. Ut mittant; nē mitterent, cum mīsissent, mittent.
9. Utinam veniās; utinam venīrētis; utinam vēnissēmus.
10. Nē vocēs; nōn vocās; cum pāreāmus; ut capiās; cum cēperis.
11. Faciet; faciat; veniēmus; veniāmus.
12. Vidēbunt, vident, cum videant, ut vocent.
13. Dēmus (*exhortation*); dent (*command*); utinam det; utinam dedisset; ut daret.
14. Ut faciās; ut facerēs; ut veniāmus; nē venīrēmus.
15. Ut sint; nē essent; ut cognōscat; nē quis cognōsceret.

C. Translate:—

1. In order that they may call, may see, may send, may come.
2. In order that we might call, might see, might send, might come.
3. Since he has called, has seen, has sent, has come.
4. When he had called, had seen, had sent, had come.
5. Let us not (*nē*) answer, send, do, give; we do not send, etc.
6. I shall tell him (= *to him*) when I see him (say *shall see*).
7. I told him when I saw (*Perf.*) him, — when he had come.
8. They saw him when he was coming.
9. We shall see him when he comes (say *shall have come*).

10. When he is; since he is; when they are; since they are.
11. He was standing; when he was standing.
12. On coming to Rome (*when, etc.*), he learnt these things.
13. On learning this (*which when he had learnt*), he sent soldiers.
14. Lest any one might order, conquer; may order, conquer.
15. In order that they may fight, conquer, see, take, do, give.
16. In order that you (*plur.*) might fight, conquer, see, take, do, give.
17. He sends, will send; let him send, send thou.
18. He sees, will see; let him see, see ye.

LESSON LXXIV

EQUIVALENTS FOR THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

Observe the following equivalents:—

1. *Having sent soldiers, they conquered Gaul.*

   (1) **Mīlitibus missīs, Galliam vīcērunt.**
   (2) **Cum mīlitēs mīsissent, Galliam vīcērunt.**
   (3) **Postquam (ubi) mīlitēs mīsērunt, Galliam vīcērunt.**

In such cases:—

Cum takes the *Pluperf. Subjunctive.*
Postquam (*after*), **ubi** (*when*), the *Perfect Indicative.*

2. *Having said these things, he,* etc.

   (1) **His** (**rēbus**) **dictīs**, etc.
   (2) **Cum haec dīxisset.**
   (3) **Ubi** (**postquam**) **haec dīxit.**
   (4) **Haec locūtus** (**loquor**, Deponent).

3. *Having arrived at the river, they,* etc.

(**Veniō**, Intransitive Verb, no *Perf. Participle.*)

(1) **Cum ad flūmen vēnissent.**
(2) **Postquam (ubī) ad flūmen vēnērunt.**

EXERCISE

Translate in all possible ways: —

1. On coming to camp, they learnt, etc.
2. After setting out, they saw, etc.
3. Having sent ambassadors, they sought peace.
4. Having said these things, they departed.
5. Having seen the city, they returned home.
6. On learning this, he sent soldiers.
7. Having exhorted the soldiers, he gave the signal.

Man's Presumption

Nīl mortālibus arduī est;
Caelum ipsum petimus stultitiā neque
Per nostrum patimur scelus
Īrācunda Jovem pōnere fulmina.

HORACE, *Odes* I, 3.

Cincinnatus, 458 B.C.

Aequī ōlim tōtum exercitum Rōmānum circumventum cōnsulemque tenēbat. Quod cum Rōmam renūntiātum esset, T. Quīnctius Cincinnātus omnium cōnsēnsū dictātor est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī, trāns Tiberim tunc quattuor jūgerūm colēbat agrum. Ad quem missī lēgātī nūdum eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte datā redditāque Quīnctius togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre uxōrem jussit, ut senātūs mandāta togātus audīret.

Postquam, abstersō pulvere ac sūdōre, togā indūtus prōcessit, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs cōnsalūtant. Quīnctius Rōmam vēnit; victōs hostēs sub jugum mīsit.

LESSON LXXV

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PASSIVE VOICE

	Vocō	Moneō	Regō	Audiō
Pres.	voc er ēris (re) ētur ēmur ēminī entur	mon ear eāris (re) eātur eāmur eāminī eantur	reg ar āris (re) ātur āmur āminī antur	aud iar iāris (re) iātur iāmur iāminī iantur
Impf.	voc ārer ārēris (re) ārētur ārēmur ārēminī ārentur	mon ērer ērēris (re) ērētur ērēmur ērēminī ērentur	reg erer erēris (re) erētur erēmur erēminī erentur	aud īrer īrēris (re) īrētur īrēmur īrēminī īrentur
Perf.	vocātus sim sīs sit vocātī sīmus sītis sint	monitus sim sīs sit monitī sīmus sītis sint	rēctus sim sīs sit rēctī sīmus sītis sint	audītus sim sīs sit audītī sīmus sītis sint
Plupf.	vocātus essem essēs esset vocātī essēmus essētis essent	monitus essem essēs esset monitī essēmus essētis essent	rēctus essem essēs esset rēctī essēmus essētis essent	audītus essem essēs esset audītī essēmus essētis essent

Capiō

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Present	**capiar**, -iāris, -iātur, -iāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
Imperfect	**caperer**, caperēris, etc.
Perfect	**captus sim**, etc.
Pluperfect	**captus essem**, etc.

DEPONENT VERBS

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

	I	II	III	IV
Present	cōner, **-ēris**	verear, **-ēāris**	sequar, **-āris**	potiar, **-iāris**
Imperf.	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perfect	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Pluperf.	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

Notice the Active endings, **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**; Passive endings, **-r**, **-ris** (**-re**), **-tur**, **-mur**, **-minī**, **-ntur**.

EXERCISE

A. 1. *Outline the Subjunctive Passive,* 1. *sing., of the following verbs:* —

amō, **teneō**, **mittō**, **cōnspiciō**, **videō**, **vinc** **sepeliō**.

2. *The same in the* 2. *sing.*

3. *Outline the Subjunctive,* 1. *sing., of the following Deponents:* —

proelior, **-ārī**; **polliceor**, **-ērī**; **proficīscor**, **-ī**; **morior**, **-ī**; **moror**, **-ārī**; **adorior**, **-īrī**; **patior**, **-ī**; **prōgredior**, **-ī**.

4. *The same in the* 2. *sing. and in the* 3. *plur.*

B. 1. Vocāris; ut vocēris; vidēris; ut videāris; mitteris; mittēris; ut mittāris.

2. Nōn sequitur; sequētur; nē sequātur.

3. Sequentur; ut sequantur; sequuntur.
4. Verentur; ut vereantur; verēbuntur.
5. Cum polliceantur; quod pollicentur.
6. Nē mittantur; nōn mittuntur; nōn mittentur.
7. Ut videātur; nē quis vidērētur; nōn vidēbātur.
8. Cum pollicitī sint; cum pollicitī sunt; cum pollicitī essent.
9. Ut cōnārēmur; ut vidērēminī; ut paterēris; nē adorīrentur.
10. Tria mīllia passuum prōgressī, hostēs vīdērunt. (Give two equivalents for *prōgressī*.)

C. 1. In order that he may be called, advised, ruled, heard.
2. In order that they might not be prepared, seen, sent, taken.
3. Since he attempts, fears, follows, takes possession.
4. When thou wert attempting, promising, setting out, dying, attacking, suffering.
5. When they had set out; since they have been seen.
6. He seems; since he seems; lest he might seem.
7. He conquers, is not being conquered; may he conquer; may he not be conquered (**nōn** of *fact*; **nē** of a *wish* or *purpose*).
8. Let us not follow; we shall not follow; because we do not follow (*quod*); since they have not followed (*cum*).
9. *Translate in three ways:* —

(*a*) Having attacked the camp, they were repulsed. (1) Perf. part., (2) **ubi**, (3) **cum**. Use **adorior**.

(*b*) Having repulsed the enemy, Caesar moves camp.

In two ways: —

(*c*) Having arrived there, they pitched camp.

LESSON LXXVI

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Adverbial clauses of Purpose are technically called **Final Clauses** (fīnis, *end*), because they denote the *end in view*.

The Infinitive is not used in good Latin prose to express Purpose.

1. Three of the most common modes of expressing Purpose are: —

1. **Ut** (negative **nē**) with the Subjunctive.
2. The Accusative Supine (only after Verbs of Motion).
3. **Ad** or **causā** with the Gerund or Gerundive.

2. *In order that not* (purpose) is never **ut nōn**, but **nē** (*lest*).

In order that no one is never **ut nēmō**, but **nē quis** (*lest any one*.

In order that nothing is never **ut nihil**, but **nē quid** (*lest anything*).

3. Note the following, with special reference to the tense of **videat** and **vidēret**: —

He has come to see the city: —

1. **Vēnit ut urbem videat** (that he *may* see).
2. **Vēnit urbem vīsum.**
3. **Vēnit ad urbem videndam** (**urbis videndae causā**).

He came to see the city: —

Vēnit ut urbem vidēret (that he *might* see).

Sequence of Tenses

The examples just preceding suggest a certain **correspondence between the tense of the subordinate clause and that of the principal clause.** This is called Sequence, and is observed in English as well as in Latin.

Primary Sequence

(Relating to the realm of possibility — the Present or the Future.)

Pres. Perf.	*I have come*	that I *may* see (**ut videam**). **Present Subjunctive of Purpose**
Pres.	*I come (am coming)*	
Fut.	*I shall come*	
Fut. Perf.	*I shall have come*	

Historical (or Secondary) Sequence

(Relating to the realm of historical (or past) occurrence.)

Hist. Perf.	*I came (once)*	that I *might* see (**ut vidērem.** **Imperfect Subjunctive of Purpose**
Imperf.	*I was coming, came (repeatedly)*	
Pluperf.	*I had come*	

NOTE. — The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are seldom required in Purpose Clauses: Present, *may;* Imperfect, *might.*

Rule for Sequence. — A Primary Tense governs a Primary Tense; an Historical governs an Historical.

In actual practice, the Perfect seldom acts as a Primary Tense, even where the Eng. seems to require *have.* Still, where the meaning plainly refers to the present, the above rule holds.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Caesarem Rōmānī mīsērunt ut Galliam vinceret.
2. Exercitum suum dūxit Gallōs victum.
3. In fīnēs Gallōrum vēnit ad bellum gerendum (*substitute* causā).
4. Vēnimus ut pācem petāmus, Caesar (*substitute* (1) **ad**, (2) the Supine, (3) **causā**).
5. Ut vincāmus pugnābimus.
6. Ut videāmus vēnīmus.

7. Adsumus ut obsidēs polliceāmur.
8. Ut obsidēs pollicērēmur ā nostrīs missī sumus.
9. Hāc viā vēnimus nē quis nōs vidēret.
10. Hōc cūrāvit Caesar nē cuī mīlitēs nocērent.

B. 1. We have come to see, not to be seen.
2. They came not to hear, but to be heard.
3. We shall send forces to conquer them (1) **ut**, (2) **ad**, (3) Supine.
4. They said they had been sent to seek peace.
5. He learnt that they had come to promise.
6. We come to school that we may learn (*discō*).
7. Is it true that we are learning? (Does *that* here mean *in order that?*)
8. They said they would fight to conquer.
9. They hoped to conquer or die.
10. They promised to give hostages; they came to give; it is better to give than to receive.
11. He took care that no one should see them coming.
12. He will take care that no one sees; that they see no one; that they hurt no one; that they forget no one.
13. He said that no one would see them.

The Golden Mean

Rēctius vīvēs, Licinī, neque altum
Semper urgendō neque, dum procellās
Cautus horrēscis, nimium premendō
Lītus inīquum.

Saepius ventīs agitātur ingēns
Pīnus et celsae graviōre cāsū
Dēcidunt turrēs feriuntque summōs
Fulgura montēs.

HORACE, *Odes* II, 10.

LESSON LXXVII

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS

"*How large is the island?*" is a **Direct Question.**

In the sentence: "He could not find out *how large the island was*," the subordinate noun clause "*how large*," etc., is a **Dependent** or **Indirect Question.**

RULE. — **The verb of a Dependent Question in Latin is in the Subjunctive Mood.**

Dependent Questions are governed by such words as *ask*, *find out*, *tell*, *know*, etc.

DIRECT QUESTION	DEPENDENT (OR INDIRECT) QUESTIONS
Quanta **est** Insula? *How large* **is** *the island?*	1. Quaerit quanta **sit** Insula. *He inquires how large the island* **is.** 2. Quaesīvit quanta **esset** Insula. *He inquired how large the island* **was.**

Sequence of Tenses

As seen in the foregoing examples, the same correspondence in tense between the dependent question and the governing clause exists in Latin as in English: *is* (after *inquires*) = **sit**; *was* (after *inquired*) = **esset.**

Rogō unde **veniās**, *I ask whence you come.*
Rogāvī unde **venīrēs**, *I asked whence you were coming.*
Unde **vēnistis**? *Whence have you come?*
Rogāvī unde **vēnissent**, *I asked whence they had come.*
Quid **faciēs**? *What will you do?*
Rogō quid **factūrus sīs**, *I ask what you will do.*

EXERCISE

1. Where is Britain? He asks where Britain is.
2. They asked where Britain was.
3. Why did you not send hostages?
4. He asked why they had not sent hostages.
5. How large are the harbors?
6. He did not ascertain how large the harbors were.
7. He learnt that they were so large.
8. What sort of men inhabit the island?
9. Tell me what sort of men inhabit it.
10. They told him what sort of men inhabited it.
11. How many ships have they?
12. He inquired how many ships they had.
13. He learnt they had not many, — so many.
14. Who was sent? I ask who was sent. I asked who had been sent.
15. What have you learnt? Tell me what you have learnt. He heard what they had learnt. He heard that they had learnt many things. He heard what (= that which) they said.

Proserpina

Prōserpina, Cereris fīlia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in agrīs flōrēs carpēbat, serta nectēbat ludēbatque cum comitibus. Subitō terrā concussā[1] Plūtō, Īnferōrum deus, cūjus currum equī ātrī vehēbant, ē terrā ēmersit. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit ut uxor sua et Īnferōrum rēgīna esset[2]; clāmōrem puellae compressit. Māter eum ignōrāret[2] ubi fīlia esset,[2] tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōnspicit, audīvit quis[3] fīliam abdūxisset.[2] Itaque statim iter ad Jovem flexit et precibus animō ējus persuāsit, ut fīlia a Plūtōne ēmitterētur. Prōserpinae permissum est ut per partem annī apud mātrem per partem alteram apud Īnferōs esset.

[1] *Concutiō.* [2] Why subj.? [3] What difference between *quis* and *quī*?

PLUTO AND PROSERPINA

LESSON LXXVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

possum, posse, potu[illegible], *I can.*
volō, velle, [illegible] *am willing.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *I am unwilling.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *I prefer.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *I bear, carry.*
***Passive*, feror, ferrī, lātus sum.**
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *I go.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, (1) *be made*, (2) *be done*, (3) *become*.
(***Passive of* faciō, *do, make.***)

PRESENT INDICATIVE

possum	volō	ferō	eō	fīō
potes	vīs	fers	īs	fīs
potest	vult	fert	it	fit
possumus	volumus	ferimus	īmus	fīmus
potestis	vultis	fertis	ītis	fītis
possunt	volunt	ferunt	eunt	fīunt

mālō	mālumus	nōlō	nōlumus
māvis	māvultis	nōn vīs	nōn vultis
māvult	mālunt	nōn vult	nōlunt

mālō = mā (*more*) + volō **nōlō = nōn volō**

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

possim	velim	feram	eam	fiam
possīs	velīs	ferās	eās	fiās
possit	velit	ferat	eat	fiat
possīmus	velīmus	ferāmus	eāmus	fiāmus
possītis	velītis	ferātis	eātis	fiātis
possint	velint	ferant	eant	fiant

mālim, -īs, -it, etc. nōlim, -īs, -it, etc.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Potest; ut possit; nōn possunt; nē possint.
2. Vult; cum velit; cum volunt; cum nōlint.
3. Omnia fert; hōc ferāmus (*exhortation*); fers; potes.
4. Dīcit sē velle; id ferre nōlumus; īre potes.
5. Tēcum haec ferre quam (*rather than*) cum eō īre māvult.
6. Nē eat; cum haec fierī possint.
7. Cicerō cōnsul fit; imperātor fierī nōn potest.

B. 1. He can; he wishes; he bears; he goes; it is done.
2. They go; they bear; they wish; they cannot; these things are done.
3. Since he cannot; let them not go; lest it be done; since he wishes.
4. He is unwilling; he prefers to go with you (*pl.*); they do not wish; they prefer; we prefer.
5. He learnt that they had not been able.
6. They said they could not.
7. They go; lest they go; since they are unwilling.
8. Caesar becomes leader; he does not wish to become king.

LESSON LXXIX

Possum, posse, potuī, *I am able, I can*

(**pot-**, a stem = *able*, and **sum**, *I am*)

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum, potes, potest, etc.	possim, -sīs, -sit, etc.
Imperf.	poteram	possem, -ēs, -et, etc.
Fut.	poterō	
Perf.	potuī	potuerim
Pluperf.	potueram	potuissem
Fut. Perf.	potuerō	

The perfect stem **potu-** is said to be from an old verb **potēō**.

INFINITIVES

Pres. posse *Perf.* potuisse *Fut.* *none*

The participial form *potēns* is used as an adjective = *powerful*.

PREPOSITIONAL COMPOUNDS OF SUM

absum, abesse, abfuī, *am absent, am distant.*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, *am present, am close at hand.*
dēsum, dē-esse, dēfuī, *am lacking.*

Similarly: —

intersum, *take part in;* **obsum**, *am hurtful to;* **praesum**, *am at the head of* (*pres. part.*, praesēns, *present*), **supersum**, *am left over, survive.*

Observe **prōsum, prōd-esse, prōfuī**, *am serviceable to.*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	prō-sum	prō-sumus	prō-sim, etc.
	prōd-es	prōd-estis	prō-sīs
	prōd-est	prō-sunt	prō-sit
Imperf.	prōd-eram		prōd-essem
Fut.	prōd-erō		
Perf.	prō-fuī		prō-fuerim
Plup.	prō-fueram		prō-fuissem
Fut. Perf.	prō-fuerō		

INFINITIVES

Pres.	prōd-esse
Perf.	prō-fuisse
Fut.	prō-futūrus esse

Observe prōd- *before a vowel.*

Rule of Syntax. — Prepositional Compounds of **sum** usually govern the **Dative** case.

Absum usually takes **a, ab** with the Ablative.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Nōn potest īre.
2. Dīcit sē nōn posse.
3. Poterat, potuerat.
4. Poterit, potuerit.
5. Poterunt, potuērunt, potuerint.
6. Ut possīmus; nē possent.
7. Cognōvit nāvēs cursum tenēre nōn potuisse.
8. Abest, adsunt; prae-erat exercituī.
9. Prōderit amīcīs.
10. Potesne hōc facere?
11. Mihi māximē prōdes.

B. 1. They cannot come.
2. Since they are not able.
3. He was able, he will be able, he had been able, he will have been able.
4. They will be able, they will have been able, they have not been able.
5. In order that we might be able.
6. He believed that they could.
7. Tell me who can.
8. Thou canst not; lest thou be able.
9. You (*pl.*) can; you (*pl.*) are serviceable.
10. We shall be able; we used to be able.

LESSON LXXX

VOLŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

volō, velle, voluī, *wish*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *am unwilling.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	volō, vīs, vult, etc.	velim, velīs, velit, etc.
Imperf.	volēbam	vellem
Fut.	volam, -ēs, -et, etc.	
Perf.	voluī	voluerim
Pluperf.	volueram	voluissem
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	

	Infinitives	Participle
Pres.	velle	volēns
Perf.	voluisse	

Indicative		Subjunctive	
nōlō	mālō	nōlim	mālim
nōlēbam	mālēbam	nōllem	māllem
nōlam	mālam		
nōluī	māluī	nōluerim	māluerim
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Imperative			Infinitives	
Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte	*Pres.* nōlle	mālle
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte	*Perf.* nōluisse	māluisse
	nōlītō	nōluntō		

Participle

Pres. nōlēns

Volō and mālō have no imperatives.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Vīsne? nōn vīs, māvult.
2. Dīxit sē hōc facere mālle quam illud.
3. Veniet cum volet.
4. Rogō cūr nōlīs mihi prōdesse.
5. Nōnne eum vōs vidēre vultis?
6. Eōs arbitror voluisse.
7. Nōlī, amīce, meī oblīvīscī.
8. Nōn proficīscētur, cum nōlit perīculum facere.
9. Cūr nōn vult? 10. Quid vīs?
11. Nesciō quid velīs.

B. 1. Does he wish? He will be unwilling.
2. I believe that you wish.
3. I will show you what I wish.
4. He showed them what he wished.
5. They would rather go than stay (*wish more to go than to stay*).
6. He wished (continuously); he wished (momentarily).
7. You do not wish, do you?
8. Do not think, friends, that I intend to come.

Roman Names

Every free-born Roman had three names: *praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen*, as: —

Marcus Tullius Cicerō.
Cāius (Gāius) Jūlius Caesar.

The *praenōmen* distinguished one member of the *familia* ('household') from another, as Eng. John, James, etc. The *nōmen* distinguished one *gēns*, or clan, from another; the *cognōmen*, one *familia* from another.

The *praenōmen* was usually abbreviated thus: — A. = Aulus; L. = Lūcius; C. = Cāius; M. = Marcus; Q. = Quīntus; T. = Titus; P. = Pūblius.

LESSON LXXXI

FERŌ

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry*

Ferō contracts by omitting a short **e** or **i** between

(1) **r** and **r**, **ferre** = ferĕre.
(2) **r** and **s**, **fers** = ferĭs.
(3) **r** and **t**, **fert** = ferĭt.

ACTIVE

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert, etc.	feram, -ās, -at, etc.
Imperf.	ferēbam	ferrem
Fut.	feram, -ēs, -et, etc.	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō	

PASSIVE

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	feror, ferimur, ferris (-re), feriminī, fertur, feruntur	ferar, -āris (-re), -ātur, etc.
Imperf.	ferēbar	
Fut.	ferar, -ēris (-re), -ētur, etc.	ferrer
Perf.	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plup.	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE

	Active		Passive	
Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

FERŌ

	PARTICIPLES			INFINITIVES	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	ferēns	——	*Pres.*	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	——	lātus	*Perf.*	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus	——	*Fut.*	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

Gerund, ferendī.

Gerundive, ferendus, -a, -um.

Ferō is a mixed verb. Its conjugation is really a union of three different verbs, whose stems are **fer-**, **tul-**, **lāt-**. Compare Eng. *am, was, been; go, went, gone.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Fers, ferēs, ut ferās; fert, ferat, feret.
2. Ferris, ferēris, ut ferāris.
3. Fer, ferre; ferrī; fertis, ferte.
4. Ut ferrēs, ferēs; ferēris, ut ferrēris.
5. Tulistī; cum nōn tuleris.
6. Tulerant, tulerint, cum tulisset.
7. Auxiliō lātō, domum revertī vult.
8. Dīxit sē frātrī auxilium ferre velle.
9. Auxilium ab eīs sibi ferrī crēdidit.
10. Caesarī auxilium ferentēs interfectī sunt.
11. Haec nōbīs erant fortiter ferenda.
12. Auxiliī ferendī causā vēnērunt.
13. Sē auxilium lātūrōs (esse) pollicitī sunt.
14. Id graviter ferēbant.

B. 1. He bears; since he bears; he will bear.
2. He comes to bear (*Why not Inf.?*); he came to bear.
3. In order that aid may be brought; might be brought.
4. Aid is being brought us; will be brought you (*sing.*).
5. By bringing aid.

5. When he had brought aid to them.

(a) *cum*; (b) *postquam*; (c) *Abl. Absolute.*

7. They thought they ought to bring aid.
8. Since they are annoyed at these things.

C. *Parse and translate:* —

ferris, ferēris, ferāris, ferrēris, ferre, ferrī, fer.

COMPOUNDS OF Ferō

(*For reference*)

adferō (afferō), adferre, adtulī (attulī), adlātum (allātum), *bring to.*
auferō (ab and ferō), auferre, abs-tulī, ablātum, *bear away from.*
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum (collātum), *bring together, betake, bestow, devote.*
dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum, *offer, confer upon, lay before.*
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum (*carry apart*), *put off.*
efferō, efferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātum, *carry forth, raise.*
inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum), *carry into.*
bellum tibi inferō, *I wage war upon you.*
obferō (offerō), obferre, obtulī, oblātum, *offer, present.*
perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātum, *bear, endure, carry* (*news*).
referō, referre, ret(t)ulī, relātum, *carry back, submit a question.*

The perfect tenses of **subferō** are used to complete the conjugation of **tollō**, thus: —

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise, remove, destroy.*

Spring

Solvitur ācris hiems grātā vice vēris et Favōnī
Trahuntque siccās māchinae carīnās
Ac neque jam stabulīs gaudet pecus aut arātor ignī;
Nec prāta cānīs albicant pruīnīs.

HORACE, *Odes* I, 4.

LESSON LXXXII

EŌ

Eō, īre, īvī, itum, *go*

(*Stem* **I-**, *changed to* **e-** *before any vowel except* **e**)

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	eō, īs, it, īmus, ītis, eunt	eam, eās, eat, etc.
Imperf.	ībam (*compare* audiēbam)	īrem
Fut.	ībō (*compare* audiam)	
Perf.	īvī (i-ī)	īverim (i-erim)
Plup.	īveram (i-eram)	īvissem (i-issem)
Fut. Perf.	īverō (i-erō)	

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ī	īte
Fut.	ītō	ītōte
	ītō	euntō

	PARTICIPLES			INFINITIVES
Pres.	iēns	iēns	*Pres.*	īre (*Impersonal Passive* īrī)
	euntis	euntis	*Perf.*	īvisse (i-isse)
	etc.	etc.		
Fut.	itūrus		*Fut.*	itūrus esse

(*Impersonal Perf. Pass.* itum est.)

Gerund, eundī.

Gerundive (impersonal), eundum (est).

Compounds: —

trānseō, -īre, -īvī, (-iī), -itum, *cross.*
redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *return.*

Transitive compounds have the regular Passive: trānseor, -īris, -ītur, etc.

EXERCISE

A. 1. Rōmam ad amīcōs redeunt.
2. Flūmen trānsitūrī erant.
3. Hōc eī dedī ut libenter īret.
4. Ībit, veniet.
5. Eō (*adv.*) cum īvisset, omnia cognōvit.
6. Nōlīte īre.
7. Portam claudet nē quis exeat.
8. Hostēs jam flūmen trānsiisse neque redīre velle audīvit.

B. 1. They go, they were going.
2. They were coming, they come.
3. They will go, they will come.
4. We were going, we shall go, thou wilt go.
5. When they had gone.
6. Go thou, thou goést, go ye, ye go.
7. They crossed three rivers.
8. Nor will any one return.
9. For the purpose of crossing.
10. He made an attack upon them (as they were) crossing.
11. They promised to return next day.
12. He will come; he will not go.
13. The river will be crossed; in order that it may be crossed.

Summer

Jam pāstor umbrās cum grege languidō
Rivumque fessus quaerit et horridī
Dūmēta Silvānī, caretque
Rīpa vagīs taciturna ventīs.

HORACE, *Odes* III, 29.

LESSON LXXXIII

FĪŌ

Fīō, fierī, factus sum

(1) *to be made,* (2) *to be done,* (3) *to become, happen, take place*

Passive of **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum,** *make, do*

INDICATIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	faciō (like capiō)	fīō, fīs, fit, fīmus, fītis, fīunt
Imperf.	faciēbam	fīēbam
Fut.	faciam, -iēs, -iet, etc.	fīam, fīēs, fīet, etc.
Perf.	fēcī	factus sum
Plup.	fēceram	factus eram
Fut. Perf.	fēcerō	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	faciam, -iās, -iat, etc.	fīam, fīās, fīat, etc.
Imperf.	facerem, -erēs, -eret, etc.	fierem, -erēs, -eret, etc.
Perf.	fēcerim	factus sim
Plup.	fēcissem	factus essem

IMPERATIVE

	Active		Passive	
Pres.	fac	facite	fī	fīte
Fut.	facitō	facitōte	fītō	fītōte
	facitō	faciuntō	fītō	fīuntō

PARTICIPLES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	faciēns	——
Perf.	——	factus
Fut.	factūrus	——

INFINITIVES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	facere	fierī
Perf.	fēcisse	factus esse
Fut.	factūrus esse	factum īrī

Gerund, faciendī.
Gerundive, faciendus, -a, -um.

Compounds of **faciō** are of two types: —

1. **Prepositional**, as: —

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *kill.*
cōnficiō, etc., *finish.*
efficiō, etc., *effect, accomplish.*
perficiō, etc., *complete.*
adficiō (afficiō), *affect.*

These take the regular Passive, as: —

interficior, -fectus sum.

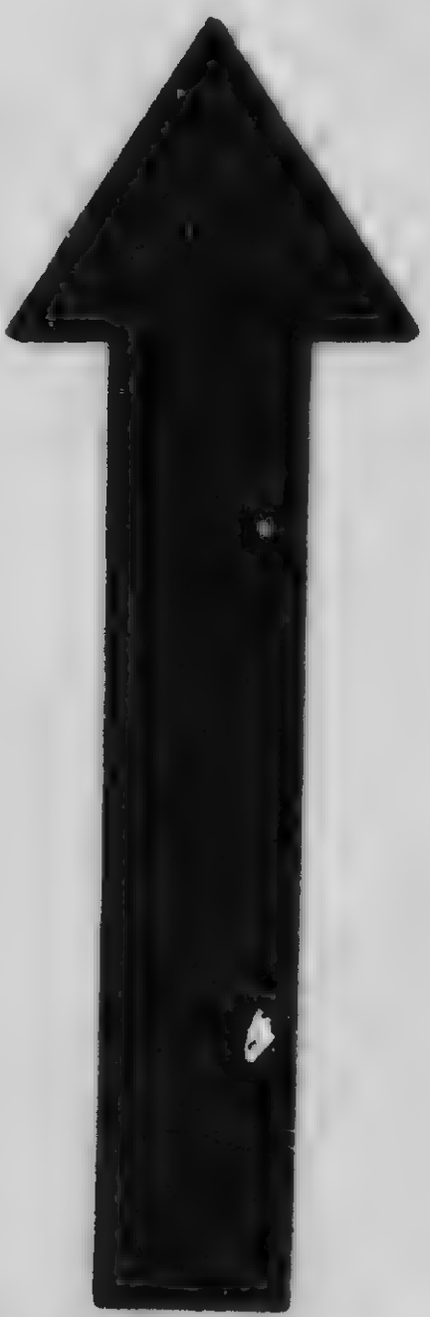
2. **Compounds formed from a verb or adverb**: —

patefaciō (*from* pateō), -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *open.*
Passive, patefīō, -fierī, -factus sum.
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *make amends.*

Rule of Syntax: Passive verbs of *making, calling*, etc., take a **Predicate Noun or Adjective** agreeing with the Subject.

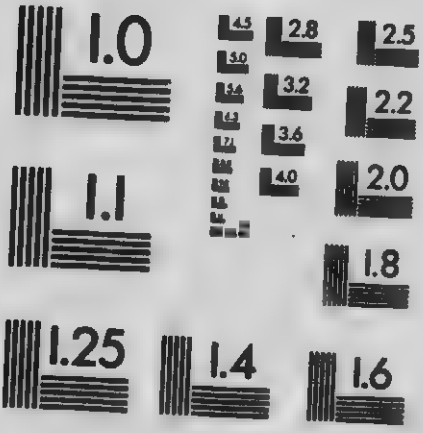
EXERCISE

A. 1. Id nōn faciet.
2. Haec nōn fient.
3. Jūstitia fīat (*command*).
4. Lēgātī certiōrēs fīunt.
5. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.
6. Caesar ab eīs certior factus est.
7. Cum hōc fierī animadvertisset.
8. Multī, flūmen trānseuntēs, interficiuntur.
9. Arma trādite, nisi interficī vultis.
10. Ille dux fīet.
11. Caesarne rēx fierī nōluit?



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

B. 1. What is being done?
2. Tell me what is happening.
3. He learnt what was taking place (*say "what things were"*).
4. They believed that Caesar wished to be made king.
5. Caesar will not be made king.
6. In order that he may do; in order that it may be done.
7. Let us inform the people.
8. The Roman people will be informed of our victory (*of = about*).
9. When these things were being done.
10. Do thou; become thou; do ye; become ye.
11. Let Labienus be made lieutenant.
12. He shall be made; he will be made.
13. They will call (*appellō, -āre*) him king.
14. He will be called king.
15. They will bring the ship to shore (*appellō, -ere*).
16. The ship was brought to shore.

Spring

Jam vēris comitēs quae mare temperant
Impellunt animae lintea Thrāciae;
Jam nec prāta rigent nec fluviī strepunt
Hibernā nive turgidī.

Dīcunt in tenerō grāmine pinguium
Cūstōdēs ovium carmina fistulā,
Dēlectantque deum cuī pecus et nigrī
Collēs Arcadiae placent.

HORACE, *Odes* IV, 12.

LESSON LXXXIV

DŌ

Dō, dăre, dedī, dătum, *give*

Dō is irregular in having **ă** in certain forms. The perf. stem **ded-** is also peculiar, — an instance of reduplication.

	Indicative			Subjunctive		
Pres.	dō	dās	dat	dem	dēs	det
	dămus	dătis	dant	dēmus	dētis	dent
Imperf.	dăbam			dărem		
Fut.	dăbō					
Perf.	dedī			dederim		
Plup.	dederam			dedissem		
Fut. Perf.	dederō					

Imperative	dā, dāte, etc.
Participles	dāns, dătūrus, dătus.
Infinitives	dăre, dedisse, dătūrus esse, dărī, etc.
Gerund	dandī.
Gerundive	dandus, -a, -um.

Compounds of Dō

I. **Disyllabic compounds are of the Third Conjugation:** —

abdō, -ĕre, ab-didī, ab-ditum, *hide.*
condō, -ĕre, con-didī, con-ditum, *found (a city).*
dēdō, -ĕre, dēdidī, dē-ditum, *surrender.*
prōdō, *betray;* red-dō, *give back, return* (*distinguish from* red-eō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *go back, return*).
trādō, *hand over, surrender, hand down.*

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	abdō, -dis, -dit, etc.	abdam, -dās, -dat
Imperf.	abdēbam	abderem
Fut.	abdam	
Perf.	abdidī	abdiderim
Plup.	abdideram	abdidissem
Fut. Perf.	abdiderō	

IMPERATIVE	abdĕ, -dite.
PARTICIPLES	abdēns, abditūrus, abditus.
INFINITIVES	abdere, abdidisse, abdī, etc.
GERUND	abdendī.
GERUNDIVE	abdendus, -a, -um.

II. **Those of more than two syllables are of the First Conjugation, like the simple verb: —**

circumdō, -dăre, -dedī, -dătum, *surround.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Dant; ut dent; ut obsidēs reddant; ut redeant.
2. Dabit; reddet; redībit; reddidit; rediit.
3. Oppidum mūrō (*Abl.*) circumdedit.
4. Urbī (*Dat.*) mūrōs circumdabit.
5. Urbem dēdet. Arma mīlitēs trādent.
6. Circumdant castra vāllō.
7. Cīvēs oppidum hostibus prōdunt.
8. Sē in silvās abdidērunt.
9. Rōma ā Rōmulō condita est.
10. Obsidēs dedērunt; urbem nōn dēdidērunt.

B. 1. They wished Caesar to give back their hostages.
2. He gives; he surrenders; he will surround; he will betray.
3. To give; to give back; to return (*go back*).
4. To be given; to be handed down; to have surrendered.
5. Having given hostages, they were sent home.
6. In order that they might give; might give back; might go back.
7. Give (thou); give (thou) back; return (thou).
8. Thou givest; preparest; dost not obey.
9. Thou sparest; wilt spare; lest thou spare.
10. You (*pl.*) give, obey, spare.

LESSON LXXXV

DEFECTIVE VERBS

Defective verbs lack certain forms.

The following are used only in the perfect tenses: —

Coepī, *I began*; **meminī**, *I remember*; **ōdī**, *I hate*.

INDICATIVE

Perf.	coepī	meminī	ōdī
Plup.	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
Fut. Perf.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
Plup.	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing. mementō; *Plur.* mementōte

PARTICIPLES

Fut. Act.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus
Perf. Pass.	coeptus	ōsus

INFINITIVES

Perf.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
Fut.	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

1. Note that **meminī** and **ōdī**, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly, the Pluperfect and Fut. Perf. have the force of the Imperfect and Future: —

memineram, *I remembered*; **ōderō**, *I shall hate*.

2. When **coepī** takes the Passive Infin. it is Passive itself: —

Lapidēs jacī coeptī sunt, *Stones began to be thrown*.

Inquit and Ait

Inquit, ait. "*says he,*" "*he said,*" are the only common forms of **inquam** and **āiō**. Other forms also occur.

Dicō governs the Accus. and Infin.

Inquit is used parenthetically in Direct Quotation, as: —

Dīcit sē brevī ventūrum esse, *He says he will soon come.*
"**Brevī,**" **inquit,** "**veniam,**" "*I shall soon come,*" *says he.*

Impersonal Verbs

Impersonal verbs are used only in the Third Person Singular. They are translated into English with the Impersonal or the Representative Subject "it." In Latin they either have no subject expressed or have a clause, an Infinitive or a Neuter Pronoun as Subject.

Some of the most common impersonal verbs are the following: —

licet, *it is permitted.*	cōnstat, *it is agreed, is evident.*
libet, *it pleases.*	pudet, *it shames.*
oportet, *it is necessary, it behooves.*	paenitet, *it repents.*

The following is a model for all those ending in **-et** (Second Conjugation): —

licet, licēre, licuit

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	licet	liceat
Imperf.	licēbat	licēret
Fut.	licēbit	
Perf.	licuit	licuerit
Plup.	licuerat	licuisset
Fut. Perf.	licuerit	

Infinitives

Pres. licēre *Perf.* licuisse

Intransitive verbs are often used in the Passive impersonally. This includes the Impersonal Gerundive.

Ventum est, *The act of coming was performed; they came.*
Tibi favētur, *Favor is shown to you.*
Lēgibus ab omnibus[1] **pārendum est,** *The laws must be obeyed by all.*

EXERCISE

A. 1. Licet tibi īre sī vīs. 2. Cum nōn mihi liceat.
3. Dīxit nōbīs hōc facere licēre.
4. Nōnne tē pudet? 5. Paenitēbit eōs.
6. Oportuit eum ad mē litterās mittere.
7. Faciēs quod tibi libēbit.
8. Ad Britanniam perventum est.
9. Ab omnibus ad arma concurritur.
10. Coepērunt; ōdērunt; ōderant; meminerint.
11. Tū laudāris; mihi invidētur.
12. Eī loquentī nōn crēdēbātur.

B. 1. He is permitted to speak.
2. You might have gone (*it was permitted you to go*).
3. You ought not to have done this (*it did not behoove you to do*). How would the Gerundive express this?
4. Since I was not permitted.
5. We shall repent. 6. I think he regrets (*repents*).
7. It is agreed that we ought to winter in Gaul (1. *oportet;* 2. Gerundive).
8. They fought long and fiercely (*it was fought*).
9. He said that he hated no one.
10. The women and children will be spared.
11. He remembers; since they hate.
12. Caesar must be obeyed by the soldiers.

[1] Note that where the Gerundive governs a Dative object, the Agent is expressed by **ab** with the Ablative to avoid ambiguity.

READING LESSON

(*Indirect Questions*)

Gossiping Habits of the Gauls

Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem[1] Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs,[2] nihil hīs committendum[3] (esse) exīstimāvit.[4] Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis.[5] Viātōrēs[6] etiam invītōs cōnsistere[7] cōgunt. Quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerunt. Mercātōrēs vulgus in oppidīs circumsistit. Quibus ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque[8] ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgunt. Ita incertīs rūmōribus serviunt[9] quod mercātōrēs plērumque[10] fīcta[11] respondent.

Translate: —

1. What have you heard?
2. What things had they ascertained?
3. Whence do you come?
4. Whither are you going? Tell us where you are going.
5. They thought he was not slow (*tardus*) in forming his plan.
6. I must form a plan as quickly as possible, — more quickly.
7. Having formed this design, they decide (*cōnstituō*) to resist Caesar (*resistō* with Dat.).

[1] *weakness, fickleness.*
[2] (**moveō**, *move*) *changeable.*
[3] *trust.*
[4] = **arbitror.**
[5] = **mōs.**
[6] **via**, *a way.*
[7] *stand still, stop.*
[8] = **et quās** (not from **quisque**, *each*).
[9] distinguish **serviō** from **servō.**
[10] *usually.*
[11] **fingō**, *fabricate*; compare "fiction."

LESSON LXXXVI

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

The verb in a subordinate clause of an Indirect Statement is put in the Subjunctive Mood; *e.g.*: —

Vīdī ducem quī Gallōs **vīcit**: **Direct Statement.**
Dīxit sē ducem vīdisse quī Gallōs **vīcisset**.

He said that he had seen the leader who had conquered the Gauls: **Indirect Statement.**

Note carefully that the principal clause of the Direct Statement is represented by the *that* clause of the Indirect Statement; hence, **Acc. with Inf.** But **vīcisset** is subjunctive because in the original subordinate clause.

Compare **vīcit** and **vīcisset** as regards **Tense**, and observe the **Sequence.**

EXERCISE

1. I have the book you gave me.
2. He said he had the book you had given him (= himself).
3. I shall send all the soldiers I have.
4. He promised to send all the soldiers he had.
5. He perceived that they were not doing what they had promised (*what = that which*).
6. They were not doing what they had promised.
7. Our ancestors loved Britain because it was their native land.
8. Caesar knew that the Britons would fight, because they loved their native land.
9. There are no lands[1] that I can give you.
10. He said there were no lands that he could give them.

[1] agrī, -ōrum.

LESSON LXXXVII

RESULT CLAUSES

Adverbial Clauses of Result are technically called **Consecutive Clauses**, because they denote the *consequence* (cōnsequor, *I follow*).

They are usually introduced by: —

ut, (*so*) *that.*
ut nōn, (*so*) *that not.*

The verb of a Result Clause is in the Subjunctive Mood.

The Negative of Consecutive **ut** is **ut nōn.**
The Negative of Final **ut** is **nē.**

Distinguish carefully Purpose from Result: —

A purpose is a *previous intention.*
A result is the *consequence that follows.*

PURPOSE

Mīlitēs per dēnsās silvās dūxit nē hostēs eōs vidērent.

He led his soldiers through thick woods in order that the enemy might not see them.

Notice the Eng. Subjunctive: "might see."

RESULT

Silvae tam dēnsae erant ut hostēs eōs nōn viderint.

The woods were so thick that the enemy did not see them.

Notice the Eng. Indicative: "did see."

TENSE

In Purpose clauses, the Law of Sequence is very exact (see page 242): —

dūcit nē videant, *he leads that they* **may** *not see.*
dūxit nē vidērent, *he led that they* **might** *not see.*

In Result clauses, there is more freedom as regards tense. The meaning of the Result clause decides, without special reference to the principal clause.

Note specially the difference in the following: —

ut nōn viderint (Perfect), *so that they did not (on that occasion) see* (one specific act).

ut nōn vidērent (Imperfect), *so that they would not (at any time) see* (vague possibility of recurrence).

Observe the following contrasts: —

PURPOSE	RESULT
ut, *(in order) that.*	**ut,** *(so) that.*
nē, *(in order) that not, lest.*	**ut nōn,** *(so) that not.*
nē quis, *lest any one, (in order) that no one.*	**ut nēmō,** *(so) that no one.*
nē quid, *lest anything, (in order) that nothing.*	**ut nihil,** *(so) that nothing.*
nē umquam, *lest ever, (in order) that never.*	**ut numquam,** *(so) that never.*

EXERCISE

(Distinguish Purpose from Result)

1. The valor of the soldiers was so great that no one withdrew (*discēdō*).
2. He ordered (*jubeō*) the gates to be closed that no one might withdraw.
3. The wall was so high that they saw nothing.
4. He built the walls high, that nothing might be seen.
5. The storm was so great that the soldiers could not land (*1. specific; 2. vague*).
6. The enemy kept hurling darts to prevent him from landing his (men). (Say *in order that he might not be able to land.*)

What difference between *ēgredior* and *expōnō*?

7. They advanced so rapidly that they completed (*cōnficiō*) the whole march in three days.
8. The wall is so high that I can see no one.
9. I shall build a wall so high that you can see no one; that you can hurt no one (*noceō*, what case?).
10. He has surrounded us with so many soldiers that we shall never escape (*ēvādō*, Periphrastic Future Subjunctive, see page 231).
11. He sent as many soldiers as possible, that the enemy might never escape.
12. They so (adv. *adeō*) feared the Germans that no one wished to wander from home.

Charon

Antīquī crēdēbant animās hominum post mortem flūmen Stygem trānsvehī ā sene Charonte. Quae cum ad rīpās flūminis, ā deō Mercuriō ductae, vēnerant,[1] obolum quem propinquī in ōs dēposuerant Charontī pendēbant. Hōc praemiō inductus eās cymbam suam cōnscendere sinēbat; deinde rēmigāre incipiēbat et mox mānēs mortuōrum ad alteram rīpam in fīnēs Plūtōnis incolumēs dūcēbat. Mercurius nōnnumquam, cum mājor multitūdō lintrem cōnscenderat, rēmō prehēnsō senem rēmigandō adjuvāre cōnsuēverat.

[1] Cum, *whenever*, denoting repetition, takes the Pluperf. Indic. where cum, *when*, denoting one occurrence, would take the Pluperf. Subj.

CHARON
271

LESSON LXXXVIII

PREPOSITIONS

1. The following prepositions govern the **Ablative only** : —

ā, ab (abs)	**ē, ex**	**sine**
cōram	**prae**	**tenus**
cum	**prō**	
dē		

ā before consonants except **h**; **ab** before vowels, **h**, and some other consonants.

(1) *from;* (2) *by;* (3) *on the side of, on.*

cōram, *in the presence of.*

cum, *with.*

dē, (1) *down from;* (2) *about, concerning;* (3) *from among.*

ē before consonants except **h**; **ex** before vowels, **h**, and some other consonants.

(1) *out of;* (2) *in accordance with.*

prae, (1) *in front of* (rare); (2) *in comparison with;* (3) *for = on account of.*

prō, (1) *in front of;* (2) *in behalf (or defence) of;* (3) *instead of, as an equivalent of;* (4) *in accordance with.*

sine, *without.*

tenus, *as far as;* always follows its case, as **flūmine tenus.**

2. The following prepositions govern the **Accusative or Ablative** according to the meaning : —

PREPOSITIONS WITH TWO CASES

PREPOSITION	ABLATIVE (*Implying Rest, Continuance*)	ACCUSATIVE (*Implying Motion*)
in	*in*	*into*
sub (subter)	*beneath, under*, as: — **sub arbore sedet**, *he sits beneath a tree*	*approaching under; close up under*, as: — **sub montem**, *at the foo of the mountain* **sub noctem**, *at night-fal*
super	(1) *over, above* (2) *upon* = **dē**, *concerning*	*above, beyond, added to* **vulnus super vulnus**, *wound upon wound* **super octingentōs annōs**, *more than 800 years*

3. The following prepositions govern the **Accusative only**: —

ad, *to, towards; by* (of time); *for* (purpose); *up to* (of time or number); *near; according to.*

adversus, *against.*

ante, *before* (of *time* more often than of *place*).

apud, *near, among, at the house of, in the presence of* (French *chez*).

circum (circā), *around, about.*

circiter, *about* (of number), is an adverb.

cis, citrā, *on this side of.*

contrā, *against.*

ergā, *towards* (of conduct or attitude).

extrā, *outside of, beyond.*

inter, *between, among.*

intrā, *within.*

ob, *against; on account of.*

penes, *in the power of.*

per, *through, along.*

post, *after, behind.*

praeter, *except, past, besides.*

propter, *on account of.*

trāns, *across, beyond.*

ūltrā, *on the other side of, beyond.*

versus, *towards.*

EXERCISE

1. To the wall of the city; into the city.
2. Away from the wall; out of the city.
3. Around the town; above the tree.
4. He was kindly towards me (*ergā* or *in*).
5. On account of the cold (*ob* or *propter*).
6. Within the walls; within three days.
7. On this side of the Rhine.
8. Among the Gauls; in the neighborhood of the river.
9. Before the sixth month; before the camp.
10. The hostages were brought by the (appointed) day.
11. He waited till the ninth hour.
12. Throughout all these years; as far as I am concerned (*per*).
13. Across the sea, the valley, the mountains.
14. He sent all but three cohorts.
15. After the third year.
16. In return for this kindness (*prō*).
17. For this reason (*ob* or *propter*).
18. Without fear.
19. There was a wall about the town; he waited about two hours; they heard about his approach.

The Changing Seasons Remind Us of Death

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt jam grāmina campīs
Arboribusque comae;
Mūtat terra vicēs et dēcrēscentia rīpās
Flūmina praetereunt;
Immortālia nē spērēs monet annus et almum
Quae rapit hōra diem.
Frīgora mītēscunt Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās
Interitūra simul
Pōmifer auctumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
Brūma recurrit iners.

HORACE, *Odes* IV, 7.

LIST OF VERBS

All the verbs in this list are of ordinary occurrence, and their principal parts should be memorized.

Verbs that have occurred frequently in the previous lessons are not necessarily included.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Perfects in -uī

crepō	crepāre	crepuī	crepitum	*rattle*
cubō	cubāre	cubuī	cubitum	*lie down*
domō	domāre	domuī	domitum	*tame*
fricō	fricāre	fricuī	frictum *and* fricātum	*rub*
micō	micāre	micuī	———	*dart, flash*

But dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight.*

Compounds of plicō:—

plicō	plicāre	plicāvī *or* plicuī	plicātum *or* plicitum	*fold*
secō	secāre	secuī	sectum	*cut*
sonō	sonāre	sonuī	sonitum (sonātūrus)	*sound*
tonō	tonāre	tonuī	———	*thunder*
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitum	*forbid*

Perfect with Lengthened Vowel

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtum (juvātūrus)	*aid*
lavō	lavāre	lāvī	lautum *or* lōtum	*wash*

SECOND CONJUGATION

Perfect in -vī

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum	*destroy*
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētum	*weep*

Compounds of pleō:—

pleō	plēre	plēvī	plētum	*fill*
aboleō	abolēre	abolēvī	abolitum	*destroy*

PERFECT IN -uī

arceō	arcēre	arcuī	———	*keep off*
coerceō	coercēre	coercuī	coercitum	*hold in check*
exerceō	exercēre	exercuī	exercitum	*practise*
caleō	calēre	caluī	(calitūrus)	*be warm*
careō	carēre	caruī	(caritūrus)	*be without*
jaceō	jacēre	jacuī	jacitum	*lie*
mereō	merēre	meruī	meritum	*deserve*

Also deponent.

cēnseō	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsum	*estimate*
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctum	*teach*
misceō	miscēre	miscuī	mīxtum	*mix*
torreō	torrēre	torruī	tostum	*roast*

PERFECT IN -sī

augeō	augēre	auxī	auctum	*increase*
torqueō	torquēre	torsī	tortum	*twist*
rīdeō	rīdēre	rīsī	rīsum	*laugh*
suādeō	suādēre	suāsī	suāsum	*urge, advise*
ārdeō	ārdēre	ārsī	ārsum	*burn*
haereō	haerēre	haesī	haesum	*stick*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum	*remain*

Reduplicated PERFECT

mordeō	mordēre	momordī	morsum	*bite*
spondeō	spondēre	spopondī	spōnsum	*promise*
tondeō	tondēre	totondī	tōnsum	*shear, shave*
pendeō	pendēre	pependī	———	*hang*

PERFECT WITH **Lengthened Vowel**

caveō	cavēre	cāvī	cautum	*take care*
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum	*favor*
foveō	fovēre	fōvī	fōtum	*cherish*
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum	*move*
sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	sessum	*sit*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum	*see*

DEPONENTS

mereor	merērī	meritus	*earn*
fateor	fatērī	fassus	*confess*
cōnfiteor	cōnfitērī	cōnfessus	*confess*
reor	rērī	ratus	*think*

THIRD CONJUGATION

PERFECT IN **-sī**; SUPINE IN **-tum**

carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptum	*pluck*
nūbō (used of the woman only)	nūbere	nūpsī	nūptum	*marry*
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum	*cover*
adflīgō (affligō)	adflīgere	adflīxī	adflīctum	*wreck*
trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctum	*draw*
vehō	vehere	vexī	vectum	*carry*
cingō	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctum	*gird*
jungō	jungere	jūnxī	jūnctum	*join*
fingō	fingere	fīnxī	fictum	*form*
vīvō	vīvere	vīxī	vīctum	*live*
ūrō	ūrere	ussī	ūstum	*burn*

So scrībō, regō, dicō, dūcō, gerō.

PERFECT IN **-xī**; SUPINE IN **-xum**

fīgō	fīgere	fīxī	fīxum	*fasten*
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersum	*sink*
flectō	flectere	flexī	flexum	*bend*

nectō	nectere	nexuī	nexum	*weave*
vādō	vādere	-vāsī [1]	-vāsum [1]	*go, march*
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum	*close*
lūdō	lūdere	lūsī	lūsum	*play*
cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessum	*go, yield*
dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvīsī	dīvīsum	*divide*
premō	premere	pressī	pressum	*press*

Reduplicated PERFECT

Compounds of sistō:—

resistō	resistere	restitī	———	*resist*
cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsum	*fall*
caedō	caedere	cecīdī	caesum	*cut, kill*
pendō	pendere	pependī	pēnsum	*weigh, pay*
tendō	tendere	tetendī	tentum (tēnsum)	*stretch*
fallō	fallere	fefellī	falsum	*deceive*
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsum	*drive*

Distinguish appellō (adpellō), appellere, appulī, appulsum, *bring to shore*, from appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call, name.*

currō	currere	cucurrī	cursum	*run*
parcō	parcere	pepercī	parsum	*spare*
canō	canere	cecinī	cantum	*sing*
tangō	tangere	tetigī	tāctum	*touch*

PERFECT **Originally Reduplicated**

scindō	scindere	scidī	scissum	*tear apart*
tollō	tollere	sustulī	(sublātum)	*lift*

tulī *originally* tetulī ; *see* ferō.

PERFECT WITH **Lengthened Vowel**

agō	agere	ēgī	āctum	*drive, do*
subigō	subigere	subēgī	subāctum	*subdue*

[1] In compounds invādō, ēvādō, etc.

cōgō	cōgere	coēgī	coāctum	*compel, collect*
frangō	frangere	frēgī	frāctum	*break*
perfringō	-fringere	-frēgī	-frāctum	*break through*
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctum	*gather, choose, read*
colligō	colligere	collēgī	collēctum	*collect*
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlēctum	*choose*

Distinguish from dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bind.*

dīligō	dīligere	dīlēxī	dīlēctum	*love*
intellegō	intellegere	intellēxī	intellēctum	*understand*
emō	emere	ēmī	ēmptum	*buy*
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptum	*take*
rumpō	rumpere	rūpī	ruptum	*break*
edō	edere	ēdī	ēsum	*eat*
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsum	*pour, scatter, rout*

So vincō, relinquō.

PERFECT STEM THE SAME AS THE PRESENT STEM

dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsum	*defend*
vertō	vertere	vertī	versum	*turn*
īcō	īcere	īcī	ictum	*strike*
solvō	solvere	solvī	solūtum	*loose*
volvō	volvere	volvī	volūtum	*roll*

PERFECT IN -uī

gignō	gignere	genuī	genitum	*beget, bring forth*
fremō	fremere	fremuī	———	*roar*
metō	metere	messuī	messum	*reap*
alō	alere	aluī	altum (alitum)	*nourish*
colō	colere	coluī	cultum	*cultivate*
cōnsulō	cōnsulere	cōnsuluī	cōnsultum	*consult*
dēserō	dēserere	dēseruī	dēsertum	*desert*

And other compounds of serō, serere, seruī, *join.*

texō	texere	texuī	textum	*weave*
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positum	*place*

PERFECT IN -vī

sinō	sinere	sīvī	situm	*allow*
serō	serere	sēvī	satum	*sow, plant*

Distinguish from serō, *join*.

dēcernō	dēcernere	dēcrēvī	dēcrētum	*decide*

From cernō, *separate*.

petō	petere	petīvī	petītum	*seek*
sternō	sternere	strāvī	strātum	*spread*
quaerō	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītum	*seek*
arcessō	arcessere	arcessīvī	arcessītum	*summon*
lacessō	lacessere	lacessīvī	lacessītum	*provoke*

VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -u

statuō	statuere	statuī	statūtum	*set up, resolve*

Similarly cōnstituō, *resolve*.

struō	struere	strūxī	strūctum	*build*

Similarly instruō, *draw up*.

VERBS LIKE **Capiō** — PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -i

cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītum	*desire*
rapiō	rapere	rapuī	raptum	*snatch*
quatiō	quatere	———	quassum	*shake*

Compounds: —

concutiō	concutere	concussī	concussum	*shake violently*
pariō	parere	peperī	partum	*bring forth*
fodiō	fodere	fōdī	fossum	*dig*

See also faciō, jaciō, fugiō, and compounds of speciō (cōnspiciō), pages 48, 49.

Verbs in -scō

Usually with an **Inceptive** or **Inchoative** meaning (*i.e.* denoting the *beginning* of an action).

poscō	poscere	poposcī	———	*demand*
discō	discere	didicī	———	*learn*
crēscō	crēscere	crēvī	crētum	*grow*
cōnsuēscō	cōnsuēscere	cōnsuēvī	cōnsuētum	*grow accustomed*
adolēscō	adolēscere	adolēvī	(adultum)	*grow up*

So cognōscō, ignōscō.

Deponents

lābor	lābī	lāpsus	*slip, glide*
amplector	amplectī	amplexus	*embrace*
nītor	nītī	nīsus, nīxus	*strive*
adipīscor	adipīscī	adeptus	*acquire*

Many others have occurred in the Exercises.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

sepeliō	sepelīre	sepelīvī	sepultum	*bury*
aperiō	aperīre	aperuī	apertum	*open*
dēsiliō (from saliō)	dēsilīre	dēsiluī	dēsultum	*leap down*
hauriō	haurīre	hausī	haustum	*draw (water)*
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsum	*feel*
reperiō	reperīre	repperī	repertum	*find*
experior	experīrī	expertus	———	*try*

See also mētior, mentior, orior, page 176.

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

LESSON I, PAGE 7

(For List of Verbs, see Page 6)

nōn, *not.*
Vĕnus, *Venus, goddess of love.*
Mārs, *Mars, god of war.*
Jūpiter, *Jupiter, chief god of the Romans.*
quis, *who?* (Interrog. pron.)
Deus, *a god, God.*
et, *and.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
neque, *nor.*
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*
sed, *but.*
Mercurius, *Mercury.*
Diāna, *Diana.*
Mūsa, *a Muse.*
Minerva, *Minerva.*

LESSON III, PAGE 10

est, *is* (from verb **sum**).
patria, *native land, one's country.*
nostra, *our* (fem. form of **noster**).
incola, *inhabitant.*
Britannia, *Britain.*
corōna, *crown, wreath.*
rēgīna, *queen.*
colōnia, *colony.*
habet, *has* (from verb **habeō**).
in (prep.), *in* or *into* (see p. 12).
quoque, *also.*
sunt, *are* (from verb **sum**).
prōvincia, *province.*
septem, *seven.*
Britannicus, *British* (fem. form, **Britannica**).
prīmus, *first* (fem. form, **prīma**).
cūr, *why?*
agricola, *farmer, husbandman.*
Ītalia, *Italy.*
quod, *because.*
Rōma, *Rome.*
erat, *was.*
terra, *a land, the earth.*
Eurōpa, *Europe.*
arō, *I plough.*
nauta, *sailor.*
unda, *wave.*
vītō, *shun, avoid.*
procella, *storm-blast.*
rosa, *rose.*

LESSON IV, PAGE 12

puella, *girl.*
schola, *school.*
magistra, *mistress, teacher.*
fīlia, *daughter.*
fābula, *story.*
nārrō, *tell.*
via, *way, road, street.*
jactō, *throw, toss.*
nunc, *now.*
aqua, *water.*
dea, *goddess.*
aedificō, *build.*
āra, *altar.*
īnsula, *island.*
pecūnia, *money.*
portō, *carry, bring.*

LESSON V, PAGE 14

aquila, *eagle.*
sagitta, *arrow.*
hasta, *spear.*
ōra, *coast.*
umbra, *shade.*
silva, *a wood, forest.*
bestia, *beast.*
ōrnō, *adorn, deck.*
porta, *gate, door.*
errō, *wander.*
mēnsa, *table.*
arēna, *arena.*
nāvigō, *I sail.*

PREPOSITIONS

a, ab, *away from; by* (*Abl.*).
ad, *to, towards* (*Acc.*).
ē, ex, *out of* (*Abl.*).
in, (1) *in* (*Abl.*) (2) *into* (*Acc.*).
cum, *with* (*Abl.*).
prō, *in front of; in defence of; in behalf of; instead of* (*Abl.*).
inter, *among, between* (*Acc.*).
per, *through* (*Acc.*).
circum, *around* (*Acc.*).
trāns, *across* (*Acc.*).

LESSON VI, PAGE 19

quandō, *when?* (Interrog.)
stella, *star.*
lūna, *moon.*
exspectō, *wait for, await, watch for.*
dēsīderō, *long for, miss, desire.*
fuga, *flight.*
stō, *stand.*

NOTE. — **Exspecto**, *wait for*; **dēsīderō**, *long for*, do not govern the Dative; they are transitive verbs governing the Accusative.

LESSON VII, PAGE 21

Gallia, *Gaul* (ancient name of France).
Gallus, *a Gaul*.
lēgātus (*deputy*), (1) *lieutenant*; (2) *ambassador, envoy, legate*.
ōrō, *beg, entreat, pray*.
equus, *horse*.
dēlectō, *please, delight*.
hortus, *garden*.
dominus, *lord, master, owner*.
servus, *slave*.
Ōceanus, *the Ocean* (*Atlantic*).
fīlius, *son*.
fāgus, *beech-tree*.
mūrus, *wall*.
populus, *a people, nation, populace*.
(Not used in the plural sense of *people*.)
laudō, *praise*.
culpō, *blame, find fault with*.
amīcus, *friend*.
inimīcus, *enemy*.
oculus, *eye*.
tumulus, *a mound, hill*.
ventus, *wind*.

LESSON VIII, PAGE 23

(See Nouns on Page 22)

lūdus, *play, game*.
spectō, *look at, watch*.
signifer = **aquilifer**.
trānsportō, *carry over*.
mālus, *apple tree*.
discipulus, *pupil*.
in fugam dō, *I put to flight*.
fluvius, *river, stream*.
Rhēnus, *the Rhine*.
Rhodanus, *the Rhone*.
Germānus, *a German*.
vāstō, *lay waste*.
vīcus, *village*.
rīpa, *bank*.

LESSON X, PAGE 28

(See Nouns on Pages 25, 27, 28)

erat, *was* (verb **sum**).
erant, *were*.
signum, *standard, image*.
proelium, *battle*.
pīlum, *javelin*.
aurum, *gold*.
argentum, *silver*.
ferrum, *iron, steel, the sword*.
perīculum, *danger, peril*.
gladius, *a sword*.
tēlum, *missile, dart*.
funda, *sling*.
arma, **-ōrum** (n. pl.), *arms, armor*.
galea, *helmet*.
scūtum, *shield*.
lōrīca, *cuirass, coat-of-mail*.

saxum, *stone, rock.*
tormentum, *war-engine.*
castra, -ōrum (n. pl.), *a camp.*
inter, *between* (*Acc.*).
carrus, *cart, wagon.*
impedimenta, -ōrum (n. pl.), *baggage.*
jūmentum, *beast-of-burden.*
-que, *and* (an **enclitic**, added to another word).
sarcinae, -ārum (*f.* pl.), *personal baggage.*
bracchium, *an arm* (*of the body*).
humerus, *shoulder.*
praemium, *reward.*
caelum, *heaven, sky.*
vāllum, *rampart.*
fossa, *ditch, trench.*
circumdō, *surround.*
occupō, *occupy, seize.*
locus, *place.*
oppidum, *town.*
templum, *temple.*
aedificium, *building.*

READING LESSON, PAGE 29

decem, *ten.*
annus, *year.*
apud, *at* (*Acc.*).
Trōja, *Troy.*
An ancient city on the west coast of Asia Minor.
Graecus, *Greek.*
Trōjānus, *Trojan.*
poēta, *poet.*
appellō, *I call, name.*
causa, *cause.*
Sparta, *Sparta.*
A city in southern Greece.
vir, *man, husband.*
multus (adj.), *much*; (pl.), *many.*
horridus (adj.), *dreadful.*
māgnus (adj.), *great, large.*
splendidus (adj.), *splendid.*
atque = **et**, *and, and also.*
lignum, *wood.*
fabricō, *make, contrive.*
occultō, *hide, conceal.*
rota, *wheel.*
trahō, *draw, drag.*
dēmittō, *let down.*
ita, *thus, so.*
expugnō, *take by storm, capture.*

LESSON XI, PAGE 33

(For Principal Parts of Verbs, see General Vocabulary.)

gerō, *carry, carry on, wage* (*war*).
stō, *stand.*
videō, *see.*
dūcō, *lead.*
cognōscō, *learn, ascertain.*
ōrō, *beg, pray.*
moneō, *warn, advise.*
scrībō, *write.*
parō, *prepare.*
secō, *cut.*
audiō, *hear.* **tandem**, *at last.*
capiō, *take.*
vincō, *conquer.*
venia, *pardon, indulgence.*
epistola, *letter* = **litterae.**
forum, *market place, forum.*

LESSON XII, PAGE 37

mālus, f., *apple-tree, mast.*
mălus, **-a**, **-um**, *bad, evil.*
altus, **-a**, **-um** (1) *high, tall;* (2) *deep.*
bonus, **-a**, **-um**, *good.*
cārus, **-a**, **-um**, *dear.*
vīrus, n., *poison, virus.*
vir, m., *man.*
vulgus, n., *throng, common people.*
incertus, **-a**, **-um**, *uncertain.*
Hadria, m., *the Adriatic.*
turbidus, **-a**, **-um**, *stormy.*
māgnus, **-a**, **-um**, *large, great.*
incola, m. or f., *inhabitant.*
ferus, **-a**, **-um**, *fierce.*
parvus, **-a**, **-um**, *small.*
plēnus, **-a**, **-um**, *full.*
clārus, **-a**, **-um**, *bright, brilliant, renowned.*

LESSON XIII, PAGE 38

(See Adjectives on Pages 37, 38)

sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred.*
multus, **-a**, **-um**, *much;* pl., *many.*
frūmentum, n., *grain, corn.*
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, *Roman.*
idōneus, **-a**, **-um**, *suitable.*
vīnum, n., *wine.*
vel, *or, or in other words.*
Bacchus = **Līber**, *Bacchus.* The god of wine.
gestō, *carry, wear.*
grātus, **-a**, **-um**, *pleasing.*
castra locō, *I pitch (place) camp.*
longus, **-a**, **-um**, *long.*
angustus, **-a**, **-um**, *narrow, close.*
lātus, **-a**, **-um**, *wide, broad.*

LESSON XIV, PAGE 41

(For Principal Parts, see General Vocabulary)

videō, *see.*
veniō, *come.*
respondeō, *answer.*
pūniō, *punish.*
mittō, *send.*
teneō, *hold.*

LESSON XV, PAGE 43

inquit, *says, says he.*
iniquus, **-a**, **-um**, *unequal, unfavorable.*
colloco, *place, station.*

LESSON XVI, PAGE 46

(See Verbs on Pages 45, 46)

LESSON XVII, PAGE 49

(See Verbs on Pages 48, 49)

LESSON XVIII, PAGE 53

animus, m., *mind.*
moveō, -ēre, *move, influence.*
tēctum, *roof.*
verbum, *word.*
verba faciō (*make words*), *speak, talk.*
apud, *at, in the presence of, before, among* (*Acc.*).
dōnum, *gift.*

LESSON XIX, PAGE 55

vīnea, *shed, shelter, mantlet, penthouse*
prōmoveō, *move forward.*
praestō, -āre, -stitī, *show* (*of qualities*).
sevērus, -a, -um, *severe, strict.*

LESSON XX, PAGE 57

(See Pages 56, 57)

contrā, prep., *against* (*Acc.*).
praemittō, *send forward.*
decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
dēnsus, -a, -um, *thick, dense.*
perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, *break through.* (See **frangō**.)
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, *collect; compel.*
Cicerō, -ōnis, *Cicero, the great orator.*
clārus, -a, -um, *renowned* (*bright*).
auctumnus, -ī, m., *autumn.*

LESSON XXI, PAGE 61

(See Pages 59, 60)

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, *live.*
sustinēō, -ēre, -uī, *sustain, endure.*
semper, *always.*
violō, -āre, -āvī, *violate.*

LESSON XXII, PAGE 63

(See Pages 61, 62)

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, *lay waste.*
classis, -is, f., *fleet.*
Apollō, -inis, *Apoi*
nāvis longa, *ship-of-war, galley.*
nāvis onerāria, *ship-of-burden, transport.*
onerārius, -a, -um (onus), *for burdens.*
praemittō, *send forward.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*
rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, *move.*

LESSON XXIII, PAGE 65

firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
ursus, -ī, m., *bear.*
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, *sleep.*
vallis, -is, f., *valley.*
volō, -āre, -āvī, *fly.*
bellum gerō, *carry on (waye) war.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, *carry.*
hīberna, -ōrum, *winter quarters* (really a *n. pl. adj.* mod. *castra* understood).
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, *lead.*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first, early.*
nīdus, -ī, m., *nest.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*

LESSON XXIV, PAGE 67

saevus, -a, -um, *savage, cruel.*
contendō, -ere, -tendī, *strive.*
ancora, -ae, f., *anchor.*
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, *let down.*
incola, -ae, m. or f., *inhabitant.*
Karthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage.*
pūblicānus, -ī, m., *farmer (of taxes).*
imperium, -ī, n., *power, command.*
cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, *strengthen.*
cōnstituō, -uere, -uī, *resolve.*
eques, -itis, m., *horseman, knight.*

READING LESSON, PAGE 67

continēns, -ntis, f., *continent.*
celer, *swift.*
rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak, bow (of a ship).*
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, *terrify.*
autem, *but, on the other hand.*
humilis, *low.*
ac = atque, *and.*
enim, *for.* (Never placed first.)
mālus, -ī, f., (1) *apple-tree;* (2) *mast.*
vēlum, -ī, n., *sail.*
fūnis, -is, m., *rope, cable.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining.*

armāmentum, -ī, n., *a fitting, tackle.*
ōrnō, (1) *adorn;* (2) *equip.*
tum, *then (at that time).*
cōnscendō, *embark.*
deinde, *then, afterwards.*
ubi, *when, where.*
tempestās, -ātis, f., (1) *storm;* (2) *weather.*
solvō, *loosen, unmoor, cast off (a ship).*
sōlis occāsus, *setting of the sun, west.*
cōnspiciō, *see, behold.*
prohibeō, *prevent.*
ēgredior, inf. **ēgredī**, *land (leave a ship), disembark* (intransitive).
tamen, *nevertheless.*
negōtium, *trouble.*
expōnō, -ere, **posuī** (*place out*), *land, disembark* (transitive).

LESSON XXV, PAGE 69

contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, *hurl.*
iter māgnum, *forced march.*
fīnis, -is, *end, limit;* pl. **fīnēs**, -ium, m., *boundaries, territories.*
contendō, -ere, (1) *strive;* (2) *hasten.*
sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, *sacrifice;* also, **immolō**, -āre, and **mactō**, -āre.

READING LESSONS, PAGE 82

1

condō, -ere, -didī, *found (a city).*
validus, -a, -um, *strong.*
saepe, *often.*
vīcīnus, -ī, m., *neighbor.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
superbus, -a, -um, *proud.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second.*
post, *after* (Acc.).
duo, *two.*

2

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient.*
legō, -ere, lēgī (*gather, choose*), *read.*
dē, (1) *down from;* (2) *about, concerning* (Abl.).
mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*
caedēs, -is, f., *killing, death.*
vērus, -a, -um, *true.*
septem, *seven.*
conditor, -ōris, *founder.*
ūltimus, -a, -um, *last.*

3

Poenus, -ī, *Carthaginian (Phoenician).*
mercātor, -ōris, *trader, merchant.*
praeclārus, -a, -um, *renowned, excellent, famous.*
etiam, *even, also.*
usque ad, *as far as.*
Ibērus, -ī, m., *Ebro.*
volō (irreg. verb), *wish.*
adulēscēns, -entis, m., *youth.*
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, *choose.*

4

parō, *prepare, procure.*
benīgnus, -a, -um, *kind.*
ratis, -is, f., *raft.*
māgnopere, *greatly.*
pertimēscō, *fear, dread.*
tandem, *at last.*
rūpēs, -is, f., *crag, rock.*
āmittō, -ere -mīsī, *lose.*

5

sēdecim, *sixteen.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.*
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, *send for, summon.*
apud, *at, near* (Acc.).
propter, *on account of* (Acc.).
tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*
posteā, *afterwards.*
paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*
tertius, -a, -um, *third.*
Poenicus, *Punic, Carthaginian.*
rescindō, -ere, *tear down.*

LESSON XXIX, PAGE 86

adflīctō, -āre, *damage, wreck.*
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, (1) *collect;* (2) *compel.*
alō, -ere, aluī, *nourish.*
tēctum, *roof.*
porrigō, -ere, porrēxī, *stretch out.*

LESSON XXX, PAGE 89

triplex, -icis, *triple.*
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, *form.*
ante, *before* (Acc.).
ēdūcō, *lead out.*
inūsitātus, -a, -um, *strange, novel.*
barbarus, -ī, m., *foreigner, barbarian, native.*
hōra, -ae, *hour.*
bene, *well.*
accipiō, *receive.*
gerō, *carry on, do.*
dēpōnō, *deposit, place for safe keeping; lay aside.*
mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement.*
postulō, *demand.*

PART II

READING LESSONS

AND

PASSAGES SUITABLE FOR SIGHT TRANSLATION

FABLES

THE FOX AND THE GRAPES

(*No Subjunctive*)

Multae fābulae dē vulpe nārrantur; inter aliās Phaedrus hanc: Vulpēs ōlim famē coācta ad collem aprīcum vēnit ubi vītis sata erat. Ad ūvam dēpendentem saliēbat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem īrāta est et salīre dēsiit. Dum sē inde recipit exaudīta est ita exclāmāns: "Ūva illa acerba est; acerbam sūmere nōlō."

Nōn jūstae mentis est id quod cōnsequī nōn potes verbīs carpere.

THE ASS IN THE LION'S SKIN

(*No Subjunctive*)

Asinus ōlim leōnis pelle indūtus per agrōs currēbat. Quae rēs et bestiās silvārum perturbat et hominēs terret; mulierēs puerīque diffugiunt; pavōre perculsī agricolae cum fīliīs, arātrīs relictīs, domum quam celerrimē discēdunt.

Subitō auris ingēns, quam adhūc nōn animadverterant, appāret et fraudem ostendit, falsum leōnem dēnūntiāns. Tum omnēs rīdent et lapidibus fūstibusque armātī, impetum in asinum faciunt. Sine morā eum pelle[1] spoliant et in stabulum redūcunt.

Stultus et ignāvus, speciem fortitūdinis simulandō, nōn diū aliōs terrēre potest.

pavor = **timor**; **percellō, -ere, -culī, -culsum**, *strike with terror*; **fūstis**, m., *club*.

1. **Abl. of Separation** with **verbs of depriving**.

THE FOX AND THE RAVEN

(*No Subjunctive*)

1. In arbore altā ōlim corvus sedēbat cāseum[1] ōre tenēns. Quam praedam dē fenestrā pauperis agricolae rapuerat; edere jam parābat. Deinde vulpēs callida, quae forte eā[2] praeterībat,[3] corvum vīdit et cāseum sūmere cōnstituit. Corvum igitur sīc adlocūta est: "Avē,[4] domine," inquit. Nīl respondet corvus. "Egregia[5] est tempestās.[6]" Adhūc corvus tacēbat. "Quī ventus hodiē flat[7]?" Nīl respōnsum. "Splendida messis[8] hōc annō erit." Rūrsus corvus nūllam vōcem ēdidit.

1. **cāseus**, *cheese*. 2. **eā**, adv. (**viā** understood). 3. **praetereō**, *pass*. 4. *Hail! Good day!* 5. *fine, excellent*. 6. *weather*. 7. **flō, flāre**, *blow*. 8. *harvest*.

2. Tum vulpēs, omnī spē jam paene dēpositā, aliō modō id quod cupiēbat cōnsequī cōnstituit. "Corve mī cārissime, quantus est pinnārum tuārum nitor! Quantum decoris in

corpore vultūque geris! Est tibi,[1] ut āiunt, vōx splendidissima. Nōnne mihi ex carminibus tuīs ūnum modo[2] cantābis?" Tum stultus corvus, dum vōcem ostendere vult, ōs aperuit et cāseum ēmīsit; quem celeriter dolōsa vulpēs avidīs dentibus rapuit nec diūtius ad vōcem corvī audiendam morāta in aliās partēs quam celerrimē discessit.

Sērō enim dat poenās quī verbīs dolōsīs laudārī gaudet.

pinna, *feather*; **nitor, -ōris**, m., *brightness, lustre, splendor*; **decus, -oris**, n., *beauty.*

1. **Dat. of Possession.** 2. Distinguish **modō** (Abl. of **modus**, *manner*) from **modō** (Adv. = *only*).

THE TORTOISE AND THE HARE

(*No Subjunctive*)

1. Lepus quondam testūdinem irrīdēbat quod tam tardē per agrōs sē movēbat. "Ego vērō," inquit testūdō, "priusquam tū ad vīcīnum oppidum perveniam." "Quōmodo tū illud facere, praesertim domum tuam suprā tergum gestāns, poteris?" respondit ille. "Sī mē nōn posse crēdis," ait altera, "ego certāmen tēcum inīre nōn dubitābō." Tum lepus, vīribus suīs atque cursū frētus, sē testūdinem mīlle passibus ab initiō[1] sibi antecēdere velle dīxit. Decem autem mīllia passuum ab oppidō aberant.

1. *at the outset.* Translate the whole sentence idiomatically.

2. Testūdō nihil recūsāns profecta est, sed mox lepus cum irrīsū eam est cōnsecūtus et māgnō intervāllō antecurrēbat. Post breve tempus lepus, sē haud dubiē victūrum esse cōnfīsus, in viā quiētem parvam capere cōnstituit. Multīs post hōrīs testūdō, tarda quidem sed tamen certissima, leporem adhūc dormientem praeteriit; neque ille glōriōsus prius ex somnō experrēctus est[1] quam testūdō incolumis in oppidum victrix pervēnit.

Certiōrem quam celeriōrem esse melius est.

1. **expergīscor, -ī, -perrēctus**, *awake.*

THE FROG THAT BURST

(*Dependent Question*)

In prātō quondam rāna bovem cōnspexit et, invidiā tantae māgnitūdinis permōta, rūgōsam pellem īnflāvit. Tum nātos[1] suōs interrogāvit num[2] bove esset lātior. Illī negāvērunt.[3] Rūrsus intendit cutem mājōre nīsū et similī modō quaesīvit quis mājor esset. Illī dīxērunt bovem.[3] Novissimē,[4] graviter ferēns[5] quod aliquis mājor esset,[6] summīs vīribus[5] sēsē īnflāvit et corpore ruptō jacuit.

Inops, potentem dum vult imitārī, perit.

1. = **fīliōs.** 2. = *whether* in a single dependent question, without a negative suggestion as in a direct question. 3. Supply the *ellipsis* in Latin. 4. = **tandem** = **ad extrēmum.** 5. Give idiomatic rendering. 6. **Quod** (*because*) usually takes the Indicative, **cum** (*since*) the Subjunctive. But quoting the reason as the *thought or statement of another*, **quod** takes the **Subjunctive** (practically the rule for subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse).

prātum, *meadow;* **rāna**, *frog;* **rūgōsus**, *wrinkled;* **cutis** = **pellis**, *skin;* **nīsus**, **-ūs** (nītor), *effort.*

Translate: 1. *Is the ox greater than I?* 2. *Am I not greater than the ox?* 3. *Who is greater?* 4. *I ask whether there is another greater.*

THE FOX IN THE WELL

Homō callidus[1] *simul atque in perīculum vēnit, effugium alterius malō*[2] *reperīre quaerit.*

Vulpēs ōlim in puteum īnscia[3] dēcidit. Hīc puteus[4] autem altior erat neque ēscendere potuit vulpēs. Dum quid sit faciendum mīrātur, hīrcus[5] quīdam forte[6] in eundem locum sitiēns[7] vēnit. Quī vulpem amīcīs verbīs compellāns[8] "Dulcisne est aqua?" inquit. Illa statim fraudem mō-

1. *cunning, shrewd.* 2. **malō**, adj. used as noun. 3. *not knowing, unaware.* 4. *pit, well.* 5. *goat.* 6. *by chance;* say *happened to.* 7. **sitiō**, from **sitis**, *thirst.* 8. **compellō**, **-āre**, *accost, address.*

liēns[9] "Dēscende, amīce"; respondit, "tanta enim est bonitās aquae ut voluptās mea satiārī nōn possit?" Sine morā sē immīsit stultus hīreus. Deinde altera celsīs cornibus vīxa puteō ēvāsit hīreumque in clausā aquā[10] haerentem relīquit.

9. **mōlior**, *contrive, build, plan.* 10. From **nītor, -ī, nīsus** or **nīxus**, *strive, support oneself.*

THE WOLF AND THE CRANE

(*Verbs of asking, persuading, etc.*)

Os dēvorātum in faucibus lupī haerēbat neque id extrahere ille poterat. Māgnō dolōre affectus, praetereuntēs pretiō illicere coepit ut[1] ōs ōre extraherent. Tandem gruī persuāsit ut[1] sibi subvenīret, jūrejūrandō datō nūllam injūriam factum īrī. Gulae crēdēns collum longum, auxilium perīculōsum lupō tulit. Ā quō cum pactum flāgitāret praemium: "Ingrāta es," inquit, "quae[2] ōre ē nostrō caput incolume abstuleris[2] et mercēdem postulēs?"

Quī pretium ab improbīs accipere vult, bis peccat: prīmum quoniam[3] *indignōs adjuvat; deinde quia*[3] *impūnē abīre jam nōn potest.*

Distinguish **ōs, ossis** and **ōs, ōris.** What gender? **faucēs**, *jaws, throat;* **gula**, compare Eng. *gullet;* **illiciō, -ere**, *entice;* **grūs, gruis**, *crane.*

Pacīscor, -ī, pactus sum, *bargain, stipulate.* Note that the Perf. Part. of this verb, though from a deponent, may be passive.

1. **Verbs of persuading, asking**, and some others take a **purpose clause** as object corresponding to the Eng. Infin. 2. **quae** here = **cum tū**, the **Causal Relative** followed by the **Subjunctive abstuleris** (from **auferō**). 3. = **quod.**

Pick out the verbs in this passage that govern the Dat. Give two verbs for *aid* and distinguish their constructions.

THE SABINE WOMEN

STORIES OF EARLY ROME

ROMULUS AND REMUS

Annīs circiter trecentīs postquam Aenēas ad Ītaliam vēnit, Rōmulus et Remus geminī ex Rheā Silviā nātī sunt. Ea autem sacerdōs erat deae Vestae. Pater puerōrum deus Mārs esse dīcēbātur. Quī ubi nātī sunt, avunculus Amūlius, quī Numitōrem patrem Silviae rēgnō Albae Longae pepulerat, eōs necāre volēbat, nē ipsum rēgnō expellerent veritus. Puerōs igitur in Tiberim flūmen abicī jussit. Flūmen autem relābēns eōs in āridō relīquit. Lupa eōs invēnit et cum catulīs suīs aluit. Posteā pāstor nōmine Faustulus eōs domum dūxit et ad virīlem aetātem ēducāvit.

DEATH OF REMUS

Post paucōs annōs frātrēs, quī jam adolēverant, Numitōrem avum suum in rēgnum restituērunt. Ipsī vērō novam urbem in eīs collibus ubi puerī habitāverant condere cōnstituērunt. Inter eōs contrōversia orta est uter locum dēligeret et nōmen urbī daret. Auguriō Rōmulus lēctus, urbem in Palātīnō monte condidit Rōmamque eam appellāvit. Dum Rōmulus vāllum facit, frāter Remus, mūrum tam humilem irrīdēns, saltū eum trājēcit. Deinde Rōmulus īrātus frātrem occīdit, exclāmāns: "Ita pereant[1] omnēs quī trāns hunc mūrum salīre cōnābuntur."

1. Subjunctive of a **wish**.

ROMULUS KING

Frātre interfectō, Rōmulus urbem cōnfēcit, deinde in eā sōlus rēgnābat. Imāginem tamen urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae enim dēerant. Ut urbem complēret, asȳlum in proximō lūcō aperuit et eō omnēs undique lātrōnēs

dēsum, *am lacking*; **lūcus**, *grove*; **perditus**, *ruined, abandoned.*

perditōsque hominēs invītāvit. Ita māgnum virōrum numerum comparāvit sed mulierēs paucās in urbe habēbat. Ut uxōrēs cīvibus suīs parāret hōc cōnsilium iniit. Sabīnōs, quī haud procul incolēbant, cum conjugibus līberīsque ad lūdōs spectandōs invītāvit. Quī cum vēnissent, sīgnō datō, juvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.[1]

1. *Seize.*

TARPĒIA

Virginibus Sabīnīs raptīs, parentēs id graviter ferentēs domum rediērunt. Rēgī suō, Titō Tatiō, persuāsērunt ut bellum populō Rōmānō prō tam gravī injūriā īnferret.[1] Cum hōc fierī cognōvissent, Rōmānī sē ad obsidiōnem parāvērunt. Arcem, quae in colle Capitōlīnō erat, Tarpēiō dēfendendam trādunt. Hūjus fīlia, Tarpēia, ducī Sabīnōrum sē eōs in arcem ductūram esse pollicita est sī sibi quae[2] bracchiīs sinistrīs gererent dedissent; ānulōs[3] enim eōrum aureōs et armillās[4] cupiēbat. Quod sē factūrōs pollicitī et in arcem perductī, virginem scūtīs obruēbant.[5] Nam ea in laevīs[6] habuerant. Sīc impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta[7] est.

1. Distinguish **bellum gerō** and **bellum īnferō**. 2. **quae**, n. pl. 3. **ānulus**, *ring*. 4. **armilla**, *bracelet*. 5. **obruō**, *overwhelm*. 6. **laevus** = sinister. 7. **vindicō**, **-āre**, *punish*.

THE SABINE WOMEN MAKE PEACE

Arce tālī virginis perfidiā captā, Rōmānī proelium cum Sabīnīs in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum est, committere cōnstituērunt. Prīmō impetū quīdam ex Rōmānīs fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit; quā rē perterritī Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Jam Sabīnī clāmitant: "Perfidōs hostēs vīcimus. Nunc sciunt longē aliud esse virginēs rapere, pugnāre cum virīs aliud." Tunc Rōmulus, armīs ad caelum sublātīs, Jovī aedem vōvit. Ita proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs, haud

minus marītīs quam patribus frātribusque veritae, sē inter [illegible] volantia īnferre et utrōsque ut armīs contendere dēsinerent ōrāre causae sunt.

MIRACULOUS DISAPPEARANCE OF ROMULUS

Pāce ita inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs compositā, uterque populus Rōmae,[1] Rōmulō et Tatiō rēgibus, habitāre cōnstituit. Paulō post, Tatiō occīsō, ad Rōmulum omnis potestās rediit. Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōrum[2] cōnsiliō omnia ageret. Hōs, propter senectūtem, senātum nōmināvit.

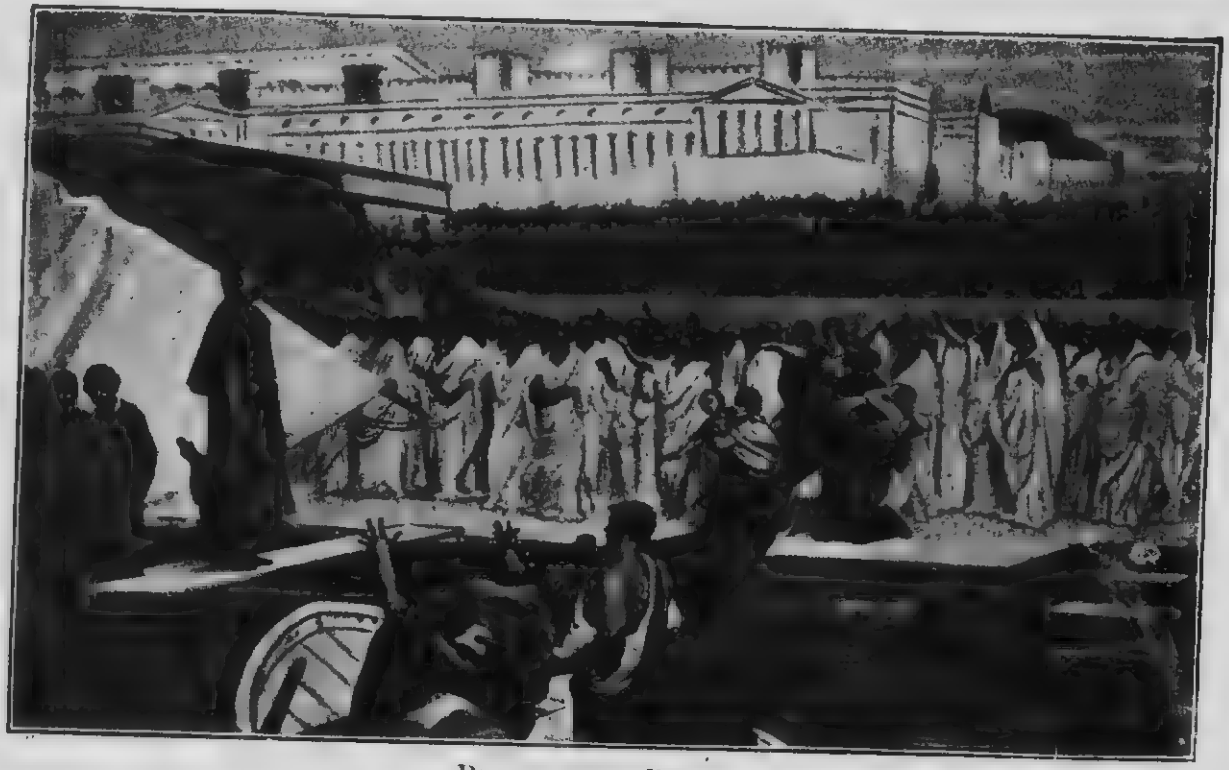
Cum jam annum trīcēsimum septimum rēgnāret, mīrō modō ē cōnspectū sublātus est. Dum enim exercitum in Campō Mārtiō recēnset, subitō sōle obscūrātō māxima tempestās cum māgnō fragōre caelī coorta est. Cum rūrsus illūxisset,[3] Rōmulus nūsquam vīsus est, ut[4] inter plērōsque cōnstābat,[5] ā patre Mārte in currū īgneō ablātus.

1. Locative case. 2. **quōrum** = **ut eorum**, Relative of Purpose with the Subjunctive. 3. **illūcēscō**, **-ere**, **-lūxī**, *become light.* 4. **ut** with the Indicative may mean *as* or *when.* 5. **cōnstat**, impersonal; see page 264.

THE GRACCHI

Tiberius et Cāius Gracchus ex Cornēliā Scīpiōnis Āfricānī fīliā nātī sunt. Hōrum adulēscentia bonīs artibus exācta[1] est. Erant enim dīligenter ā[2] puerīs doctī et Graecīs litterīs ērudītī. Māximum mātrōnīs ōrnāmentum esse līberōs bene īnstitūtōs meritō[3] putābat māter illa sapientissima. Cum Campāna mātrōna, apud illam hospita,[4] ōrnāmenta sua eī muliebriter ostentāret, Cornēlia puerōs suōs ā scholā reversōs hospitae ostendēns, "Haec," inquit, "mea ōrnāmenta sunt."

1. **exigō**, *pass, spend* (*time*). 2. *from.* 3. Adv. *deservedly, properly.* 4. *guest.*



DEPARTURE OF REGULUS

REGULUS

Tria bella Rōmānī cum Poenīs gessērunt. Prīmō Rēgulus cōnsul Rōmānus māximā cum laude terrā marīque pugnābat. Poenī perterritī dē pāce agere volēbant. Ille tamen, nisi dūrīs condiciōnibus, pācem dare nōluit. Poenī tandem, commūtātiōne rērum factā, Rōmānōs māgnā clāde vīcērunt et Rēgulum cēpērunt. Utrīque jam captīvōs inter sē reddere cupiunt. Rēgulus igitur ā Poenīs Rōmam missus est pollicitus nisi cīvibus suīs ut captīvōs redderent persuādēret sēsē ad supplicium perferendum reditūrum esse.

Ubi ad urbem pervēnit, captīvōrum permūtātiōnem incommodō reī pūblicae[1] arbitrātus, uxōris precibus līberōrumque immōtus, Carthāginem rediit. Paucīs post diēbus omnibus suppliciīs necātus est.

1. **Double Dative**; **incommodō**, Result or Tendency; **reī pūblicae**, Interest.

THE WANDERINGS OF ULYSSES

THE GREEK HEROES RETURN HOME FROM TROY

Bellō Trōjānō cōnfectō, ducēs Graecōrum domōs suās omnēs discessērunt. Agamemnōn quī summam imperī obtinuerat Mycēnās rediit. Eō cum vēnisset, ab uxōre Clytaemnēstrā et Aegisthō occīsus est.

Orestēs fīlius ējus, ā sorōre Electrā ēducātus, postquam adolēvit eōs quī patrem interfēcerant occīdit. Ipsum vērō reliquam partem vītae Fūriae mātris per omnēs Graeciae terrās cōnsectābantur.

Menelāus, qui Graecōs ad bellum propter Helenam incitāverat, Lacedaemona[1] cum Helenā revertitur.

1. Greek Acc. = **Spartam**.

ULYSSES

Ulixēs autem, vir callidissimus et labōrum patientissimus, Ithacae rēx fuit. Ad bellum discēdēns uxōrem Pēnelopēn, mulierem fōrmōsissimam, domī relīquit. Bellō jam cōnfectō, domum cum sociīs uxōrem fīliumque Tēlemachum et cīvēs suōs omnēs vīsum[1] redīre voluit. Eō absente multī juvenēs, undique ex Graeciā congressī, ad domicilium ējus convēnerant et Pēnelopēn urgēbant ut alicuī ex numerō suō nūberet.[2] Illa tamen per omnēs hōs annōs id facere nōluerat et conjugī absentī fīdissima remānserat.

Domum tamen statim redīre Ulixī nōn licuit. Dīs enim aliter vīsum est. Annōs decem circum ōrās Maris Internī vagābātur priusquam domum pervenīre posset.

1. Supine. 2. What difference between **in mātrimōnium dūcō** and **nūbō**?

THE LOTUS-EATERS

Dum pervenīre domum cōnātur, multōs cāsūs Ulixēs pertulit. E plūrimīs perīculīs et sē et sociōs cōnsiliō suō ēripuit. Ad terram Lōtophagōrum nāvem appulit.[1] Hī autem prō cibō ūtuntur frūctū cūjusdam arboris quae lōtus appellātur.[1] Quem cum homō ēdit,[2] omnium hūjus vītae dolōrum oblīvīscitur neque in ūllō labōre difficiliōris generis versārī vult. Eō cum vēnisset, Ulixēs sociōs suōs ē nāvī ēgredī et cēnam parāre jussit. Postquam sē cibō pōtiōneque satiāvērunt, aliquōs ex suīs mīsit quī quālēs essent iī quī hanc regiōnem incolerent[3] cognōscerent.[4] Hōs, ubi ad incolās vēnērunt, illī benīgnē accēpērunt neque ūllam injūriam īnferendam in animō habēbant. Aliquid lōtī etiam eīs dedērunt, cūjus dulcēdine permulsī domōrum suārum atque reditūs omnīnō

1. Note the two verbs **appellō, -ĕre**, etc., and **appellō, -āre**, etc. See vocabulary. 2. Perf. of **ĕdō**, *eat;* distinguish from **ēdō**, *give forth*. 3. Subjunctive by attraction. Why **essent** Subjunctive? 4. **quī cognōscerent** Relative of Purpose; **quī** = **ut eī**.

oblītī sunt. Cum ad lītus nōn redīrent, Ulixēs aliōs quī eōs reperīrent[5] mīsit et repertōs redūcerent. Flentēs et manū resistentēs vī retrahī et vinctōs in nāvem conicī jussit. Deinde ut omnēs quam celerrimē cōnscenderent et rēmīs nāvem prōpellerent imperāvit.[6]

5. Why Subjunctive? 6. Note the difference between **jubeō**, with the *Acc.* and *Inf.*, and **imperō**, with **ut** and the Subjunctive.

POLYPHEMUS

Deinde Ulixēs ad īnsulam Cyclōpum vēnit. Hī autem ingentī corporum māgnitūdine pāstōrēs erant et ūnum sōlum oculum quisque in mediā fronte habēbat. Ex eīs ūnus Polyphēmus in antrō cum gregibus ovium et caprōrum noctū dormiēbat. Cūjus ad antrum cāseō et lacte plēnum cum Ulixēs vēnisset, reditum ipsīus exspectāre cōnstituit. Sub noctem māgnō clāmōre gregēs domum ille pepulit et intrā portam māximō saxō inclūsit. Ubi Ulixem et duodecim sociōs, quōs sēcum ex nāvī addūxerat, cōnspexit, māgnā vōce "Quī estis," inquit, "et unde vēnistis?" "Nōs Graecī sumus," respondit Ulixēs, "Trōjā domum, bellō cōnfectō, redeuntēs. Misericordiam tuam dīs testibus ōrāmus." "Stultī estis quī[1] mē deōs timēre exīstimētis.[1] Ubi est nāvis vestra?" ait ille. "Nāvī ā Neptūnō frāctā, vix ad terram effūgimus," falsīs verbīs Ulixēs.

1. Causal Relative with the Subjunctive; **quī = cum vōs.**

Tum sine morā Polyphēmus duōs ex sociīs Ulixis comprehendit et ad terram capita summīs vīribus illīsit.[1] Sanguine perfūsus[2] omnia eōrum membra dēvorābat neque ossa relīquit. Māgnam vim[3] deinde lactis exhausit[4] et in sōlum[5] ad dormiendum sē dējēcit. Jamque Ulixēs eum ita dormientem

1. **illīdō.** 2. **perfundō.** 3. = **cōpiam.** 4. **exhauriō.** 5. Compare Eng. *soil*; distinguish from **sōlus.**

occīdere volēbat, sed ut[6] saxum ā portā submovēre posset verēbātur. Māne Cyclōps ē somnō excitātus, duōbus ex reliquīs comitibus dēvorātīs, portā māximā cum cūrā clausā, gregēs ad pāstum pellēbat.

6. **vereor nē**, *I fear lest (that)*; **vereor ut** (= **nē nōn**), *I fear lest not (that not)*. The **ut** or **nē** expresses the *desire* about which the fear is entertained; the Eng. *that* clause expresses *the thing feared*.

POLYPHEMUS' EYE BORED OUT

Dum Polyphēmus abest, Ulixēs sēcum cōnsuluit quid optimum factū esset. Hōc cōnsilium cēpit. In antrō erat ā Polyphēmō relīcta māgna clāva, quā innīxus interdum ambulābat. Hanc ad extrēmum acuere comitēs jussit. Ad vesperum rūrsus ille revertitur et duōs ex reliquīs dēvorat. Tum Ulixēs adstāns, "Sūme hōc vīnum," inquit, "quod ego ex nāvī servāvī. Dulce est. Bibe." Ille, haud invītus, pōculum exhausit. "Plūs mihi dā," exclāmāvit. "Nōmen tuum mihi dīc ut tibi dōnum dem. Numquam enim anteā vīnum tam bonum gustāvī." Tum Ulixēs, vir callidissimus, "Nēminem mē hominēs appellant; Nēmō meum nōmen est." "Nēmō," respondit ille, "tē ūltimum edam, cēterōs priōrēs. Hōc tibi praemiō[1] dabō." Posteā dum vīnolentus dormit, Ulixēs, quattuor ex suīs sortītus, oculum sūde praeūstā cōnfossit. Dolōre Polyphēmus gemuit et frātrēs undique ēvocāvit. Illī clāmōribus audītīs antrum circumstant et quis eī noceat[2] quaerunt. "Nēmō mihi, fraude nec vīribus, nocet," respondit. Illī "Sī nēmō tibi nocet, dī videant. Nōs tē adjuvāre nōn possumus." Hōc dictō, domōs suās, eum īnsānīre arbitrātī, discessērunt.

1. **praemiō**, Dat. of Purpose. 2. Why Subjunctive?

ULYSSES ESCAPES

Postrīdiē māne Polyphēmus jam caecus saxō dētrāctō ad portam manibus porrēctīs cōnsīdēbat. Ita enim sē Ulixem

et sociōs, sī effugere cōnārentur, prehēnsūrum cōnfīdēbat. Haec quoque spēs eum fefellit. Ulixēs enim aliud cōnsilium jam iniit. Sociōs singulōs sub ternīs ovibus lānigerīs ligātōs ante sē ēmīsit. Ipse ūltimus sub ariete, quī Polyphēmō cārissimus erat, manibus in lānā adhaerēns ēvāsit.

Ad lītus Polyphēmus fugientēs et irrīdentēs sequitur. Dum nāvem celerrimē in altum rēmīs incitant, saxum ē monte arreptum in eōs injēcit, neque multum aberat quīn eōs cum nāvī obrueret. Parvō tamen intervāllō effugiunt. Sed posteā Neptūnus propter injūriam fīlī suī īnfēstō semper animō in Ulixem erat.

AEOLUS, GOD OF THE WINDS

Postquam Ulixēs ā terrā Lōtophagōrum profectus est, ad īnsulam Aeolī ventōrum deī pervēnit. Hīc deus benīgnē eum accēpit et ūtrem[1] eī dedit ventōrum secundōrum[2] plēnum. Cum jam in cōnspectū patriae suae essent, comitēs ējus, virī stultissimī, ūtre apertō omnēs ventōs ēmīsērunt. Tum rūrsus ad īnsulam Aeolī rējectī sunt sed ubi ventōs iterum deum sunt precātī, īrātus eōs ē fīnibus suīs expulit neque jam auxilium ūllum eīs dare volēbat.

1. **ūter, -tris,** *a bag* made of skin. 2. *favorable.*

CIRCE

Mox ad īnsulam Aeaeam pervēnit. Ibi Circē, dea vitrea,[1] in rēgiā[2] splendidissimā silvīs dēnsissimīs cīnctā[3] habitābat. Illa autem fīlia Sōlis fuit. Vīgintī duōs ex sociīs, quibus Eurylochus praerat, Ulixēs praemīsit quī quālis esset nātūra īnsulae et eōrum, quī eam incolerent, reperīrent. Hōs omnēs praeter Eurylochum, quī ūnus domum ējus inīre nōluerat, in suēs venēnō[4] quōdam Circē mūtāvit. Ūsūs[5]

1. **vitreus, -a, -um,** *glassy, sea-green.* 2. **rēgia (domus),** *royal palace.* 3. **cingō.** 4. *poison, drug.* 5. Adjectives of *knowledge and skill* govern the Genitive.

enim venēnōrum magicōrum perītissima erat. Quā dē calamitāte cum Ulixēs ab Eurylochō certior esset . ictus, gladiō accīnctō[6] domum Circēs[7] ad sociōs līberandōs profectus est. Eunti obviam[8] eī Mercurius factus, quōmodo Circēn vīsere[9] neque in suem ab eā mūtārī posset, dēmōnstrāvit. Aliud enim venēnum eī dedit, quod sī prius sūmeret, fore[10] ut Circē eum mūtāre nōn posset. Eum jussit, cum de- dolōs versāret, gladiō strīctō et impetū factō, eam perterrēre. Ita enim mītissimam et benevolentissimam ex crūdēlissimā eam factūrum esse. Omnibus rēbus factīs sīcut deus praecēperat, Circā amīcissimā ūsus est[11] atque, sociīs in hominēs rūrsus mūtātīs, ex īnsulā est dīmissus.

6. **accingō**. 7. Greek Gen. = **Circae**. 8. **obviam fiō**, *I meet*. 9. **vīsō**, *visit*. 10. = **futūrum esse**, governed by **dīxit** understood. 11. **tē amīcō ūtor**, *I enjoy your friendship*.

ULYSSES RETURNS HOME

Post multōs annōs, multīs ac gravissimīs cāsibus perlātīs, Ulixēs, nāvī et omnibus sociīs āmissīs, domum dormiēns ā Phaeācibus[1] vectus est et in lītus expositus. Cum in rēgiam suam, mendīcī[2] habitū indūtus, vēnisset, amātōrēs uxōris sumptū[3] ipsīus epulābantur neque eum agnōvērunt. Īnsolenter eum accēpērunt et ūnus ex eīs sellulam ad ējus caput injēcit. Posteā Pēnelopē certāmen eīs posuit, pollicita sē eī quī arcum conjugis absentis intenderet et sagittam per duodecim secūrēs ex ōrdine[4] positās mitteret nūptūram esse. Ubi omnēs frūstrā cōnātī sunt, Ulixēs petiit ut sibi arcum intendere cōnārī licēret. Tum potestāte factā, omnibus portīs ējus jussū jam clausīs, arcum nōn sōlum intendere potuit sed sagittam sine ūllō negōtiō per secūrēs ūnō cōnātū mīsit. Deinde, sīgnō datō, rēx jam ab omnibus agnitus, amātōrēs omnēs sagittīs interfēcit.

1. The Phaeacians, the mythical inhabitants of the island of Scheria (Corcyra). 2. **mendīcus**, *beggar*. 3. *expense*. 4. *in a row*.

THE CAPTURE OF QUEBEC

(*Military Narrative*)

1. Gallī quondam in Americā cum Britannīs ferē continentia bella gerēbant. Illī sēdēs ad utramque rīpam Laurentiī flūminis habēbant eōrumque fīnēs ūsque ad lacūs māgnōs, quī in interiōrem partem continentis[1] pertinent, patēbant. Hī colōniās tredecim in ōrā maritimā incolēbant. Gallīs autem erat arx ad rīpam flūminis locō[2] et nātūrā et manū[3] ēgregiē mūnītō posita. Quam arcem capere, quod māgnō Gallīs ad bellum gerendum ūsuī[4] erat, Britannī māgnopere cupiēbant. Itaque, māgnīs cōpiīs comparātīs, classī māximā aedificātā atque omnibus rēbus ōrnātā, ad eam arcem expugnandam veniunt.

1. **continēns**, Adj., *continuous;* Noun, *continent.* 2. Phrases with **locus** usually omit prep. **in** before the Abl. 3. Translate idiomatically: **manū** = **arte.** 4. **Double Dative**; **Gallīs, of Interest**; **ūsuī, of Purpose.**

GENERAL WOLFE

2. Dux Britannōrum, vir summae reī mīlitāris scientiae virtūtisque māximae, tenuī valētūdine tum erat. Haud tamen īnfīrmiter rem gerēbat et māximam laudem sibi fore, sī locum expugnāre posset, exīstimāvit. Multōs mēnsēs autem Gallōs obsidēbat neque eōs sē dēdere, quamquam famē paene cōnfectī erant, cōgere posse vidēbātur. Tandem adulēscēns quīdam viam eī ostendit, quā viā montem ascendere posset[1] et locō idōneō aciem īnstruere. Proximā nocte cōnātum facere cōnstituit. Posterō diē mīlitēs quōsdam, per speciem impetūs in aliam partem faciendī, in lītus exposuit. Mājōrēs cōpiās noctū ad eum locum, quī sibi dēmōnstrātus erat, lintribus dēportārī jussit. Ipse, dum linter quā vehēbātur rēmīs secundō

1. **quā posset**: **quā** = **ut eā**, Relative of Result or Characteristic.

flūmine,[2] aestus enim jam sē incitābat, prōpellitur, multa cum amīcīs dē morte et glōriā colloquēbātur.

2. Abl. Absolute, translate "*down the stream*" (lit. "*the current following*"): **adversō flūmine** = "*up stream.*"

THE PLAINS OF ABRAHAM

3. Cum ad ēgressum ventum esset, paucōs ex mīlitibus fortissimīs dēlēctōs, adulēscente duce, praemīsit; reliquōs ēgredī et quam cautissimē subsequī jussit. Cūstōdibus quī in summō colle erant occīsīs, omnibus suīs jam subsecūtīs, Britannī ante lūcem in plānitiem, quae prō mūrīs oppidī porrēcta est, ēmersērunt. Prīmā lūce, cum Gallī dē[1] mūrīs dēspicientēs Britannōs in aciē ad proelium parātōs stantēs vidērent, māximō terrōre perculsī sunt.

1. Give two common meanings of **dē**. **Porrigō, -ĕre, -rēxī, -rēctum**, *stretch.*

DEATH OF WOLFE

4. Illōrum tamen dux, vir fortissimus, salūte etiam tum haudquāquam dēspērātā, cōpiīs ē portīs ēductīs, potestātem hostibus pugnandī facere cōnstituit. Ācriter diū ab utrīsque pugnātum est et uterque[1] dux, mortiferō vulnere acceptō, ē proeliō ā suīs auferēbātur. Tum vērō aliquis ex Britannīs exclāmāvit "Fugiunt." "Quī fugiunt?" dux Britannicus interrogāvit. "Gallī," respondent. "Aequō igitur animō," inquit, "moriar," et paulō post exanimātus est.

1. When is **uterque** used in the plural, when in the singular?

DEATH OF MONTCALM

5. Alter[1] dux mortem aequē praeclāram, clādem patriae suae lūgēns, cōnsecūtus est. Cum ad eum rem in angustō[2] esse nūntiātum esset, exclāmāvisse dīcitur, "Sī ego mīlitum illōrum rōbustōrum neque famē maciēque extenuātōrum dux essem, et ille hōrum miserrimōrum, aliter atque hodiē rēs ēvāsūra erat."

1. Distinguish **alter** from **alius**. 2. **angustus**, *narrow*; as we say, "*in a tight place.*"

PART III

A SHORT COURSE IN SYNTAX

SUITABLE FOR THIRD-YEAR STUDENTS

Miles Legionārius

SYNTAX

I

REVIEW

Ablative Absolute. — Deponent Participles. — Accusative with the Infinitive. — Dependent Questions

EXERCISE

A

(Look up the meanings of **cōnstituō**, **impetrō**, **rescindō**)

1. As none defended the walls, he made an attack.
2. Having settled these things, he returned to the army.
3. Having exhorted the legion, the lieutenants will join battle.
4. After the assembly was dismissed, the chieftains returned home.
5. Having promised to send hostages, they obtained peace.
6. He broke down the walls of the city captured by his (men).
7. The soldiers sent by Caesar destroyed the bridge.

B

1. They heard that he was coming. 2. They reported that three towns had been stormed. 3. He learned that they were being (hard) pressed by (their) enemies. 4. They ask what he wishes to be done. 5. He says that he wishes them to do this. 6. He told them where

(= *whither*) he was going. 7. They thought he was not going there (= *thither*). 8. They inquired whence he had come and where he wished camp to be pitched. 9. He informed them that he had come thence; that he wished them to pitch camp there. 10. He hoped the legions would come on the following day.

2

EQUIVALENTS OF THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE

Infinitive as Complement of a Modal Verb

The following (called Modal Verbs) take an Infinitive as complement in Latin, as in English:—

(*a*) **possum, volō** (**nōlō, mālō**), **cupiō, videor** (*seem*), **cōnor, audeō, dēbeō** (*owe, ought*), **cōnsuēvī** (*am accustomed*, perf. of **cōnsuēscō**), **soleō, contendō, incipiō, coepī, perō, dēsinō** (*cease*), **dubitō** (*hesitate*), **cōnstituō** (*resolve* about one's self).

(*b*) **patior** (tē), **sinō** (tē), **cōgō** (tē), **jubeō** (tē), **prohibeō** (tē), **vetō** (tē).

Note:—

(1) The verbs in (*b*) take an Accusative as subject of the infinitive. **Volō** also may be used thus: **volō tē salvum esse** (but **volō salvus esse ipse**).

(2) With the passive complementary infinitive, the passive **coeptus sum** is used, not **coepī**.

(3) **Videor** and **dīcor** are used personally, not impersonally:
It seems that they came = They seem to have come:
Vēnisse videntur (*not* Eōs vēnisse vidētur, *It seems*, etc.).
It is said that he wished = He is said to have wished:
Voluisse dīcitur (*not* Eum voluisse dīcitur).

(4) *I could have gone = I was able to go:*
Potuī īre (*not* īvisse).
I ought to have sent = I owed (it as a duty) to send:
Dēbuī mittere (*not* Dēbeō mīsisse).

EXERCISE

1. They began to throw stones. 2. Stones began to be thrown. 3. We are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 4. It seems that she was not sent. 5. They could have reached shore. 6. These things you ought to have done. 7. He began to raise (collect) forces. 8. He hastened to pitch camp. 9. They never ceased to complain. 10. He resolved to attack the camp. 11. I shall not allow them to set out. 12. Since they did not dare to cross. 13. He permitted the gates to be opened. 14. We wish you to be safe (Acc.); we wish to be safe (Nom.). 15. He compelled them to surrender (themselves). 16. They were compelled to seek peace. 17. It is said they never wished. 18. It was said that they (then) wished. 19. He did not hesitate to go. 20. We can forbid you to speak, but we never could have prevented you from coming.

3

EQUIVALENTS OF THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE

(*Continued*)

1. Adverbial Final Clause —

= English Infinitive of Purpose.

2. Substantive Final Clause —

= English Complementary Infinitive.
With verbs of *asking*, etc.

1. Adverbial Final Clauses have been dealt with on page 241. Other equivalents of the English Infinitive of Purpose, namely, the Supine and the Gerund or Gerundive with **ad** or **causā**, were mentioned in this connection.

2. With verbs signifying *ask*, *persuade*, *command* (**imperō**, **mandō**, not **jubeō**), *exhort*, *warn* or *advise*, *strive* (**nītor**, not

cōnor; sometimes **contendō**), the English Complementary Infinitive is represented by a **Final Clause** (**ut**, **nē**, etc.) **weakened into a Substantive Clause used as Subject or Object**, thus: —

I ask you to go, { **Rogō tē ut eās**, primarily, *I ask you (and my purpose is) that you may go:* **Adverbial**; secondarily, *I ask you a certain thing, i.e. that you go:* **Object.**

They were persuaded not to go, { **Eīs persuāsum est nē īrent**, (*It*) *was persuaded them that they should not go:* **Subject** of Impersonal Verb.

3. Note the case governed by each of these verbs: —

Accusative	Dative
rogō (**tē**), *ask.*	**persuādeō** (**tibi**), *persuade, urge.*
ōrō, obsecrō, *beg.*	**imperō**, *command.*
(But **petō** & **tē**, *seek.*)	**praecipiō**, *warn, instruct.*
hortor, *exhort.*	**mandō**, *commission, instruct.*
moneō, *warn, advise.*	

Those that govern the Dative are used impersonally in the passive.

Distinguish the use of **jubeō** from that of **imperō**: —

(*a*) **Jubeō** takes an infinitive phrase with subject in the Accusative. **Imperō** takes a substantive **ut** or **nē** clause. It may also govern an Indirect Object in the Dative, used of the person *who receives the order.* **Imperō**, *demand*, often takes, instead of an **ut** clause, a noun in the Accusative (Direct Object), denoting the *thing demanded.*

(*b*) When the English Infinitive is passive, **imperō** may be used like **jubeō** (Acc. with Infin.).

4. Note that Sequence of Tenses must be observed in these Final Clauses.

EXAMPLES

Rogō tē ut eās. **Persuādeō tibi nē hōc faciās.**

Eum hortātus sum ut mitteret. **Imperāvit mīlitibus ut impetum facerent.**

He ordered ships to be built,

Jussit nāvēs fierī. **Imperāvit** { **ut nāvēs fierent.** / **nāvēs fierī.**

He demanded cavalry from the Gauls (*levied cavalry upon*).

Imperāvit Gallīs (Dat.) { **equitēs** (Acc.). / **ut equitēs darent.**

5. **Cōnstituō**, expressing a *resolve about another*, takes **ut**, as: **Cōnstituērunt ut cōnsulēs proficīscerentur**, but **Cōnsulēs cōnstituērunt proficīscī.**

6. Distinguish (1) **persuādeō tibi ut eās**, *I persuade you to go* (**Verbum efficiendī**); (2) **persuādeō tibi mē nōn posse īre**, *I persuade* (*convince*) *you that I cannot go* (**Verbum dēclārandī**).

EXERCISE

A

1. Ambassadors came to seek peace, (*a*) **ut**, (*b*) **ad**, (*c*) **causā**, (*d*) Supine. 2. They will prepare to build ships. 3. He compelled them to surrender. 4. He persuades them to come. 5. They will advise us not to set out. 6. I have asked (**rogō**) you to believe me. 7. They begged (**ōrō**) him to spare the women and children. 8. They requested him (**petō ab**) not to advance farther. 9. They were ordered to return, (*a*) **jubeō**, (*b*) **imperō**. 10. He ordered ambassadors to be sent. (*a*) **jubeō**, (*b*) **imperō**. 11. He ordered them to send. 12. He demanded hostages from them. 13. I demand books from you. 14. He exhorted the soldiers not to forget their valor. 15. I warn you (pl.) not to hurt any one. 16. Let us strive (**nītor**) to conquer. 17. We

shall try (**cōnor**) to cross. 18. He hastened (**contendō**) to reach camp. 19. He persuaded them that the enemy were coming. 20. They could not persuade him to order the gates to be closed.

B (REVIEW)

1. He said that they could. 2. He hoped that they would go. 3. He gave orders that ships should be sent. 4. He built a bridge to frighten (**terreō**) the Germans. 5. He compelled them to remain at home. 6. He persuaded them not to fear (**timeō**). 7. They thought (that) he would grant peace. 8. They requested that he would send aid. 9. Fighting is not conquering. 10. I ask you to come; I wish you to come.

4

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

Adverbial Clauses of Result have been discussed on page 268.

1. Adverbial Clauses of Result are sometimes w kened into Substantive Clauses acting as Subject or Obje ... such verbs or phrases as: —

accidit,
ēvenit,
contingit,
fit,
} *it happens.*

sequitur, *it follows.*

restat,
reliquum est,
} *it remains.*

accēdit, *it is added.*
efficiō, *effect, make possible.*
impetrō, *obtain (a request or desire).*
fierī potest, *it is possible.*

The phrase **id agō ut,** *I make it my aim to,* though it expresses Purpose, may be mentioned here.

Efficiō and **impetrō** are partly *final* and partly *consecutive;* the negative with these may be **nē** or **ut nōn.**

Accēdit often takes a Substantive Clause introduced by **quod**, *the fact that.*

2. **Tantum abest**, *it is so far from*, takes two Clauses of Result: (1) A Substantive Clause as Subject, stating *what is so far;* (2) an Adverbial Clause, stating the *consequence of its being so far;* as: —

Tantum abest ut ego tibi invideam ut tē miserrimum esse existimem, *So far am I from envying you (my envying is so far from being the case) that I think you most wretched.*

EXERCISE

1. That night it happened that there was a full moon. 2. How happens it (**Quī fit**) that you cannot tell me? 3. We happened to be present (impersonal). 4. It remains for me now to speak about the choice of a commander (*that I speak about choosing, etc.*, Gerundive). 5. To this (**hūc**) was added the fact that he could not go (**ut**); that he had said this (**quod** with Indic.). 6. He made it possible for the river to be crossed (*effected that it could*). 7. He could not obtain permission to stay in Gaul (*that it should be permitted him to*, **licet**). 8. It is impossible that he is telling an untruth (**mentior**). 9. So far are we from wishing him to conquer, that we are even helping his enemies. 10. I shall enable you to understand.

CASES

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE. — APPOSITION

1. A Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun may be a Subjective Predicate in the Nominative Case, completing any of the following verbs: —

(1) *be, become, seem;*

(2) the Passive of *make, choose* (or *appoint*), *call, deem* (*think, regard*).

These verbs in the Active take two Accusatives; see page 333.

2. This applies to the complement of the infinitives, **esse, fierī, vidērī,** with such Modal verbs as **possum, volō, incipiō,** etc., as **Caesar rēx fierī nōlēbat.**

3. With the Accusative and Infinitive construction, the Predicate Nominative becomes, of course, the Predicate Accusative, as: —

Vir sapiēns est.
Dicit virum sapientem esse.

4. An Appositive agrees with its antecedent in **Case**; where possible, also in **Gender**, *e.g.* in such nouns as **magister, magistra**; **victor, victrix**; **dominus, domina.**

Vocabulary

dēligō, *choose.*
appellō, vocō, *call, name.*
ēligō, creō, *elect, appoint.*
putō, dūcō, habeō, existimō, jūdicō, *think, deem, regard.*

EXERCISE

1. He will be chosen leader. 2. They wished to be informed. 3. Cicero was called father of his country. 4. Let us try *to be*, rather (**potius**) than *to seem*, wise. 5. His father had been styled a friend by the Senate. 6. It seems that he was created consul. 7. It is said that they became rich. 8. He denied that he wished to become king. 9. How great is the island? 10. He was aware how large the waves were. 11. He found out what the island was like. 12. Of the river Rhine. 13. By Cicero the consul. 14. Rome was mistress of Italy. 15. We owe much to Greece, the conqueror of the Persians. 16. With the soldiers (as)[1] victors. 17. I know that he wishes to be thought happy. 18. (As) a boy I did many things which, (as) an old man, I shall not do.

[1] The English *as* is often to be taken as the sign of Apposition.

THE GENITIVE CASE

The Genitive is used chiefly with nouns, and is, therefore, essentially the *Adjective* case. It may be used also with certain adjectives and verbs.

6

The Genitive with Nouns

Rule. — A noun, not an Appositive, used to limit or define the application of another noun, is put in the Genitive.

The noun in the Genitive is really an Adjectival Modifier of the limited noun.

The primitive notion of the Genitive was *Source* or *Origin*. From this developed the ideas of *Family Ownership* (*Possession*), *Authorship*, *Material*, *Quality*. Note that the history of the Eng. *of* (= *off*, *from*) shows an exact parallel to the Latin and Greek Genitive; e.g. *of a child* = *from childhood*; *buy of* = *buy from*.

The following varieties of the Genitive with Nouns may be specified: —

1. Genitive of **Possession** (also **Authorship**).
2. **Descriptive** Genitive (**Material, Quality, Measure**).

   Under this head belongs the Genitive of Value or Price.
3. **Partitive** Genitive (more accurately Genitive **of the Whole**).
4. **Subjective** Genitive (denoting the *doer* or the *one who has a feeling*).
5. **Objective** Genitive (denoting the *object of an action or feeling*).

Notes

1. The Genitive with **causā** is a Possessive: **hominum causā** = *for man's sake*.

2. The Possessive Genitive is often used Predicatively, especially with **sum** and **fiō**, as **domus est rēgis**, *the house is the king's* = *belongs to the king*; **stulti est in errōre manēre**, *it is* (*the part or characteristic*) *of a fool to remain in error*. Note. — *Power, duty, characteristic*, etc., are not expressed in Latin.

3. Instead of the Partitive Genitive, **dē** or **ex** with the Ablative may be used, as **fidēlissimus dē servis**: **ūnus ex mīlitibus**. This is regular with **Cardinal numerals** and **quīdam**.

4. (*a*) Many Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives, as well as the Adverbs **satis** and **parum**, take a Partitive Genitive, where English does not use *of*, as **nec quicquam vestītūs**; **plūs sapientiae**; **satis pecūniae**.

(*b*) On the contrary, in such expressions as *all of us*, *three of us* (unless *us* represents a number larger than *three*), English uses the Partitive where there is no justification for it; Latin **nōs omnēs**, *we all*, etc.

(*c*) Notice that *top of*, *middle of*, *bottom of*, *end of*, are not expressed in Latin by a Noun governing a Partitive, but by an Attributive Adjective — **summus**, **medius**, **īmus**, **extrēmus**.

5. **Genitive of Quality, Measure, Characteristic, or Description.**

RULE. — The Descriptive Genitive is usually modified by some adjective of extent, such as **māgnus**, **parvus**, **summus**; or a numeral, as **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the utmost valor*; **trīduī iter** = **iter diērum trium**, *a three days' march*.

A man of valor is not **vir virtūtis**; but **vir fortis** (*a brave man*).

For the difference between the **Descriptive Genitive** and the **Descriptive Ablative**, see page 339.

6. **Genitive of Value or Price.** — The Genitive of Value or Price is a variety of the Descriptive Genitive. It is restricted to such expressions as **tantī**, **quantī**, **māgnī**, **parvī**, **māximī**, **minimī**, **plūris**, **minōris**, with **pretī** (Gen. of **pretium**, *price*) omitted. It denotes *indefinite value*. See **Ablative of Price**, page 339.

The Gen. of Value is used predicatively with the verbs **sum**, **vēndō** (*sell*), **emō** (*buy*), **aestimō** (*value*); as, **tantī est**, *it is worth while*; **quantī domum vēndidistī?** *What did you sell your house for?*

7. An **Appositional Genitive** is used occasionally, as **virtūs continentiae**, *the virtue (of) self-control*; **insula Siciliae**, *the island (of) Sicily*; **nōmen rēgis**, *the name (of) king*; **vōx voluptātis**, *the word pleasure*. It is strictly **Possessive**.

EXERCISE

A

Translate the following, and identify the use of each Genitive: —

1. Hominis amor Deī. 2. Ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis. 3. Domus Cicerōnis. 4. Māgnae auctōritātis hīc est. 5. Dextra rīpa flūminis. 6. Māgna cōpia frūmentī. 7. Talentum aurī. 8. Flūmina lactis. 9. Quantum pecūniae. 10. Helvetiōrum injūriae populī Rōmānī. 11. Fossa decem pedum. 12. Strepitus rotārum. 13. Terrōre equōrum. 14. Reliquam partem aestātis. 15. Scientia bellī. 16. Mīlitēs decimae legiōnis.

B

1. A two years' exile. 2. At the middle of the night. 3. I value your friendship very highly. 4. What did you pay for your house? 5. More time. 6. More soldiers. 7. As much trouble (**negōtium**). 8. I speak to all of you. 9. Ten of us survive (**supersum**). 10. Throughout the whole of the winter. 11. Who of you? 12. Three of us died. 13. How many of you are there? (How many are you?) 14. Three hundred soldiers. 15. Three thousand years. 16. One thousand cavalry. 17. A man of wisdom. 18. A very wise man (two translations). 19. It belongs to a king to rule. 20. It is the privilege of a citizen to obey the laws. 21. A parent's love for his children.

7

The Genitive with Adjectives

1. An Objective Genitive is used with the following Adjectives: —

(*a*) Those signifying *fulness, desire, knowledge* or *skill, participation, control,* and their opposites, as: —

perītus bellī, *skilled in war.*
impotēns suī, *without self-control.*
nōn compos mentis, *weak-minded; not having control of one's mind.*

(*b*) Certain verbal adjectives in **-ns** and **-āx**, as: —

amāns patriae, *devoted to one's country.*
tenācem prōpositī, *steadfast in purpose.*

NOTE. — Such words as **amāns**, **patiēns**, **appetēns**, used as participles, govern the same case as the verb they are derived from, as **patiēns labōrem**, *while enduring toil;* but **patiēns labōris**, *patient under toil.*

VOCABULARY

plēnus, *full.*
dīves, *rich.*
egēnus, *destitute.*
inops, *lacking.*
studiōsus, *desirous, fond.*
cupidus, *eager, covetous.*
avidus, *greedy.*
appetēns, *desirous.*
peritus, *skilled.*
imperītus, *inexperienced.*
insuētus, *unaccustomed.*
memor, *mindful.*
immemor, *heedless.*
particeps, *sharing.*
ignārus, *ignorant.*
expers, *having no share in.*

2. With **proprius**, *characteristic of;* **commūnis**, *common to;* **similis**, *like*, sometimes the Genitive, sometimes the Dative is used.

Similis: Gen. more commonly of *living objects*, especially *persons represented by pronouns*, as **similis tuī**; Dat. or Gen. of *inanimate things.*

3. With certain adjectives the poets use a *Genitive of Specification*, as **integer vītae**, *upright in life;* **aeger animī**, *sick at heart.*

EXERCISE

1. Life is full of dangers. 2. Rich in resources. 3. Fond of waging war. 4. Eager for glory and greedy of praise. 5. Skilled in the military art. 6. Mindful of us. 7. Forgetful of self (**oblītus**). 8. Unmindful of you (pl.). 9. Free from blame. 10. Sharing in public counsel. 11. Unused to sailing. 12. Versed in literature. 13. Lacking refinement. 14. Void of all shame. 15. Destitute of hope and friends. 16. Very like his father. 17. Common to mankind. 18. Like a dream.

8

The Genitive with Verbs

The Genitive is used with the following: —

1. **Memini, Reminiscor, Recordor, Oblīviscor, Miserеor,** *Remember, Forget, Pity.* See page 212.

2. **Admoneō, Commoneō, Commonefaciō,** *Remind, Admonish.*

These take an Accusative of the Person, and sometimes a Genitive of the Thing. In Cicero, however, they invariably take **dē** with the Ablative of the Thing. A neuter pronoun or adjective, used substantively, is put in the Accusative, as **hōc tē admoneō.**

3. **Verbs of Judicial Action,** signifying *Accuse, Convict, Acquit, Condemn.*

These take an Accusative of the *Person* and Genitive of the *Charge.* Verbs of *Condemning* also take an Ablative of the *Penalty*, as: —

(1) **Eum capitis (prōditiōnis) condemnāvērunt,** *They convicted him of a capital offence (of treason).*

(2) **Eum capite (pecūniā) damnāvērunt,** *They condemned him to death (to pay a fine).*

accūsō, *I accuse;* **absolvō,** *I acquit.*

4. **Certain Impersonal Verbs of Feeling: —**

pudet, paenitet, miseret, taedet, piget, signifying *shame, repentance, pity, weariness, disgust.*

These take the Accusative of the *Person* and the Genitive of the *Cause*, as: —

Mē pudet tuae stultitiae, *I am ashamed of your folly.*

pudet mē, *I am ashamed.*
paenitēbit tē, *you will repent.*
taedēbat eum, *he was wearied.*
cum nōs ējus misereat, *since we pity him.*
vōs piget, *you are disgusted.*
miserēmur ējus = nōs ējus miseret, *we pity him.*

Note. — (*a*) **Miserеor** (Personal Passive) and **Miserēscō** take a Genitive of the *Cause.* (*b*) A Neuter or an Infinitive may act as Subject, as **hōc tē pudet; mē paenitet hōc fēcisse.**

5. **Interest** and **Rēfert**, *It concerns, it is important.*

With these verbs the following points are to be observed: —

(*a*) The *person concerned:* usually the Genitive.

(*b*) The *matter of concern:* may be (1) a Neuter Pronoun; (2) an Infinitive or Infinitive Phrase; (3) a Clause (Dependent Question or **ut** Clause of Purpose).

(*c*) The *degree of concern:* (1) Genitive of Value (**māgnī, parvī,** etc.); (2) an Adverb (**māgnopere, magis,** etc.); (3) a Neuter Accusative of Extent (**multum, plūs,** etc.).

NOTE. — Instead of the Genitive of a Personal Pronoun, **meī, tuī,** etc., the **Ablative Sing. Fem. of the Possessive Adjective** (**meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā**) is used, as: —

Hōc cīvium interest, *This concerns the citizens;* but, **Hōc nostrā rēfert,** *This concerns us.* (However, **omnium nostrum interest,** *it concerns us all.*)

Rēfert seldom takes the Genitive.

TYPES

Meā (**ējus, eōrum**) **māgnī** (**māgnopere, multum**)
interest hōc
tē hōc facere.
ut hōc faciās.
quandō id factūrus sīs.

6. **The Predicate Genitive** of Possession, Characteristic, Quality, or Value has been treated under the Genitive with Nouns.

EXERCISE

1. He warned them not to forget their valor. 2. I shall remind you of these things. 3. They were admonished of the danger. 4. They will sentence him to death. 5. He was convicted of extortion (**rēs repetundae**). 6. Let him be acquitted of (the charge of) treason. 7. I ask who is ashamed to defend his country. 8. Let us pity the poor. 9. Let us not weary in well doing. 10. Are you

sorry for having said such [illegible] (*to have said*)? 11. It concerns the state, not me. 12. What mattered it to them what others thought? 13. He said that it concerned him more than others. 14. It is exceedingly important to him that the enemy should cross, — to Caesar, to us, to the soldiers, to the commonwealth, to you, to me, to them, to all.

II

THE DATIVE CASE

The Dative with Verbs

1. Indirect Object

1. The Dative may be used as the Indirect Object (*a*) of a Transitive Verb, along with an Accusative as Direct Object, (*b*) of an Intransitive Verb.

The Dative is used with many **compounds of the following prepositions**: —

ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super.

EXAMPLES

(*a*) Transitive compounds: —

Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnō, } *I put honor before money,*
Pecūniam pudōrī posthabeō, } *I prefer honor to money.*
Bellum tibi indicō (inferō), *I declare (wage) war upon you.*
Lēgātōs exercitui praeficit, *He puts lieutenants over (at the head of, in command of) the army.*

(*b*) Intransitive compounds: —

Compounds of the verb **sum**, as: —

adsum, *am present.*	**obsum,** *am hurtful.*
dēsum, *am lacking.*	**prōsum,** *am serviceable.*
intersum, *take part in.*	**praesum,** *am at the head of.*

Also many other compounds, as: **occurrō,** *meet, encounter;*

subveniō, succurrō, *come to the aid of, succor;* **appropinquō,** *approach.*

Dōnō and **circumdō** admit of two constructions: —

(1) Acc. of the *Thing given or put*, and Dat. of the *Person or Thing affected*: —

Librum tibi dōnō, *I present a book to you.*
Mūrum urbī circumdat, *He puts a wall around the city.*

(2) Abl. of the *Thing given or put*, and Acc. of the *Person or Thing affected*: —

Librō tē dōnō, *I present you with a book.*
Mūrō urbem circumdat, *He surrounds the city with a wall.*

2. Many verbs that are Transitive in English are Intransitive in Latin, and govern a Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage. They are such as the following: —

(1) *Envy, spare, persuade, pardon, believe, favor, aid, indulge, threaten.*

(2) *Command* or *obey; serve* or *resist; benefit* or *injure; please* or *displease.*

(For Vocabulary, see page 212.)

Irāscor, *I am angry at*, and **studeō,** *am fond of, devoted to*, take the Dative.

I threaten you with death = **mortem tibi minor** (*I threaten death to you*).

I supply you with money = **pecūniam tibi suppeditō** (*I supply money to you*).

Note. — The Passive of intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. See page 265.

3. Some verbs govern a Dative or an Accusative, with a difference of meaning, as: —

Cōnsulō tē, *I consult you;* **cōnsulō tibi,** *I consult your interest.* Similarly **vereor, timeō, metuō,** Acc. *fear;* Dat. *fear for;* **caveō tē,** *I guard against you;* **caveō tibi,** *I safeguard you;* **prospiciō, prōvideō,** Acc. *foresee;* Dat. *provide for;* **temperō,** Acc. *govern, direct;* Dat., of things, *restrain;* of persons, *spare.*

2. Dative of Interest or Reference

Including Dative of **Possession** and Dative of the **Agent**

1. The Dative of Interest or Reference denotes the *person or thing concerned or indirectly affected.* It modifies the verb less closely than does the Indirect Object, rather qualifying the general force of the sentence, as: **Spem mīlitibus minuit,** *It lessened hope for the soldiers.*

This includes the **Ethical Dative**, a very vague Dative of Interest, as: **Cūr mihi hōc fēcistī?** *Why, tell me, did you do this?* **Quid sibi vult?** *What does he mean?*

2. The **Dative of Possession** with the verb **sum** is a Dative of Interest, as: **Mihi nōmen est Cāiō,** *My name is Caius.*

NOTE. — **Cāiō** is attracted into the Dative.

Distinguish: —

Liber mihi (eī) est, *I have (he has) a book.*
Liber meus (ējus) est, *The book is mine (his).*

3. The Dative of the **Agent** with the Gerundive has been explained on page 221 as a Dative of Interest.

4. One species of the Dative of Interest is used with verbs of *taking away,* instead of an Ablative of Separation, as: —

Gladium tibi ēripiō, *I snatch the sword from you* (literally *for you;* colloquial "*on you*").

3. Double Dative

(1) **Purpose or Tendency,** (2) **Interest**

The Double Dative is illustrated in the following examples: —

Hōc māgnō ūsuī Gallis est, *This is of great service to the Gauls.*

Quinque cohortēs praesidiō nāvibus reliquit, *He left five cohorts (to act) as a guard to the ships.*

In the foregoing examples, **ūsuī** and **praesidiō** are the Dative of **Tendency** or **Purpose** and **Gallīs** and **nāvibus** are the Dative of **Interest**.

The Dative of Purpose may be used alone, as: —

Locum castrīs dēlēgērunt, *They chose a place for a camp.*

4. Poetical Dative of Motion

In poetry the Dative is freely used instead of **ad** with the Accusative to denote the *limit* or *object of motion*, as: —

Multōs dēmittimus Orcō, *We send many to Hades.*
It clāmor caelō, *The clamor rises to heaven.*

The Dative with Adjectives

A Dative of Interest is used with adjectives signifying *friendly, unfriendly; like, unlike; equal, near, fit, suitable, useful.*

Similis, *like*, and **proprius**, *characteristic of*, may also take the Genitive, see page 324.

Propior, **proximus**, *nearer, next*, like the prepositional adverb **prope**, may take the Accusative.

Aptus and **idōneus** more commonly take **ad** and the Accusative.

Ūtilis (Dat.), *useful to (a person)*; (**ad** and Acc.), *useful for (a purpose)*.

EXERCISE

A

(Indirect Object)

1. He appointed Brutus in command of the fleet. 2. Brutus commanded (**praesum**) the ships. 3. He had put Labienus in charge of the work of building ships. 4. The senate declared war upon Caesar. 5. Caesar waged war upon the senate (**bellum īnferō**). 6. The Britons had aided the Gauls (1. **adjuvō**; 2. **subveniō**). 7. He came upon (**occurrō**) the soldiers already fighting. 8. He surrounded the camp with a rampart and ditch. 9. They wished to

present Caesar with a crown. 10. He ordered each one to look out for himself (**cōnsulō**). 11. The Belgae are next the Germans. 12. The boy is very like his father. 13. He did not wish to encounter (**occurrō**) a more serious war.

B

(*Impersonal Passive*)

1. I am envied; you are avoided. 2. They were persuaded to go. 3. They are ordered to set out (1. **jubeō**; 2. **imperō**). 4. The poor will be spared. 5. Caesar will be obeyed. 6. Caesar will be feared. 7. He feared the sea. 8. They feared for the state. 9. Your interests will be consulted. 10. He gave orders that no one should be injured.

C

(*Double Dative*)

1. This is a great disgrace to the citizens. 2. The fleet was a means of safety to the city. 3. He came to the aid of his brother. 4. I present this to you as a gift. 5. He was an object of hatred to the Romans. 6. They will act (*be*) as a guard to the camp. 7. All these things were of great service (**ūsus**) to Caesar for building ships. 8. I impute (**vertō**) this to you as a fault.

D

(*Special Verbs*)

1. Caesar snatched a shield from one soldier. 2. He provided for winter. 3. He foresaw a great lack of food. 4. He provided (**comparō**) a corn supply (**rēs frūmentāria**). 5. Beware of rashness. 6. I will safeguard you. 7. He could not restrain (**temperō**) his tears. 8. Neptune governs the tempests. 9. Caesar has (**sum**) an army. 10. The army is Caesar's.

10

THE ACCUSATIVE

1. Direct Object

1. Verbs that govern a Direct Object are Transitive. The Direct Object may denote (*a*) the Person or Thing Affected or (*b*) the Result, as: —

(*a*) **Hostēs vicit.** **Epistolam misit.**

(*b*) **Epistolam scripsit.** **Pontem aedificāvit.**

2. Many verbs of *Feeling, Taste, Smell,* which are intransitive in English, are Transitive in Latin, as: —

lugeō, doleō, *grieve for;* **rideō,** *laugh at;* **horreō,** *shudder at;* **dēspērō,** *despair of;* **miror,** *wonder at;* **sapiō,** *taste of;* **oleō, redoleō,** *smell of.*

Salūtem dēspērō, *I despair of safety.*

3. Many intransitive verbs make transitive Compounds, as: —

trānseō, *cross;* **advenio, adeō,** *reach, go to* (but **perveniō ad**); **percurrō,** *traverse;* **circumstō,** *surround;* **conveniō,** *meet, call upon, interview.*

4. Compounds of certain prepositions (especially **trāns**), if from transitive verbs, may take two Accusatives, one governed by the simple verb, the other by the preposition, as: —

Exercitum flūmen trānsdūxit = Exercitum trāns flūmen dūxit.

5. The **Cognate Accusative** is a Direct Object of Result, conveying a meaning *akin to that of the verb.* The verb is one that is otherwise intransitive, as: —

Vītam beātam vivō, *I live a happy life;* **illud glōrior,** *I make this boast;* **eadem peccat,** *he makes the same mistakes.*

The Adverbial Accusative (as **multum valet**) and the Accusative of Extent are varieties of this Accusative of Result. It is sometimes called the Accusative of the Inner Object, as opposed to the Accusative denoting that which is affected or the Accusative of the Outer Object.

2. Two Accusatives — Primary and Secondary Object

PERSON AND THING

1. Verbs signifying *ask, teach, conceal,* usually take two Objects in the Accusative: the Person (Primary Object) and the Thing (Secondary Object), as: —

Rogō tē sententiam tuam, *I ask you (for) your opinion.*

rogō, *ask, ask for;* **interrogō,** *inquire;* **poscō,** *demand;* **ōrō, implōrō, obsecrō,** *beg, entreat;* **doceō,** *teach;* **cēlō,** *conceal, keep in the dark.* Also **moneō,** *warn;* **admoneō,** *admonish,* when the Thing is expressed by a Neuter Pronoun, as **hōc tē moneō** (see page 316).

2. Some verbs of this class admit of other constructions, as: —

Interrogō, cēlō, doceō dē (of the Thing); **poscō, flāgitō ab** (of the Person).

Always **quaerō ab** or **ex** (of the Person); **petō ā tē,** *I seek from you;* **postulō ā tē,** *I demand of you.*

3. With the Passive of these verbs various constructions occur. Usually with the Passive of **rogō** and verbs of *teaching,* the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject Nominative, and the Accusative of the Thing is *retained,* as, **(tū) rogāris sententiam.**

Those that may take **ab, dē,** or **ex** in the Active commonly do so in the Passive.

3. Two Accusatives — Object and Predicate

SAME PERSON OR SAME THING

1. Active verbs signifying *make, choose, appoint; name, call; think, deem, regard,* take two Accusatives of the Same Person or the Same Thing, one an Object and the other an Objective Predicate, as: —

Eum rēgem dēlēgērunt, *They chose him king.*

2. With the Passive of these verbs the Object becomes

the Subject Nominative; the Predicate Accusative becomes the Predicate Nominative, as: —

(Is) **rēx dēlēctus est**, *He was chosen king.*

faciō (passive **fīō**), *make;* **creō, dēligō, legō**, *appoint, choose;* **appellō, vocō, nōminō**, *call, name;* **exīstimō, putō, arbitror dūcō, habeō, jūdicō**, *think, deem, regard.*

4. Accusative of Extent

Extent of space and duration of time are expressed by the Accusative, as: —

Tria mīllia passuum aberant, *They were three miles distant.*
Tōtam noctem dormiēbat, *He slept all night.*

Per with the Accusative is sometimes used instead of the Accusative of Extent.

5. Accusative of Respect or Specification

Often in poetry, rarely in prose, an Accusative of the *part affected* or *referred to* is used adverbially to modify a verb or adjective, as: —

Manūs revinctus, *bound as to his hands;* **ōs deō similis**, *like a god in countenance.*

This is a development of the Accusative of Extent. Similarly, **Māximam partem lacte et pecore vivunt**, *For the most part they live on milk and meat.* Its free use in poetry is an imitation of the Greek. The Adverbial Accusatives **multum, id aetātis** (*of that age*), **id temporis** (*at that time*), etc., are of the same class.

6. Accusative of Limit of Motion

The Accusative may denote the point *aimed at* or *reached:* —

(1) with the preposition **ad** or **in**;

(2) without a preposition, in names of towns, small islands, **domus, rūs**, as: —

Ad urbem vēnit; **Rōmam profectus est**; **domum rediit.**

The Supine of Purpose exhibits the same use of the Accusative.

7. Accusative in Exclamations

The Accusative, usually modified by an Adjective, is found in exclamations, as: —

Mē miserum! *Ah, wretched me!*

8. Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive

The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative case.

9. Accusative with Prepositions

Many prepositions, such as **ad, ante, inter, ob, per, circum, propter**, etc., govern the Accusative. See page 273.

EXERCISE

A

1. The fish tastes of the sea. 2. The air smells of flowers. 3. They had already despaired of victory. 4. They laughed at his folly. 5. Let us not shudder at death. 6. He instructs him to visit the island (**adeō**). 7. He reached the town (1. **advenīō**, 2. **perveniō**). 8. The army was led across (**trānsdūcō**) the river. 9. He inquired of the old woman the price of the books. 10. They asked Caesar for peace (1. **rogō**, 2. **petō**). 11. He concealed his opinion from his friends. 12. Caesar was asked for peace (1. **rogō**, 2. **petō**).

B

1. He was taught literature. 2. He will go to the country to live (**habitō**). 3. They were not regarded (as) happy. 4. Let us not regard such a man (as) wise. 5. They informed Caesar. 6. Caesar was informed. 7. He kept the Gauls in the dark as to his plans. 8. The Gauls were kept in the dark as to his plans. 9. He waited for the cavalry. 10. They will look at the stars. 11. They make this boast. 12. We grieve over the calamities of our friends. 13. He set out for Athens, for Greece, for home, to his army, for Rome, for Italy.

11

THE ABLATIVE

The uses of the Ablative unite those of three cases originally distinct. These uses shade into one another, and subdivide as follows: —

I. Ablative Proper, the *Whence* case.

1. **Separation** or motion *from*,
   (*a*) *of place*; with a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, **ex**; without a preposition, names of towns, etc.
   (*b*) with verbs of *depriving*, etc.
2. **Source or Origin**
   with participles denoting *birth*, as **nātus deō**; usually without a preposition; but **ex** is used with pronouns, and **ab** to denote *remote ancestry*.
3. **Agent.** Note. — **Ab**, translated *by*, really means *from*.
4. **Comparison**, instead of **quam** with Nominative or Accusative. Note that **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, may omit **quam** without affecting the construction.
5. **Cause.**
   Multa cupiditāte fēcit, *He did many things through greed.*

II. Instrumental, the *How* case.

1. **Means, Instrument**;
2. **Manner, Accompaniment, Attendant Circumstance**;
3. **Degree of Difference** (with comparatives);
4. **Description** (always modified by an Adjective or Genitive);
5. **Price** (the definite *means* of barter or exchange; with **emō**, **vēndō**, **vēnueō**, **parō**, **mūtō**);
6. **Specification**, denoting that *in respect to which* something is or is done, as **mājor nātū**; **virtūte praestant.**

III. Locative, denoting place, situation; the *Where* case.

1. **Place** *in*, *at*, or *on* which:
   (*a*) commonly with **in**.
   (*b*) without **in**, in names of towns; **domus**, **rūs**; and phrases containing **locus** and **tōtus**.

2. **Time** *when* or *within which* (without a preposition).

Intrā, with Acc., may also express *time within which*.

3. **Ablative Absolute**.

Special Constructions

1. The Ablative of Separation without a preposition is used with: —

(*a*) Verbs signifying *free* (**līberō**, **solvō**); *deprive, strip* (**spoliō**, **nūdō**, **exuō**); *need, lack* (**egeō**, **careō**).

(*b*) Adjectives signifying *free, empty, bare*, as **līber**, **vacuus**, **nūdus**.

Pellō, *banish*, and **prohibeō**, *prevent*, often omit the preposition **ab** or **ex**. Compounds of **ab** or **ex** more frequently omit the preposition before the noun.

2. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor**, are modified by an Ablative of Means or Instrument, as: —

Pāce fruimur, *We enjoy* (*ourselves by means of*) *peace.*

Potior sometimes takes the Genitive, as **tōtius Galliae potīrī**, *gain control of all Gaul.*

Fīdō and its compounds take (*a*) an Ablative of the Thing, (*b*) a Dative of the Person, as: **tibi cōnfīdō**; **virtūte cōnfīdēbant.**

3. The following adjectives are modified by an Ablative of Cause or Means: **dignus**, *worthy;* **indignus**, *unworthy;* **contentus**, *contented;* **frētus**, *supported by, relying on.*

With **dignus** and **indignus** the Ablative may be regarded as one of Specification.

Līber, *free;* **vacuus**, *empty;* **nūdus**, *bare*, take an Ablative of Separation.

4. **Opus est** and **ūsus est**, *there is need, necessity*, have the following construction: —

1. Ablative of Means for the *Thing* needed;
2. Dative of Interest for the *Person* concerned; as:

Exercitū mihi opus est, *I need an army.*

A neuter pronoun as Subject may denote the Thing needed, as: **Hōc opus est**; **ea quae opus sunt.**

The Thing needed is sometimes expressed by the Ablative of a Perfect Passive Participle used as a noun, as: **Opus est properātō, cōnsultō, factō**, *There is need of haste, deliberation, action.*

5. The Ablative of Manner without a preposition is used when the Ablative is modified by an adjective or Genitive; when the noun is not so modified, **cum** and the Ablative of Accompaniment are used, as: —

Māgnā gravitāte loquitur, *He speaks with great dignity.*
Cum gravitāte loquitur, *He speaks with dignity.*

Māgnō cum perīculō is an exceptional phrase.

Note the following phrases: —

Meā sententiā, *in my opinion;* **mōre suō**, *according to their own custom;* **suā sponte**, *of their own accord.*

6. The Ablative of Attendant Circumstance can scarcely be distinguished from that of Manner. The following are clear examples: —

Bonīs auspiciis vēnit, *He came under good auspices.*
Māximō imbrī vēnit, *He came amid a heavy shower.*

7. The Ablative of Accompaniment takes **cum**, as: —

Cum exercitū profectus est, *He set out with an army.*

Certain military expressions omit **cum** when the Ablative is modified by some adjective other than a numeral, as: —

Omnibus cōpiis, *with all his forces;* **māgnā manū**, *with a large band;* but always **cum duābus legiōnibus.**

8. The Ablative of Description or Quality must be modified by an adjective or Genitive, as: —

Bonō animō sunt, *They are of good courage.*

A man of courage must be expressed by an adjective, *a courageous man.*

No fixed rule can be given for the use of the Descriptive Ablative as compared with the Descriptive Genitive. Still it may be said that *transient* and *physical* characteristics are apt to be expressed by the Ablative; *permanent* and *moral* qualities by the Genitive.

Expressions of *number* and *measure* have the Genitive.

Study the following list of phrases: —

DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE	DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE
vir summae virtūtis,	**hominēs ingentī corporum māgnitūdine,**
trēs mīlle colōrum,	**vir summā reī militāris scientiā,**
tridui via,	**vir summō ingeniō,**
fossa quindecim pedum,	**capillō sunt prōmissō,**
māgni labōris sunt,	**vir māgnā prūdentiā,**
ējus modi vir.	**tenuī valētūdine fuit.**

9. The Ablative of Price or Definite Means of Exchange is used with verbs of *buying, selling,* and *exchanging,* as: **vēndō,** *sell;* **vēneō,** *am sold;* **emō,** *buy;* **parō,** *procure;* **mūtō,** *exchange.*

The Genitive of Price or Value is used to denote the Indefinite Value; and only in the following expressions: —

Māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, māximī, minimī, plūris, minōris.

With verbs of *exchanging,* the *thing received* is usually treated as the price or means of exchange, as: **pācem bellō mūtāmus,** *We exchange peace for war.*

But in poetry and in late Latin the reverse is sometimes the case.

10. The Ablative of the Way by which is an Ablative of Means, as: **His regiōnibus iter fēcērunt,** *They marched through these regions.*

11. The Ablative of Specification is used without a preposition, as: **Cēterōs virtūte praestant,** *They surpass the rest in valor.*

12. The Ablative Absolute and Ablative of Difference have been discussed elsewhere. See pages 190 and 99. The former is an Ablative of Situation (Locative), shading into an Ablative of Manner or Circumstance (Instrumental); the latter an Ablative of Means.

EXERCISES ON THE ABLATIVE

A

Translate the following, distinguishing Cause, Source, Means, Instrument, Manner, or Circumstance. Indicate also where any of these seem to shade into each other:—

1. Cum silentiō audītī sunt (why **cum**?). 2. Quae rēs et cibī genere et lībertāte vītae vīrēs alit. 3. Aeger vulneribus. 4. Jussū Caesaris vēnērunt. 5. Arte, nōn vī, hostēs superāvit. 6. Summīs vīribus contendere. 7. Vir summō locō nātus. 8. Bonā tuā veniā hōc faciam. 9. Eā condiciōne mittitur. 10. Ferrō et īgnī agrōs vāstāvit. 11. Gladiō occīsus est. 12. Sēsē castrīs tenēbat. 13. Pedibus pugnābant.

B

(Separation, Cause, Means)

1. He came from the wall, out of the town, down from the hill, from Rome. 2. He was banished from the state. 3. They were expelled from their territories. 4. He left (**excēdō**) the city. 5. He set out from the city. 6. They stripped (**nūdō**) the wall of defenders. 7. He was robbed of his money and stripped (**exuō**) of his clothing. 8. He did this through fear. 9. He will gain possession of the camp. 10. They relied upon the multitude of ships. 11. They feed on flesh and milk, not on corn. 12. He lacks prudence. 13. They were hindered from agriculture. 14. They were three miles from town.

C

(Opus est, usus est; Manner, Accompaniment, Description)

1. Caesar will need more forces. 2. They use horses whenever there is occasion for speed. 3. They needed ships rather than men. 4. There is need of deliberation, of haste, of [illegible] (something). 5. He set out with an army; with [illegible] great watchfulness (**diligentiā**). 6. They [illegible] (**summae cōpiae**). 7. He was a [illegible] age. 8. He was a man of little wisdom and [illegible] 9. They were people (*not populus*) of huge bodily size and great strength.

D

(Description, Specification, Manner)

1. He was (a person) of great influence among his (people). 2. A man of low stature. 3. They spoke in a loud voice. 4. They crossed in a few hours. 5. They fought on sea and land. 6. He came in great haste. 7. He was easily superior in cavalry. 8. In this manner he conquered. 9. A ten days' march. 10. In a more suitable place. 11. In all Gaul. 12. Skilled in war. 13. Lame (**claudus**) in one foot. 14. Relying upon their speed and strength. 15. They sought peace with hands outstretched (**passus**).

E

(Price)

1. He sold his country for gold. 2. At what price will you sell your house? 3. Why do you wish to exchange (life in) the city for (that in) the country? 4. The house sold high (*was sold*). 5. They procure beasts of burden at an enormous (**impēnsus**, *unweighed*) figure. 6. They exchanged cattle for lands. 7. I value your friendship very highly. 8. Your house is not worth as much as mine. 9. He has sold; the house sold high; will be sold cheap. 10. I bought it for more; for two talents.

12

PLACE

1. The relations of Place, Where, Whither, Whence, are usually expressed in Latin by *the appropriate case assisted by a preposition*, as: —

(1) *in, at, on* (Where); **in** and the Locative Ablative; (2) *to, into* (Whither); **ad, in,** and the Accusative of Motion; (3) *from, out of* (Whence); **ab, ex,** and the Ablative of Separation.

in summō monte; ad īmum collem; ab oppidō.

2. With Names of Towns, Cities, and many Small Islands, also with **domus** and **rūs**, the following should be noted: —

(1) No preposition is used; (2) Place Where is expressed by the Locative (Genitive or Ablative).

Locative Genitive in Nouns of the First or Second Declension Singular; **Locative Ablative** in all other Nouns.

Domī, rūrī, humī (*on the ground*), **vesperī** (*in the evening*), **herī** (*yesterday*), **mīlitiae** (*in military service*), are Locatives.

Rōmam, domum, rūs, *to Rome*, etc.; **Rōmā, domō, rūre,** *from Rome*, etc.; **Rōmae, domī, rūrī, Karthāgine, Corinthī, Athēnis,** *in Rome, at home*, etc.

Apposition

3. (*a*) The Name of a Town may stand in apposition to a preceding **urbs** or **oppidum**, as **in urbe Rōmā** = **Rōmae** (Loc.).

(*b*) If the Name precedes in the Locative, **urbs** or **oppidum** takes the preposition, as: —

Rōmae in urbe Ītaliae, *in Rome, a city of Italy.*
Curibus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, *from Cures, a town of the Sabines.*

4. **Ad, ab,** or **apud** is used with the proper case to express *vicinity*, as: —

apud Rōmam, *near Rome;* **ad Athēnās**, *to the vicinity of Athens.*

5. *He came to Caesar at Rome = He came to Rome to Caesar.* **Rōmam ad Caesarem vēnit.**

Time

1. Time *when* is expressed by the Ablative.

2. Time *how long* is expressed by the Accusative.

3. Time *within which* is expressed by (*a*) the Ablative, (*b*) **intrā** with the Accusative, as: —

hīs decem diēbus = intrā hōs decem diēs.

4. Time *by which* is expressed by **ad** and the Accusative.

5. Time *for which an appointment is made* is expressed by **in** and the Accusative.

6. *Ago* is expressed by **abhinc** preceding, not following, (*a*) the Ablative of Difference or (*b*) the Accusative of Extent, as: —

ten years ago, { **abhinc decem annīs.** / " " **annōs.**

7. *After* and *before* are expressed by **post** and **ante**, used as (*a*) Prepositions with the Accusative or (*b*) Adverbs modified by the Ablative of Difference.

Very commonly the Ordinal (Accusative or Ablative) is used with **post** or **ante**, as: —

tribus diēbus post / **post trēs diēs** } = { **diē tertiō post.** / **post tertium diem.**

EXERCISE

1. In Italy, in Corinth in Athens, in Carthage, in these territories, in two days, in the summer. 2. He died five years ago. 3. He convened the Senate for the eighth day. 4. They will arrive by the ninth hour of the day. 5. In Syracuse, the largest city of Sicily; in the city of Syracuse. 6. They set out for their homes. 7. At your home. 8. In an old house (abl.). 9. They came to him in the camp. 10. I have not seen him these ten years. 11. He crossed in a few hours. 12. His brother was slain ten years afterwards (four translations). 13. Not many years ago. 14. Six months before. 15. At Naples, to Naples, at Brundusium. 16. He lived in Carthage; he came from Carthage.

13

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Independent Uses

The Subjunctive may be used: —

I. In a Principal Clause or Independent Sentence.
II. In a Subordinate Clause.

The Independent Uses of the Subjunctive are as follows: —

I. Volitive (**volō**, *I will*); expressing *determination* (Negative **nē**): —

(*a*) Hortative; of an Exhortation: **Nē dēspērēmus**, *Let us not despair.*

(*b*) Jussive; of a Command: **Jūstitia fiat**, *Let justice be done.*

The Subjunctive of Purpose is of the Volitive variety.

II. Optative (**optō**, *I wish, pray*); expressing a *wish* or *desire* (Negative **nē**): **Veniat**, *May he come;* **Utinam nē vēnisset**, *Would that he had not come.*

III. Conditional or Potential, a statement of something regarded by the speaker as *possible under certain circumstances* (Negative **nōn**): —

(*a*) In the principal Clause of a Conditional Sentence, accompanied by an *if* clause.

(*b*) With the condition suppressed and only vaguely hinted at.

This is sometimes called the Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty.

1. The **Optative Subjunctive** is often introduced by **Utinam**, *Would that;* regularly so in the Imperfect or Pluperfect. There are three forms and values: —

(*a*) **Utinam veniat**, Present, *Would that he may (yet) come:* Future Possibility.

(*b*) **Utinam veniret**, Imperfect, *Would that he were (now) coming*. Contrary to Fact in the Present.

(*c*) **Utinam vēnisset**, Pluperfect, *Would that he had come*: Contrary to Fact in the Past.

NOTE. — The Imperfect is used also to denote a continuous past: **Utinam adesset**, *Would that he had been present (during a certain time)*.

2. The **Hortative Subjunctive** in Direct Discourse is used only in the Present Tense, first person plural: *Let us*, etc.

3. The **Jussive Subjunctive** in Direct Discourse is used only in the Present Tense; most commonly in the third person; rarely in the second person: —

Dicat, *Let him tell.* **Modestē vivās**, *Live temperately.*

The **Prohibitive Subjunctive**, or **Negative Jussive**, is used occasionally in the second person, Present or Perfect, when the prohibition is accompanied by *excitement* or *emotion*, as: —

Nē repugnētis, *Do not resist (I earnestly entreat or warn you)!*

Nē id dixeris, *Don't you say that!*

Nē with the Imperative is restricted to poetry and older Latin.

The common form of a prohibition in the second person is **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the Infinitive (see page 131), or **cavē nē** with the Present Subjunctive.

In the third person, **nē** with the Present Subjunctive is used.

4. For the **Conditional Subjunctive** in a principal clause, see page 355.

The **Potential Subjunctive** is really a conditional statement or an inquiry as to something conditional, the condition being only hinted at, as: —

Hōc paene dicam, *This I should almost say (if I were to say anything).*

Here belong: —

Velim (ut) scrībās, *I should like you to write*; **nōlim**, *I should be unwilling*; **mālim**, *I should prefer*; **crēdās**, *you (any one) would*

believe; **crēderēs**, *you would have believed (in the past);* **aliquis dicat** (**dixerit**), *some one may say;* **quis crēdat**, *who would believe?*

5. The **Deliberative Subjunctive** is a variety of the **Hortative**, or possibly of the **Potential**: —

Quid faciam, *What am I to do?*
Quid facerem, *What was I to do?*

EXERCISE

1. Let us go hence. 2. Would that he were present! 3. Would that they had not set out! 4. O, that he may return! 5. Let us not persuade him. 6. Whither am I to turn (myself)? 7. Am I to speak or (**an**) keep silence? 8. Granted that this is an important (**māgnus**) matter (*let it be*). 9. No one would believe such things. 10. Let no one (**quis**) believe. 11. Who would have believed? 12. This I should affirm and that deny (perf.). 13. I should like you to go (*that you go*). 14. I should have preferred to go with you.

14

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

The subordinate uses of the Subjunctive may be stated as follows: —

1. Oblique: —

   The Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse (*a*) in clauses originally subordinate; (*b*) in Indirect Questions; (*c*) in Indirect Commands.

2. Final (Purpose).

3. Consecutive (Result).

4. Causal: —

   Cum, *since;* **quod**, oblique.

5. Temporal: —

   Cum, *when;* **dum**, *until;* **priusquam**, *before.*

6. Conditional: —

   Sī, *if;* **nisi**, *unless.*

7. Concessive: —

   Quamvīs, **licet**, **cum**, *although.*

ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Examine the following:—

Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
1. **Cōnsuētūdō nostra est iīs quī bellum nōbīs inferunt resistere.**	1. (**Dixērunt**) **cōnsuētūdinem suam esse iīs quī bellum sibi inferrent resistere.**
It is our custom to resist those who wage war upon us.	(*They said*) *that it was their custom to resist those who waged war upon them.*
2. **Sī grātiam nostram vultis, cūr nōs ūtilēs esse amīcōs nōn patiminī?**	2. **Sī grātiam suam vellent, cūr sē ūtilēs esse amīcōs nōn paterentur?**
If you wish our good will, why do you not allow us to be useful friends?	*If they wished their good will, why did they not allow them to be useful friends?*
3. **Agrōs nōbīs attribuite.**	3. **Agrōs sibi attribuerent.**
Grant us lands.	*Let them grant them lands.*

(*a*) In the foregoing examples note the following changes of **Mood**:—

1. The main statement **cōnsuētūdō est** becomes, in Indirect Discourse, the Accusative with the Infinitive, **cōnsuētūdinem esse.**
2. The subordinate verbs in **quī inferunt, sī vultis,** become Subjunctive, **quī inferrent, sī vellent.**
3. The question **cūr nōn patiminī** changes its verb to the Subjunctive: **cūr nōn paterentur.**
4. The Imperative **attribuite** changes to the Subjunctive of an Indirect Command, **attribuerent.**

(*b*) Notice the changes of **Person**: **nostra** to **suam**; **nōbīs** to **sibi**; **vultis** to **vellent**; **patiminī** to **paterentur.** Note that **sibi** and **sē** (reflexive) represent the speaker or speakers.

(*c*) Notice the **Sequence of Tenses**: **inferunt** changed to **inferrent**; **vultis** to **vellent**; **attribuite** to **attribuerent**.

Summary of Rules for Indirect Discourse

1. **Mood**: (*a*) Principal Assertions (appearing as "that" clauses) take the Accusative with the Infinitive; (*b*) Questions take the Subjunctive; (*c*) Commands change the Imperative to the Subjunctive; (*d*) Subordinate Clauses take the Subjunctive.

2. **Tense**: Sequence is observed.

3. **Person**: The changes are the same as in English.

Suī, sibi, sē, represent the speaker.

Rhetorical questions are treated as assertions (Acc. with Inf.), as: **Quem hōc ferre posse?** *Who could bear this?* = **Nēminem . . . posse.**

EXERCISE

A. Rewrite the following in English Indirect Discourse (*a*) depending upon *He says;* (*b*) depending upon *He said:*—

"There can be no friendship between you and me (*to me with you*) if you wish to remain in Gaul. I will not allow those who have not been able to guard their own territories to seize other people's. Why did you leave home? Who can give lands to so great a multitude? If you wish homes, cross the Rhine and settle in the territories of your German friends. I will obtain this (favor) from them."

B. Translate into Latin, (*a*) Direct Discourse, (*b*) Indirect Discourse, in Primary and Historical Sequence.

15

FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Relative of Characteristic

Ordinary clauses of Purpose and Result have been explained on pages 241 and 268.

1. In the following examples, a Relative Pronoun or Adverb is used with the Subjunctive in a clause denoting Characteristic, where a Final or Consecutive **ut** might be a fair substitute: —

FINAL RELATIVE

Mittunt lēgātōs quī pācem petant,
(quī = ut ii)
They send envoys to seek peace.
(who would (or are to) seek)

Nōn habeō quō fugiam,
(quō = ut eō)
I have no place to flee to.
(whither I may flee)

Nōn habēbant unde pecūniam parārent,
(unde = ut inde)
They had no source from which to get money.

CONSECUTIVE RELATIVE

Nōn ego is sum quī hōc faciam,
(is quī = tālis ut ego)
I am not the man to do this.

Sunt quī crēdant,
This is found after indefinite antecedents.
There are persons who believe.
(such as to believe)

Dignus est quī laudētur,
(quī = ut is)
Used also after **idōneus** and **aptus.**
He is worthy of being praised.
(so worthy as to be)

2. A Purpose clause containing a comparative is generally introduced by **quō** (= **ut eō**), *by which* (*Abl. of Difference*); seldom by **ut.**

The old rule: —

Let **ut** translated be by **quō**
When with comparatives it does go.

Hōc fēcit quō facilius vinceret, *He did this that he might the more easily conquer.*

EXERCISE

1. They sent (men) to promise. 2. We shall send (persons) to say what we wish. 3. Ships were sent to defend the coast. 4. He left cohorts to act as a guard to the ships. 5. They had no place to betake themselves to.

6. We have no means of ascertaining these things (*we have not how*, **quŏmodo**). 7. You are not the man to speak falsely (**mentior**). 8. They were not the men to be frightened. 9. Roman knights were found to promise to slay Cicero. 10. There are (those) who wish the commonwealth to be overthrown. 11. He came that way in order to see better. 12. He waited in order that he might raise larger forces. 13. I have no ships in which (*with which*) to carry you over. 14. He is a suitable (person) for me to send (*whom I may*). 15. Your achievements are worthy of being praised. 16. I have nothing to give you. 17. There are no lands that can be given you (*such that they can*). 18. There is no one who does not fear him (*of such a kind as not to*). 19. There is nothing that he does not think about (**cōgitō dē**).

16

VERBS OF FEARING

Compare the Latin rendering of the "that" clauses in the following:—

(1) *I think that he will come*, **Arbitror eum ventūrum esse.**
(2) *I fear that he will come*, **Vereor nē veniat.**

In (1) the "that" clause is treated as a noun clause and rendered by the Accusative with the Infinitive, as after *say, know, etc.*

In (2) the "that" clause is treated in Latin as an adverbial clause of Purpose, denoting the Desire opposed to the Thing Feared: *I fear lest he may come, against his coming, my desire being "that he may not."*

(3) *I fear that he will not come*, **Vereor ut** (= **nē nōn**) **veniat.**

I fear against his not coming, lest he may not, but wishing "that he may"; I am anxious about my desire that he may.

Hence the rule:—

Vereor nē, *I fear he will* (wishing that he *may not*).
Vereor ut, *I fear he will not* (wishing that he *may*).

In Latin after verbs of Fearing, *that* = *lest* = **nē**; *that not* = *lest not* = **nē nōn** = **ut**. **Nē nōn** is sometimes used.

EXERCISE

vereor, timeō, metuō, *I fear*

(*Observe Sequence*)

1. They feared the ships would not arrive. 2. We fear you will stay in Gaul. 3. He feared they would wage war upon him (*himself*). 4. He said he feared they would not send hostages. 5. There is danger that he will not hear them. 6. It is to be feared that these things will injure some one. 7. The soldiers were afraid they would not be able to land. 8. The Britons were greatly alarmed lest he might dislodge (**submoveō**) them from the heights.

17

QUŌMINUS AND QUĪN

Quōminus

1. **Quōminus** (*by which the less*) is used instead of **nē** or **ut nōn** after verbs of *hindering*, and takes the Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

quōminus = **ut eō minus**

Per tē stetit quōminus vincerem, *It was owing to you that I did not conquer.*

Multa obstābant quōminus venirem, *Many things stood in the way of my coming, hindered me from coming.*

Prohibeō, *prevent*, usually takes the Accusative and the Infinitive, as: **Eōs trānsire prohibēbant.**

Other verbs of *hindering* are **obstō, impediō, dēterreō, recūsō** (*object*).

Quīn

2. **Quīn** (*but that*) in a subordinate clause[1] takes the Subjunctive. Its uses are as follows: —

(1) As an alternative for **quōminus** after *negative* or *virtually negative* expressions of *hindering*;

(2) After certain other *negative* or *virtually negative* expressions, chiefly those of *doubting* and *denying*;

(3) Instead of the Consecutive Relative (= **quī nōn, quod nōn**, etc.) after negatives.

NOTE. — **Quōminus** is used only after verbs of *hindering*, positive or negative; **quīn** is used after *negative* verbs of *hindering, doubting, denying*, etc.

Expressions that take **quīn**.

Nōn dubium est, *It is not doubtful.*
Nōn dubitō, *I do not doubt.*
Nēmō dubitat, *No one doubts.*
Quis dubitat, *Who doubts?*
(*Surely no one doubts.*)
Dubitārī nōn potest, *It cannot be doubted.*

Negārī nōn potest, *It cannot be denied.*
Facere nōn possum, *I cannot help.*
Fierī nōn potest, *It cannot be but that* (**quīn = ut nōn**).
Nēmō est quīn, *There is no one but* (**quīn = quī nōn**).
Quis est quīn, *Who is there but* (**quīn = quī nōn**).

Nōn recūsō quōminus (or **quīn**).
Nihil obstat quōminus (or **quīn**).

Sequence of Tenses must be observed with **quōminus** and **quīn**.

[1] **Quīn** in a principal clause with the Indicative or Imperative = *why not? nay rather; indeed.*

EXERCISE

In the following, note where **quīn** *and* **quōminus** *may be interchanged; where only the one or the other may be used.*

1. Nothing stood in the way of your sending. 2. It cannot be denied that he is wise. 3. I deny that he is. 4. There will be many obstacles to our setting out. 5. I never saw him without crying out (*but that I*, etc.). 6. What hindered your informing me (1. **prohibeō**; 2. **obstō**)? 7. There was nothing to hinder you from informing me. 8. We cannot but praise you. 9. You cannot help envying him. 10. It cannot be that he has not seen them. 11. There is no one but thinks him happy. 12. There was no one but laughed. 13. There is no doubt that he has conquered. 14. No one doubted that he had conquered. 15. Who can doubt that he will conquer (*is about to*)? 16. Who could doubt that he would conquer (*was about to*)? 17. We do not object to contending in arms. 18. There is no one but fears him.

18

THE CAUSAL SUBJUNCTIVE

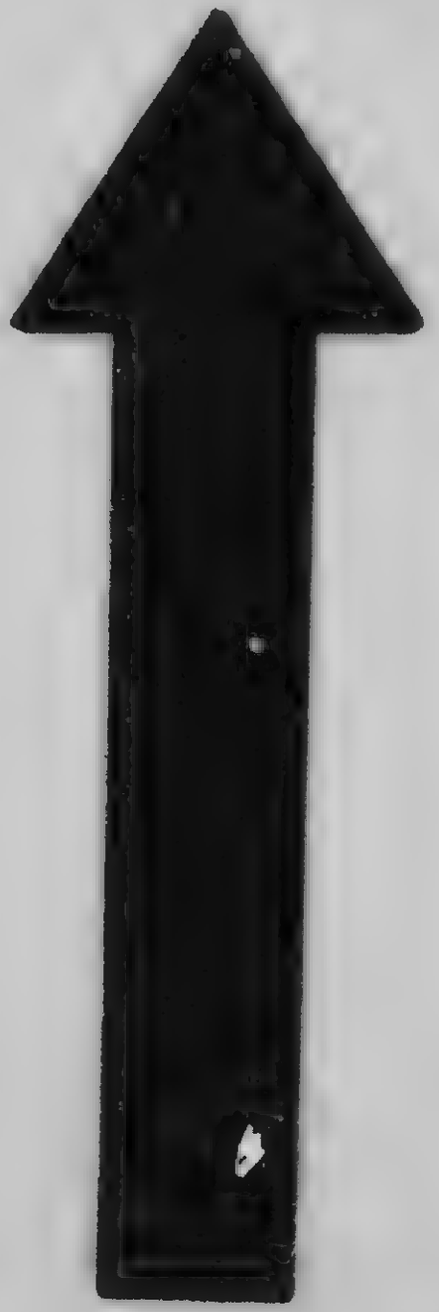
1. **Cum** causal (*since*) takes the Subjunctive (see page 231).

2. **Quod, quia, quoniam** (*because*), have the following constructions: —

(1) Expressing a reason as a *fact* on the authority of the speaker, they take the Indicative.

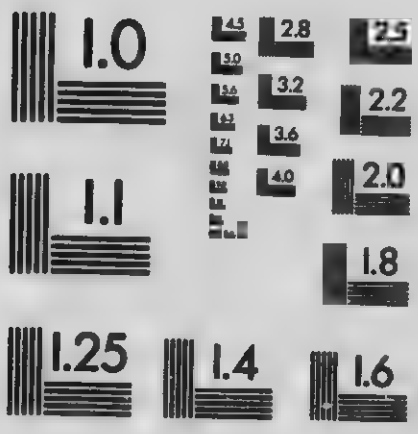
(2) Reporting or quoting a reason as the *thought* or *statement of another*, they take the Subjunctive. This is virtually Indirect Discourse.

(1) **In Galliā remanēre volēbat quod novīs rēbus studēbat,** *He wished to remain in Gaul because he was bent upon revolution.*



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

(2) **Ut relinquerētur petiit quod mare timēret,** *He asked to be left behind, on the ground that he feared the sea* (his alleged reason).

A rejected reason is expressed by **nōn quō, nōn quod** with the Subjunctive.

3. The Causal Relative **quī** (= **cum ego, cum tū, cum is,** etc.) takes the Subjunctive.

Stultus es quī haec faciās, *You are foolish for doing this* (**quī = cum tu,** *since you,* etc.).

This is especially common in exclamations.

EXERCISE

1. He did not wish to leave Dumnorix because he feared an uprising (**mōtus**) of the Gauls. 2. Since these things (introductory rel.) are so, what is to be feared? 3. Socrates was put to death because (as it was alleged) he was corrupting the youth. 4. They put him to death because they feared him. 5. He complained on the ground that they were not bringing (**comportō**) corn. 6. He was angry (**irāscor**) because they were not bringing corn. 7. O the power of truth, in that it can defend itself (*which can*)! 8. O fortunate youth, inasmuch as you found Homer as a herald of your valor! 9. We are foolish to do such things. 10. I am foolish to believe him a friend. 11. They allow merchants to come to them, not because they wish anything to be imported, but because they wish to sell what they have captured in war.

19

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

1. Conditional Sentences are complex, containing a principal clause stating the *consequence* of the fulfilment of a condition and a subordinate adverbial clause expressing the *condition*.

The "if" clause (conditional clause) is called the **Protasis**. The principal clause is called the **Apodosis**.

2. Conditional Sentences are of the following types: —

I. **Sī habeō, dō,**
If I have, I give.
Sī habēbam (habuī), dabam (dedī),
If I had, I gave.
} SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST SUPPOSITIONS. Pres. or Past Indicative.

Nothing is implied as to reality; something is merely *supposed or assumed to be a fact for argument's sake.*

II. **Sī habēbō, dabō,**
If I have (= shall have), I shall give.
Sī eum videro, tibi dicam,
If I see (= shall have seen), I shall tell you.
} VIVID FUTURE. Fut. or Fut. Perf. Indicative.

III. **Sī habeam, dem,**
If I should (were to) have, I should give.
} VAGUE (OR IDEAL) FUTURE. Pres. Subjunctive.

IV. (*a*) **Sī habērem, darem,**
If I had (now), I should give.
(but I have not, therefore I cannot)
(*b*) **Sī habuissem, dedissem,**
If I had had, I should have given.
(but I had not, therefore I could not)
} CONTRARY TO FACT. (*a*) In the Present. Imperf. Subjunctive. (*b*) In the Past. Pluperf. Subjunctive.

The Potential Present Subjunctive is a Vague (or Ideal) Future with the Protasis suppressed.

EXERCISE

A

Translate and classify the following:—

1. Sī Rōmae nātus est, Rōmānus est. 2. Hōc sī fēcit, poenās dabit. 3. Sī hōc faciās, poenās dēs. 4. Illud sī scrīpsissem, mentītus essem. 5. Sī ille vīveret, nōs dēfenderet. 6. Rōmam sī vēneris, fac apud mē commorēris. 7. Sī hōc est vērum, falsum est illud. 8. Sī mātūrius vēnisset, hostēs nōn vīcissent. 9. Sī servī meī mē ita metuerent ut cīvēs tuī tē, ego domum meam relinquendam putārem.

B

1. If you wish, you may. 2. If they wished, they were always permitted. 3. If you are in Rome, you must (**oportet**) do as (*what*) the Romans do. 4. If he were to come, he would see. 5. Had he not come (*unless*, etc.), he would not have seen, nor would he have conquered. 6. I shall go if I can (*shall be able*). 7. I should go, if I were to receive the money. 8. I should be happy, could I help you. 9. I should have helped you, had I been able. 10. I should like to go (**volō**). 11. I should say so. 12. If you were wise, you would not say such things. 13. If your country were to plead (**loquor**) with you thus, ought she not to obtain her request (**impetrō**)?

20

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Postquam, ubi, ut, simul ac

1. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi, ut**, *when*; **cum primum, simul ac** (**atque**), *as soon as*, take the Perfect Indicative to denote a *single occurrence in the past*; **ubi, ut, simul ac**, take a Pluperfect Indicative to denote a *repeated occurrence in the past*, as:—

Eum vīdī ubi vēnit, *I saw him when he came.*
Eum vidēbam ubi vēnerat, *I used to see him whenever he came.*

Notice that for *repetition* the principal clause takes the Imperfect.

Cum

2. **Cum,** *when,* denoting *pure time,* takes the Indicative in any tense. In actual practice, however, **cum,** *when,* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative, is rare. In these tenses some accessory notion of *cause* or *concession,* requiring the Subjunctive, seems to have been present in most cases.

Note the following equivalents denoting *one occurrence:* **ubi vēnit; postquam vēnit; cum vēnisset,** *when he came.*

3. **Cum,** *whenever,* denoting *repetition,* takes the Perfect Indicative when the reference is to the *present,* and the Pluperfect Indicative when the reference is to the *past.*

Eum videō cum vēnit, *I see him whenever (as often as) he comes.*

Eum vidēbam cum vēnerat, *I used to (would always) see him whenever he came.*

4. **Cum,** *when* (= **et tum**), used in a *coördinating* or *independent* sense, takes the Perfect Indicative. In such cases the principal clause and the *when* clause can always be interchanged, as: —

Ad summum collem pervēnit, cum (= **et tum**) **subitō hostēs vīdit,** *He arrived at the top of the hill, when* (= *and then*) *suddenly he saw the enemy;* = **Cum ad summum collem pervēnisset subitō hostēs vīdit,** *When he arrived, etc., he suddenly saw.*

Priusquam, Antequam

5. **Priusquam** and **antequam,** *before* (after a negative, *until*), have two constructions: —

(1) To denote Fact and mere priority of time, they take the Indicative.

(2) To denote Anticipated Possibility, they take the Subjunctive, as.—

(1) **Nōn eum vidī priusquam** (or **Nōn eum prius vidī quam**) **mortuus est,** *I did not see him before he died.*

(2) **Proficīscī nōlēbant antequam adveniret,** *They refused to set out until he arrived* (*should arrive*).

His arrival was an *expected possibility* reported as their thought,— practically Indirect Discourse.

Dum, Dōnec, Quoad

6. **Dum,** *provided that* (Negative **nē**), takes the Present Subjunctive, as:—

Ego ībō dum nē ille eat, *I shall go provided he does not go.*

The Subjunctive here is really Jussive.

7. **Dum,** *while,* takes the Indicative, regularly the Vivid or Historical Present instead of the Imperfect, as:—

Dum morātur (= **morābātur**), **hostēs effūgērunt,** *While he was delaying, the enemy escaped.*

8. **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** *as long as,* take the Indicative in whatever tense the exact meaning requires, as:—

Dum anima erit, spēs erit, *While there is life, there will be hope.*

9. **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** *until,* take:—

(1) the Indicative for Fact.

(2) the Subjunctive for Anticipated Possibility.

(1) **Dum nāvēs convēnērunt exspectāvit,** *He waited until the ships* (*actually*) *assembled;*

(2) **Dum nāvēs convenirent exspectāvit,** *He waited for them to assemble* (*a possibility he expected*).

EXERCISE

1. Whenever I saw him, I cried out. 2. On arriving there, he learnt all these things. 3. After learning these things, he decided to attack the enemy. 4. He wrote to me as soon as he reached home. 5. As often as the cavalry made an attack, the enemy would flee. 6. He attacked the camp before they could realize (**intellegō**) what was happening. 7. I shall not go until I see him. 8. I shall wait until he comes ((1) *shall come*, (2) *shall have come*, (3) *may come*). 9. He waited until they set out; for them to set out; he will wait for them to set out. 10. While these things were going on (**gerō**), he arrived in their territories. 11. He never waged war upon them as long as they remained at home. 12. He will not attack them, provided they do not leave home (**discēdō**). 13. He will not attack them as long as they remain at home.

21

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

(*Although*, etc.)

1. The term Concessive may be used to include all clauses introduced by **etsī, etiamsī**, *even if, although;* **licet**, *granted that, although;* **quamvīs, quamquam, cum**, *although.*

They either *concede* something as *possible;* or *admit* something as *true*, in opposition to something else.

2. **Etsī, etiamsī**, *even if*, are strictly Conditional and follow the rules for Conditional Clauses of the Vivid Future, Vague Future, and Contrary to Fact types, as: —

(1) **Nōn dabō, etiam sī habēbō**, *I shall not give, even if (though) I have.* Vivid Future.

(2) **Nōn dem, etsī habeam**, *I should not give, though I should (were to) have.* Vague Future.

(3) **Nōn dedissem, etsi habuissem,** *I should not have given, even though I had had.* Contrary to Fact in the Past.

3. **Etsi, tametsi, quamquam,** *although,* admit something as a *fact,* and therefore take the Indicative, as: **Nōn dedit, etsi (quámquam) habēbat,** *He did not give, though he had.* In this sense, **etsi** is really the same as in a Simple Present or Past Condition.

4. **Quamvis,** *although, as much as you like,* and **licet,** *granted that* (really the impersonal verb, *it is allowed*), concede the *possibility* of something. They take the Subjunctive, which is strictly Jussive:—

Quamvis sit fortis, *Brave as he may be = Let him be as brave as you like.*

Licet sit fortis = Licet, sit fortis, *It is granted, let him be brave.*

In poetry, **quamvis** occasionally takes the Indicative.

5. **Cum,** *although,* regularly takes the Subjunctive.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison

Clauses of Comparison, introduced by **quasi, quam si, tanquam si, velut si,** *as if, as though,* are really Conditional. They commonly take the Present Subjunctive in Primary Sequence, and the Imperfect Subjunctive in Historical Sequence.

Loquitur quasi sapiēns sit, *He talks as (he would talk) if he were wise.*

Loquēbātur quasi sapiēns esset, *He talked as if he were wise.*

EXERCISE

1. He would not have conquered, even if he had had larger forces. 2. I should not go, though it might be permitted. 3. I shall not go, though it shall be permitted. 4. Granted that this be true, he cannot conquer. 5. Talk as long as you like, you cannot convince me. 6. I did not see him, although he was present. 7. I should not be willing to give, though I had the money. 8. He would not persuade you, even if he were present. 9. They attack as quickly as if Caesar were leading them. 10. They shouted as if they were glad (**gaudeō**).

22

USES OF THE INFINITIVE

The Latin Infinitive has the following uses :—

1. As a Noun, Subject, Object, Predicate Nominative or Appositive.

2. As the Complement of a Modal Verb, such as *wish*, *begin*, *seem*, *am able*, or of a passive verb of *thinking*, *saying* (see page 314).

3. As a Predicate with Subject in the Accusative Case, forming a Noun Phrase equivalent to a "that" clause (Acc. with Inf.).

4. The Historical Infinitive is used in lively narrative in place of an Indicative, usually the Imperfect.

The subject of the Historical Infinitive is in the Nominative : **Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre** (= **flāgitābat**), *Caesar kept demanding corn.*

5. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations to indicate *surprise* or *indignation :* **hōc nōn vidēre** ! *the idea of not seeing this !*

EXERCISE

1. Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī. 2. Vidēre est crēdere. 3. Habeō dīcere. 4. Beātē vīvere vōs in voluptāte pōnitis. 5. Vīvere est cōgitāre. 6. Māgnī interest cōpiās hostium distinērī. 7. Hostēs dēcurrere (= dēcurrēbant). 8. Nōn aequum est Rōmānōs Rhēnum trānsīre. 9. Gaudeō tē vēnisse. 10. Certiōrem quam celeriōrem esse melius est.

ALEXANDER THE GREAT

SUMMARY OF TYPICAL FORMS

FOR RAPID REVIEW OR A SHORT PREPARATORY COURSE

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

FEMININE

Nom.	terr a	terr ae
Gen.	terr ae	terr ārum
Dat.	terr ae	terr is
Acc.	terr am	terr ās
Voc.	terr a	terr ae
Abl.	terr ā	terr is

SECOND DECLENSION

MASCULINE

serv us	serv ī
serv ī	serv ōrum
serv ō	serv is
serv um	serv ōs
serv ĕ	serv ī
serv ō	serv is

SECOND DECLENSION

MASCULINE

Nom.	puer	puer ī	ager	agr ī
Gen.	puer ī	puer ōrum	agr ī	agr ōrum
Dat.	puer ō	puer is	agr ō	agr is
Acc.	puer um	puer ōs	agr um	agr ōs
Voc.	puer	puer ī	ager	agr ī
Abl.	puer ō	puer is	agr ō	agr is

SECOND DECLENSION

NEUTER

Nom.	bell um	bell a
Gen.	bell ī	bell ōrum
Dat.	bell ō	bell is
Acc.	bell um	bell a
Voc.	bell um	bell a
Abl.	bell ō	bell is

For principal uses of the cases, see page 8.

THIRD DECLENSION

	Mas. or Fem. Consonant Stem		Mas. or Fem. I-Stem	
Nom.	princep s	princip ēs	aed ēs	aed ēs
Gen.	princip is	princip um	aed is	aed ium
Dat.	princip ī	princip ibus	aed ī	aed ibus
Acc.	princip em	princip ēs	aed em	aed ēs *or* -is
Voc.	princep s	princip ēs	aed ēs	aed ēs
Abl.	princip e	princip ibus	aed e	aed ibus

	Neuter Consonant Stem		Neuter I-Stem	
Nom.	caput	capit a	mar e	mar ia
Gen.	capit is	capit um	mar is	mar ium
Dat.	capit ī	capit ibus	mar ī	mar ibus
Acc.	caput	capit a	mar e	mar ia
Voc.	caput	capit a	mar e	mar ia
Abl.	capit e	capit ibus	mar ī	mar ibus

Learn stems of such typical nouns as **pēs, pāx, lēx, flōs, cōnsul, pater, agger, victor, leō, virgō, corpus, opus, nōmen, nox, urbs, animal**, pages 54, 56, 57, 60, 61, 64, 66. Learn also **vīs**, page 68.

FOURTH DECLENSION

	Masculine		Neuter	
Nom.	frūct us	frūct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
Gen.	frūct ūs	frūctu um	corn ūs	corn uum
Dat.	frūct uī	frūct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus
Acc.	frūct um	frūct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
Voc.	frūct us	frūct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
Abl.	frūct ū	frūct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

	Masculine[1]		Feminine	
Nom.	diē s	diē s	rē s	rē s
Gen.	diē ī	diē rum	rē ī	rē rum
Dat.	diē ī	diē bus	rē ī	rē bus
Acc.	die m	diē s	re m	rē s
Voc.	diē s	diē s	rē s	rē s
Abl.	diē	diē bus	rē	rē bus

[1] Sometimes Feminine in the Singular.

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

Singular

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	bon **us**	bon **a**	bon **um**
Gen.	bon **ī**	bon **ae**	bon **ī**
Dat.	bon **ō**	bon **ae**	bon **ō**
Acc.	bon **um**	bon **am**	bon **um**
Voc.	bon **e**	bon **a**	bon **um**
Abl.	bon **ō**	bon **ā**	bon **ō**

Plural

Nom.	bon **ī**	bon **ae**	bon **a**
Gen.	bon **ōrum**	bon **ārum**	bon **ōrum**
Dat.	bon **īs**	bon **īs**	bon **īs**
Acc.	bon **ōs**	bon **ās**	bon **a**
Voc.	bon **ī**	bon **ae**	bon **a**
Abl.	bon **īs**	bon **īs**	bon **īs**

See also **liber**, page 37; **noster**, page 38; **ūnus, alius, alter**, etc., page 108.

Adjectives of the Third Declension

	Singular		Plural	
	M. or F.	N.	M. or F.	N.
Nom.	fort **is**	fort **e**	fort **ēs**	fort **ia**
Gen.	fort **is**	fort **is**	fort **ium**	fort **ium**
Dat.	fort **ī**	fort **ī**	fort **ibus**	fort **ibus**
Acc.	fort **em**	fort **e**	fort **ēs** *or* **-īs**	fort **ia**
Voc.	fort **is**	fort **e**	fort **ēs**	fort **ia**
Abl.	fort **ī**	fort **ī**	fort **ibus**	fort **ibus**

See also **ācer**, page 74; **fēlix, prūdēns**, page 76.

Comparatives

	Singular		Plural	
	M. or F.	N.	M. or F.	N.
Nom.	fort **ior**	fort **ius**	fort **iōrēs**	fort **iōra**
Gen.	fort **iōris**	fort **iōris**	fort **iōrum**	fort **iōrum**
Dat.	fort **iōrī**	fort **iōrī**	fort **iōribus**	fort **iōribus**
Acc.	fort **iōrem**	fort **ius**	fort **iōrēs** *or* **-is**	fort **iōra**
Voc.	fort **ior**	fort **ius**	fort **iōrēs**	fort **iōra**
Abl.	fort **iōre**	fort **iōre**	fort **iōribus**	fort **iōribus**

Rules of Gender

FIRST DECLENSION

-a, Fem.

Except **nauta, agricola, Hadria,** Mas.

SECOND DECLENSION

(1) **-us, -er, -ir, Mas.**

Except **vīrus, vulgus, pelagus,** Neut.; **humus,** and *names of trees,* Fem.

(2) **-um, Neut.**

No exceptions.

THIRD DECLENSION

(1) **-er, -or, -os** or **-ōs**; **-es** or **-ēs** increasing; **-ō** (not **-dō, -gō, -iō**), **Mas.**

Except **vēr, iter,** Neut.; **arbor, uxor, soror; quiēs, carō,** Fem.

(2) **-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -is, -aus, -x, -ēs** not increasing, **-s** after a consonant, **-ūs** except in monosyllables, **Fem.**

Except **ōrdō, cardō, ignis, lapis, pulvis, fūnis, finis, collis, sanguis; mōns, pōns, fōns, dēns; grex, jūdex, rēx,** Mas.

(3) Monosyllables in **-ūs** (**rūs, jūs**); nouns of the **opus** and **corpus** type; **lac, caput**; nouns in **-e, -al, -ar, -ur, -men, Neut.**

Except **lepus, mūs,** Mas.

FOURTH DECLENSION

-us, Mas.; -ū, Neut.

Except **domus, manus, Idūs,** Fem.

FIFTH DECLENSION

All **Fem.**

Except **diēs** (usually Mas.; sometimes Fem. in the Singular), and **meridiēs,** Mas.

Comparison of Adjectives

See pages 96, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104.

Compare **altus, brevis, prūdēns, ācer, celer, aeger, miser, pulcher, facilis, similis, ūtilis, bonus, malus, māgnus, parvus, multus, superus, prior, idōneus, antīquus.**

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs

See pages 111, 112, 113.

Adverbs in **-ē** from **longus, altus, aeger, miser,** etc.
Adverbs in **-ter** from **ācer, celer, fortis, prūdēns, audāx,** etc.
Adverbs in **-ē** or **-ter** from **dūrus, firmus.**
Adverbs from Acc. Sing. Neut.: **multum, facile,** and comparatives, **facilius,** etc.
Superlative adverbs in **-ē,** as **fortissimē.**

Pronouns

Personal, ego, tū, is, page 134.
Reflexive, meī, tuī, suī, page 135.
Possessive, meus, tuus, suus (ējus, eōrum), page 135.
Demonstrative, hīc, ille, pages 138, 139.
Intensive, ipse, īdem, page 140.
Relative, quī, quae, quod, page 142.
Interrogative, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), page 144.
Indefinite, aliquis, quis, quisquam, quīdam, quisque, uterque, quīvis, page 146.

SUMMARY OF FORMS

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

REGULAR VERBS

	I CONJ.	II CONJ.	III CONJ.	IV CONJ.
PRESENT	vocō vocās vocat vocāmus vocātis vocant	moneō monēs monet monēmus monētis monent	regō regis regit regimus regitis regunt	audiō audis audit audīmus audītis audiunt
IMPERFECT	vocābam vocābās vocābat vocābāmus vocābātis vocābant	monēbam monēbās monēbat monēbāmus monēbātis monēbant	regēbam regēbās regēbat regēbāmus regēbātis regēbant	audiēbam audiēbāmus audiēbat audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant
FUTURE	vocābō vocābis vocābit vocābimus vocābitis vocābunt	monēbō monēbis monēbit monēbimus monēbitis monēbunt	regam regēs reget regēmus regētis regent	audiam audiēs audiet audiēmus audiētis audient
PERFECT	vocāvī vocāvistī vocāvit vocāvimus vocāvistis vocāvērunt (re)	monuī, *etc.* — vīdī jussī dēlēvī respondī	rēxī, *etc.* — mīsī vīcī cognōvī pepulī	audīvī, *etc.* — dēsiluī vēnī sēnsī repperī
PLUPERFECT	vocāveram vocāverās vocāverat vocāverāmus vocāverātis vocāverant	monueram, *etc.* — vīderam jusseram dēlēveram responderam	rēxeram, *etc.* — mīseram viceram cognōveram pepuleram	audīveram, *etc.* — dēsilueram vēneram sēnseram reppereram
FUTURE PERFECT	vocāverō vocāveris vocāverit vocāverimus vocāveritis vocāverint	monuerō, *etc.* — vīderō jusserō dēlēverō responderō	rēxerō, *etc.* — mīserō vīcerō cognōverō pepulerō	audīverō, *etc.* — dēsiluerō vēnerō sēnserō reppererō

For **capiō**, *see page* 48; *for* **sum**, *page* 123.

INDICATIVE PASSIVE

REGULAR VERBS

	I CONJ.	II CONJ.	III CONJ.	IV CONJ.
PRESENT	vocor vocāris (re) vocātur vocāmur vocāminī vocantur	moneor monēris (re) monētur monēmur monēminī monentur	regor regeris (re) regitur regimur regiminī reguntur	audior audīris (re) audītur audīmur audīminī audiuntur
IMPERFECT	vocābar vocābāris (re) vocābātur vocābāmur vocābāminī vocābantur	monēbar monēbāris (re) monēbātur monēbāmur monēbāminī monēbantur	regēbar regēbāris (re) regēbātur regēbāmur regēbāminī regēbantur	audiēbar audiēbāris (re) audiēbātur audiēbāmur audiēbāminī audiēbantur
FUTURE	vocābor vocāberis (re) vocābitur vocābimur vocābiminī vocābuntur	monēbor monēberis (re) monēbitur monēbimur monēbimini monēbuntur	regar regēris (re) regētur regēmur regēminī regentur	audiar audiēris (re) audiētur audiēmur audiēminī audientur
PERFECT	vocātus sum es est vocātī sumus estis sunt	monitus sum, *etc.* vīsus sum jussus sum dēlētus sum respōnsum est	rēctus sum, *etc.* missus sum victus sum cognitus sum pulsus sum	audītus sum, *etc.* sepultus sum sēnsus sum vinctus sum repertus sum
PLUPERFECT	vocātus eram erās erat vocātī erāmus erātis erant	monitus eram, *etc.* vīsus eram jussus eram dēlētus eram respōnsum erat	rēctus eram, *etc.* missus eram victus eram cognitus eram pulsus eram	audītus eram, *etc.* sepultus eram sēnsus eram vinctus eram repertus eram
FUTURE PERFECT	vocātus erō eris erit vocātī erimus eritis erunt	monitus erō, *etc.* vīsus erō jussus erō dēlētus erō respōnsum erit	rēctus erō, *etc.* missus erō victus erō cognitus erō pulsus erō	audītus erō, *etc.* sepultus erō sēnsus erō vinctus erō repertus erō

For Passive of capiō, *see page* 171.

Imperative Active and Passive

See page 169.

Participles

See pages 180, 184, 185.

Infinitives

See pages 198, 199.

Gerunds and Gerundives

See pages 216 *and* 220.

Subjunctive Active

See page 233.

Subjunctive Passive

See page 238.

Irregular Verbs

Possum, Volō, Ferō, Eō, Fīō.

See pages 247–259.

VOCABULARY

LATIN-ENGLISH

ABBREVIATIONS

abl., *ablative.*
acc., *accusative.*
act., *active.*
adj., *adjective.*
adv., *adverb.*
comp., *comparative.*
dat., *dative.*
demonst., *demonstrative.*
depon., *deponent.*
f., *feminine.*
gen., *genitive.*
indecl., *indeclinable.*
indef., *indefinite.*
inf., *infinitive.*
intens., *intensive.*
interrog., *interrogative.*
intrans., *intransitive.*
m., *masculine.*
n., *neuter.*
part., *participle.*
pass., *passive.*
perf., *perfect.*
plur., *plural.*
pron., *pronoun.*
sing., *singular.*
subst., *substantive.*
superl., *superlative.*
trans., *transitive.*

VOCABULARY

LATIN–ENGLISH

A

A = *Aulus*, a praenomen.

ā, ab, abs, prep. (abl.), (1) *from*; (2) *by*; (3) *on the side of*.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō), *hide, put away*.

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry off*.

abhinc, adv., *ago*, see p. 343.

abiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum (jaciō), *throw away*.

ablātus, perf. part. of **auferō**.

abripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum (rapiō), *snatch away*.

abscīdō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum (caedō), *cut off, cut away*.

absēns, -entis, part. used as adj. (absum), *absent*.

absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, *acquit*.

abstergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersum, *wipe away*.

abstulī, perf. of **auferō**.

ac = **atque**, *and, and also*.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō), *go to*; **accēdit**, *it is added*.

acceptus, perf. part. of **accipiō**.

accidō, -ere, -cidī (cadō), *happen*.

accingō, -ere, -cinxī, -cinctum, *gird on*.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (capiō), *receive*.

accūrātus, -a, -um, *careful*; adv., -ē, *carefully*.

ācer, -cris, -cre, *sharp, keen, severe, fierce*; adv., **ācriter**.

acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter, sour, harsh*.

Achillēs, -is, m., *Achilles*, the most valiant of the Greeks at Troy.

aciēs, -ēī, f., (1) *line of battle*; (2) *edge of the sword*; (3) *keen gaze* (ac-, *sharp*).

Acrisius, -ī, m., *Acrisius*, king of Argos, father of Danae.

acuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *sharpen*.

acus, -ūs, f., *needle*.

acūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*.

ad, prep. (acc.), (1) *to, towards*; (2) *by* (of time); (3) *at, near*.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead to, bring*.

adferō (afferō), -ferre, adtulī (attulī), adlātum (allātum), *carry to, bring*.

adficiō (afficiō), -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *affect, visit with*.

adflictō (afflictō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *toss, shatter, damage*.

adfligō (affligō), -ere, -flixī, -flictum, *dash, shatter, wreck*.

adhaereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesum, *adhere, stick, cling*.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *bring, call in*.

adhūc, adv., *hitherto, still*.

adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (agō), *drive to*.

adjuvō, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *aid, help* (governs acc.).

adligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bind to*.

adloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, *speak to, address*.

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *remind, admonish*.

adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, *grow up; grow to maturity*.

adorior, -īrī, -ortus, *attack.*
adripiō (arripiō), -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *seize.*
adstō, -āre, -stitī, *stand by, stand near.*
adsum, -esse, -fuī, *am present.*
adulēscēns, -entis, m., *a youth, young man.*
adulēscentia, -ae, f., *youth, the period of youth.*
advenio, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *arrive.*
adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*
Aeaea, -ae, f., *Aeaea*, an island of the Mediterranean, southwest of Italy, the supposed abode of the sorceress Circe.
aedēs, -is, f., sing., *temple;* plur., *house.*
aedificium, -ī, n., *building.*
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *build.*
aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ill, feeble;* adv., **aegrē**, *with difficulty.*
Aenēas, -ae, m., *Aeneas*, a Trojan prince, hero of Vergil's Aeneid.
Aeolus, -ī, m., *Aeolus*, god of the winds.
aequē, adv., *equally.*
Aequī, -ōrum, m., *the Aequi*, a nation of Italy near Rome.
aequor, -oris, n., *the sea.*
aequus, -a, -um, adj., *equal, fair, just;* **aequus animus**, *an even mind, resignation.*
ā ēr, -eris, m., *air;* Grk. acc., ā-ēra = ā-ērem.
aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze.*
aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*
aestus, -ūs, m. (*waving, billowy motion*); (1) *heat;* (2) *tide.*
aetās, -ātis, f., *age.*
Aethiops, -opis, *Ethiopian.*
afferō = **adferō**.
afficiō = **adficiō**.
affīctō = **adfīctō**.
affligō = **adflgō**.
Āfricānus, -a, m. (*African*), a surname of two of the Scipios, given on account of their victories over Carthage.
Agamemnōn, -onis, m., *Agamemnon*, king of Mycenae, and commander-in-chief of the Greeks at Troy; brother of Menelaus.
ager, -grī, m., *a field; land.*
agger, -eris, m., *a heap, mound.*
agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *drive, harass.*
agmen, -minis, n., *column of soldiers; army on the march.*
agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *recognize.*
agnus, -ī, m., *lamb.*
agō, -ere, ēgī, actum, *drive, put in motion; do, perform; plead.*
agricola, -ae, m., *farmer, husbandman.*
agricultūra, -ae, f., *agriculture.*
āiō, defective verb, *say.*
āla, -ae, f., *wing.*
albicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *grow white.*
albus, -a, -um, *white.*
aliquandō, adv., *at some time, ever.*
aliquantus, -a, -um, *somewhat, some.*
aliquis, -qua, -quid, indef. pron., *some, someone, something.*
aliter, adv., *otherwise.*
alius, alia, aliud, gen. alīus, dat. alīī, *other, another, different;* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another.*
almus, -a, -um, *kind, bountiful.*
alō, -ere, aluī, altum or alitum, *nourish, support, maintain.*
Alpēs, -ium, f., *Alps.*
alter, altera, alterum, gen. alterīus, dat. alterī, *the other (of two), the second;* **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.*
altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
amātor, -ōris, m., *lover, mate.*
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *walk.*
amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship.*
amīcus, -ī, m., *friend.*
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lose.*
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *love.*
amoenus, -a, -um, *lovely, pleasant, beautiful.*
amor, -ōris, m., *love.*
Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius*, a king of Alba.
ancilla, -ae, f., *maid-servant, handmaid.*
ancora, -ae, f., *anchor.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow, close, tight.*

anima, -ae, f., *breath, soul, life, spirit.*
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *notice, observe.*
animal, -ālis, n., *animal.*
animus, -ī, m., *mind, courage*
annus, -ī, m., *year.*
ānser, -eris, m., *goose.*
ante, prep. (acc.) or adv., *before* (chiefly of time).
anteā, adv., *before.*
antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go before, precede.*
antecurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run on before.*
antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient.*
antrum, -ī, n., *cave.*
ānulus, -ī, m., *ring.*
anus, -ūs, f., *old woman.*
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, *open, uncover.*
apertus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of aperiō), *open.*
Aphroditē, *Aphroditē*, Greek name for Venus.
Apollō, -inis, *Apollo.*
appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *appear.*
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call, name.*
appellō, -ere, appulī, appulsum, *bring to shore.*
appetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *seek for, yearn for.*
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *approach* (governs dat.).
apricus, -a, -um, *sunny.*
aptus, -a, -um, *apt, suitable.*
apud, prep. (acc.), *among, near, in the house of.*
aqua, -ae, f., *water.*
aquila, -ae, f., *eagle.*
aquilifer, -ferī, m., *standard-bearer.*
āra, -ae, f., *altar.*
arātor, -ōris, m., *ploughman.*
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *think, deem, regard.*
arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*
arca, -ae, f., *box, chest.*
Arcadia, -ae, f., *Arcadia*, a division of lower Greece.
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *send for, summon.*
arcus, -ūs, m., *bow.*
ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *burn, blaze.*
arduus, -a, -um, *steep.*
arēna (harēna), -ae, f., (1) *sand, sea-shore, beach*; (2) *arena.*
argentum, -ī, n., *silver.*
āridus, -a, -um, *dry.*
ariēs, -etis, m., *ram, battering-ram.*
arma, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms, armor.*
armāmentum, -ī, n., *tackle* (of a ship).
armātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **armō**, *arm, fit out.*
armentum, -ī, n., *cattle, herd.*
armiger, -gerī, m., *armor-bearer.*
armilla, -ae, f., *bracelet, armlet.*
arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *plough.*
arripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch, seize.*
ars, artis, f., *art.*
artus, -ūs, m., *limb, joint.*
arx, arcis, f., *citadel, fortress.*
as, assis, m., (*a unit*) *an as*, Roman copper coin varying in value, finally *an ounce* in weight.
ascendō, -ere, -ndī, ēnsum, *ascend.*
asinus, -ī, m., *ass.*
asylum, -ī, n., *refuge, asylum.*
at, conj., *but.*
āter, ātra, ātrum, *black, dark.*
Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens.*
atque = **ac**, *and, and also.*
attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctum (tangō), *touch, border on, reach.*
auctor, -ōris, m., *author, instigator.*
auctōritās, -ātis, f. *influence, authority.*
auctumnus, -ī, m., *autumn.*
audāx, -ācis, adj., *bold*; adv., **audācter**, *boldly.*
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-deponent, *dare.*
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *hear.*
auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, *carry off.*
augurium, -ī, n., *augury, prophecy.*
aura, -ae, f., *breeze.*
aureus, -a, . adj., *golden.*

auris, -is, *f.*, *ear*.
aurum, -ī, *n.*, *gold*.
aut, conj. *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.
autem, conj., denoting transition or contrast; (1) *but, however, on the other hand*; (2) *now*, marking transition; (3) *moreover*.
auxilium, -ī, *n.*, *aid, help*.
Avernus (lacus), *Lake Avernus* in Italy, a supposed entrance to the lower world.
avidus, -a, -um, *greedy, eager*.
avis, -is, *f.*, *bird*.
avunculus, -ī, *maternal uncle* (mother's brother).
avus, -ī, *m.*, *grandfather*.

B

Bacchus, -ī, *m.*, *Bacchus*, god of wine.
ballista, -ae, *f.*, *ballista*, a military engine for throwing heavy projectiles.
barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*.
beātus, -a, -um, *happy, blessed*.
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wage war*.
bellum, -ī, *n.*, *war*.
bene, adv. (bonus), *well*.
benevolus, -a, -um, *kind, kindly*.
benignus, -a, -um, *kind*; adv., **benignē**.
bestia, -ae, *f.*, *beast*.
bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitūrus, *drink*.
bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *two at a time*.
bis, adv., *twice*.
bonitās, -ātis, *f.*, *goodness*.
bonus, -a, -um, *good*.
bōs, bovis, *m.* or *f.*, *ox, cow*.
bracchium, -ī, *n.*, *arm* (of the body).
brevis, -e, *brief, short*; **brevī** (tempore), abl. used as adv., *soon*.
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, *Britain*.
Britannicus, -a, -um, *British*.
Britannus, -ī, *m.*, *a Briton*.
brūma (= brevima = brevissima (diēs)), *winter solstice, the shortest day of the year*.

C

C = **Gāius**, a praenomen.
cadāver, -eris, *n.*, *corpse, carcass*.
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall*.
caecus, -a, -um, *blind*.
caedēs, -is, *f.*, *killing, slaughter, murder*.
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, *cut, kill*.
caelum, -ī, *n.*, *sky, heaven*.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, *Caesar*.
Gāius, -ī, *m.*, *Caius*.
calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, *disaster, calamity*.
calcar, -āris, *n.*, *spur* (calx, *heel*).
callidus, -a, -um, *shrewd, cunning*.
Camillus, *Camillus*, a noble Roman, who conquered the Gauls besieging Rome, 367 B.C.
Campānus, -a, -um, *Campanian*, of Campania, a district southeast of Rome.
campus, -ī, *m.*, *plain, field*. **Campus Mārtius**, the Field of Mars, the great parade and athletic ground of Rome.
canis, -is, *m.*, *dog*.
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing*.
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sing*.
cānus, -a, -um, *white, hoary*.
caper, caprī, *m.*, *goat*.
capillus, -ī, *m.*, *hair*.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, *take*.
Capitōlinus, -ī, *m.*, *the Capitoline Hill*.
captīvus, -a, -um, *captive*.
caput, capitis, *n.*, *head*.
cardō, -inis, *m.*, *hinge*.
careō, -ēre, -uī, caritūrus, *be without* (abl.).
carīna, -ae, *f.*, *keel*; poetically, *a ship*.
carmen, -minis, *n.*, *song*.
carō, carnis, *f.*, *flesh, meat*.
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, *pluck*; *pluck at, slander*.
carrus, -ī, *m.*, *cart, wagon*.
Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, *Carthage*, a flourishing city of northern Africa.
cārus, -a, -um, *dear, precious*.
cāseus, -ī, *m.*, *cheese*.
Castalia, -ae, *f.*, *Castalia*, a fountain on Mt. Parnassus in Greece, sacred to Apollo and the Muses.
castigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *correct, chastise, punish*.

castitās, -ātis, f. (castus), *purity, chastity.*

castra, -ōrum, n. plur., *a camp; camps.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *a fall, accident, chance, mischance, misfortune.*

catapulta, -ae, f., *catapult*, a war-engine for throwing heavy arrows, lances, and stones.

Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*, a Roman conspirator suppressed by Cicero, 63 B.C.

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato*, name of two great Romans, Cato the Censor and Cato Uticensis.

catulus, -ī, m., *whelp, cub.*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason*; **causā**, abl., *for the sake of* (governs the gen. and always follows its case).

cautus, -a, -um, *cautious*; adv., cautē.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, *take care, guard, beware.*

cecidī, perf. of **cadō**.

cecidī, perf. of **caedō**.

celer, celeris, celere, *quick, swift*; adv., **celeriter**.

celeritās, -ātis, f., *quickness.*

celsus, -a, -um, *lofty.*

cēna, -ae, f., *a meal, dinner, supper.*

centum, indecl., *hundred.*

Cēpheus, -ī, *Cepheus*, a king of Ethiopia, father of Andromeda.

cerebrum, -ī, n., *brain.*

Cerēs, Cereris, f., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture.

certāmen, -minis, n., *contest, struggle.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure*; **certiōrem faciō**, *inform*; **certior fīō**, *am informed.*

cēteri, -ae, -a, *the others, the rest*; the sing. rare.

Charōn, -ontis, m., *Charon*, the ferryman of the Styx.

chorus, -ī, m., *band of dancers or singers; chorus.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*, the famous Roman orator.

Cincinnātus, -ī, m., (*curly-haired*) *Cincinnatus*, the noble Roman called from the plough to the dictatorship, 458 B.C.

cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum, *encircle, girdle, surround.*

Circē, -ēs or -ae, f., *Circe*, a sorceress who lived on the island of Aeaea; encountered by Ulysses.

circiter, adv. with numerals, *about.*

circum, prep. (acc.), *around.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *surround, put around.*

circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, *stand around.*

circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look around.*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround.*

cis, prep. (acc.), *this side of.*

citerior, -ius, *nearer, hither.*

citō, adv., *quickly.*

cīvis, -is, m. or f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, f., *state.*

clādēs, -is, f., *defeat, disaster.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, frequentative, *cry out repeatedly.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *cry out, exclaim.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *cry, shout.*

clārus, -a, -um, *bright, clear*; *renowned.*

classis, -is, f., *fleet.*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, *close.*

claudus, -a, -um, *lame.*

clāva, -ae, f., *club.* (Distinguish from clāvis, *a key* and clāvus, *a nail* or *a stripe.*)

cliēns, -entis, m., *adherent, retainer, protégé.*

clipeus, -ī, m., *shield.*

coāctus, perf. part. of **cōgō**.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defective verb, *begin.*

cōgitō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, *reflect.*

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *learn, ascertain*; **cognōvī**, *I know* (*because I have learnt*).

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, (1) *collect*; (2) *compel.*

cohors, -hortis, f., *cohort*, one-tenth of a legion, about 360 men.
collis, -is, m., *hill*.
collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, station*.
colloquor, -ī, -locūtus, *converse*.
collum, -ī, n., *neck*.
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *cherish, cultivate; worship*.
colōnia, -ae, f., *colony*.
coma, -ae, f., *long hair; foliage*.
comes, -itis, m. or f., *companion, comrade*.
commilitō, -ōnis, m., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, (1) *intrust*; (2) (proelium), *join battle*.
commoror, -ārī, -ātus, *stay, lodge*.
commūnis, -e, *common, general*.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *exchange*.
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pa. 3), *get together, collect, raise (an army)*.
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive together; drive, compel*.
compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill*.
complūrēs, -a, gen., -ium, *several*.
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *arrange (peace)*.
comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry together, collect*.
compos, -potis, adj., *having control of* (governs the gen.).
comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *seize*.
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *compress, squeeze, check*.
cōnātus, -ūs, m., *an attempt, effort*.
conciliō, -āre, āvī, ātum, *conciliate*.
concilium, -ī, n., *council, assembly*.
concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run together*.
concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *shake violently*.
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn, sentence*.
condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms*.
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō), *found (a city); store, hide*.
cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātum or collatum, *carry together; betake; devote*.
cōnfēstim, adv., *immediately*.
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, accomplish*.
cōnfīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, semi-deponent, *trust, feel sure, rely upon*; dat. of *person*, abl. of *thing*.
cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strengthen; affirm, declare*.
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus, *acknowledge, confess*.
cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *dig, pierce, stab*.
congredior, -ī, -gressus, *assemble, meet*.
coniciō (sometimes **conjiciō**), -ere, -jēcī, -jectum (jaciō), *hurl, throw*.
conjūnx, -jugis, m. or f. (jungō), *spouse, husband, wife*.
conjūrātiō, -ōnis, f. (jūrō), *conspiracy*.
conjūrātor, -ōris, m., *conspirator*.
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *attempt, try*.
cōnsalūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *greet*.
cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum (scandō, *climb*), *embark, board (a ship)*.
cōnsector, -ārī, -sectātus, *follow, pursue*.
cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree*.
cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *agreement*.
cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up, overtake; gain, accomplish*.
cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *sit down; settle, encamp*.
cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, judgment, wisdom, counsel*.
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stand still, halt*.
cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight*.
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *behold, see*.
cōnstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, constancy*.
cōnstat, -āre, -stitit, impersonal verb, *it is agreed, it is evident*.
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *fix, settle, determine, resolve; station*.

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, *become accustomed*; perf., **cōnsuēvī**, *am accustomed (because I have become)*.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., *custom*.

cōnsul, -is, m., *consul*.

cōnsulō, -ere, -sului, sultum, *consult*.

contemnō -ere -tempsi, -temptum, *despise*.

contendō, -ere, -ndi, -tum, *strive, contend; hasten*.

continēns, -entis, (1) adj., *continuous*; (2) subst., f., *continent, mainland*.

contineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, (1) *keep in*; (2) *bound*.

contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, *hurl violently*.

contrā, prep. (acc.), *against*; adv., *on the contrary*.

contrārius, -a, -um, *contrary*.

contrōversia, -ae, f., *rivalry, dispute*.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call together, assemble, convene*.

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus, *rise, arise*.

cōpia, -ae, f., (1) *plenty, abundance; supply*; (2) plur., **cōpiae**, *military forces, troops*.

cor, cordis, n., *heart* (Eng. *core*).

Cornēlius, -ī, m., *Cornelius*, a name of the Scipio *gēns*. **Cornēlia**, mother of the Gracchi, and daughter of P. Scipio Africanus the elder.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing of an army* (Eng. corner).

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, wreath*.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*.

corvus, -ī, m., *crow, raven*.

cotīdiē, adv., *daily*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, numerous*.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dat.), *believe*.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *create, appoint*.

crepida, -ae, f., *sole, sandal*. Proverb, nē sūtor suprā crepidam, *let the cobbler stick to his last*.

Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete*, an island in the Mediterranean

crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*.

crūs, crūris, n., *leg, limb*.

culpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame*.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *find fault with, blame*.

cum, prep. (abl.), *with, in company with*.

cum, conj., (1) *when*; (2) *since*; (3) *whereas, although*.

cupidō, -inis, f., *desire, love; greed*.

cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous, eager, greedy, covetous* (governs the gen.).

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *desire, long for*.

cūr, adv., *why?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety*.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *take care*.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run*.

currus, -ūs, m., *car, chariot*.

cursus, -ūs, m., (1) *running, speed*; (2) *course*.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *guard*.

cūstōs, -ōdis, m., *guard, guardian, sentry*.

cutis, -is, f., *skin*.

Cyclōps, -ōpis, *a Cyclops*, a name applied to a fabulous race of giant shepherds on the coast of Sicily, who had each but a single eye in the centre of the forehead.

cymba, -ae, f., *a boat, skiff*.

D

D = **Decimus**, a praenomen.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn*.

damnum, -ī, n., *loss*.

dē, prep. (abl.), (1) *down from*; (2) *from among*; (3) *about, concerning*.

dea, -ae, f., *goddess*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought*.

decem, indecl., *ten*.

dēcidō, -ere, -cidī (cadō), *fall down, fall off*.

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.

decōrus, -a, -um, *seemly, beautiful*.

dēcrēsco, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *grow less, subside*.

decus, -oris, n., *adornment, beauty; honor, glory.*
dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō), *surrender.*
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead.*
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *defend.*
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *offer, lay before.*
dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, fall short.*
dēiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down.*
deinde, adv., *in the next place, then, thereafter, afterwards.*
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *please, delight.*
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *blot out, destroy.*
dēligō, -āre, -avī, -ātum, *bind, fasten.*
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose.*
Dēlos, -ī, f., *Delos*, an island in the Aegean Sea, supposed birthplace of Apollo and Diana.
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send down, let down.*
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show.*
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*
dēnsus, -a, -um, *thick, dense.*
dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intimate, threaten.*
dēpendeō, -ēre, *hang down.*
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside; place for safe keeping.*
dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry down.*
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *descend.*
dēscēnsus, -ūs, m., *descent.*
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *long for, miss, look for in vain.*
dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap down.*
dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī (dēsiī), -situm, *cease.*
dēsipiō, -ere (sapiō, *am wise*), *am foolish; trifle.*
dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *despair.*
dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look down.*
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, *am lacking.*
dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *pull off.*
dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dislodge.*
deus, -ī, m., *a god.*
dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *devour.*
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right, on the right; dextrā*, as adv.
Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana.*
dicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *say.*
dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*
diēs, -ēī, m. (also f. in the sing.), *day.*
differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum, (1) *put off, defer;* (2) *differ.*
difficilis, -e, *difficult;* adv., **vix**, **aegrē**.
difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*
diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *flee, scatter.*
dīligēns, -entis, *careful, watchful.*
dīligentia, -ae, f., *carefulness, watchfulness.*
dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *esteem, love.*
dimicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight, struggle, contend.*
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *dismiss, send out.*
Diōnē, -ēs, *Dione*, mother of Venus.
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
discipulus, -ī, m., *pupil.*
discō, -ere, didicī, *learn* (as a lesson).
discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run apart, scatter.*
dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *place at intervals.*
disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dispute, argue.*
dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*
dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dissemble, conceal.*
diū, adv. of time, *long;* compar. **diūtius**; superl. **diūtissimē**.
dīves, -itis, *rich.*
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate.*
Dīvitiacus, -ī, m., *Divitiacus*, a Gallic nobleman.
dīvitiae, -ārum, *riches.*
dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give.*

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, *teach.*
dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, pain, sorrow, indignation.*
dolōsus, -a, -um, *crafty, treacherous.*
dolus, -ī, m., *wile, guile, trick.*
domesticus, -a, -um, *domestic, private.*
domicilium, -ī, n., *abode, domicile.*
domina, -ae, f., *mistress.*
dominus, -ī, m., *master, owner, lord.*
domus, -ūs (loc. domī), f., *house, home.*
dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give, present.*
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *sleep.*
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *doubt; hesitate.*
dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful;* adv., **dubiē.**
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, (1) *lead;* (2) *think;* **in mātrimōnium dūcō**, *marry* (said of the man).
dulcēdō, -inis, f., *sweetness, charm.*
dulcis, -e, *sweet.*
dum, conj., (1) *while, as long as;* (2) *until;* (3) *provided that.*
dūmētum, -ī, *thicket.*
duo, -ae, -o, *two.*
duodecim, *twelve.*
duplex, -icis, *double.*
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *double.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, hardy, harsh, severe.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*

■

eā, adv. (viā or parte understood), *that way.*
eae, eam, eās, eārum, see pron. **is**, p. 134.
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, *eat.*
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *give forth.*
ēdūcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *educate, rear.*
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out.*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, *carry forth; raise.*
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *effect, accomplish, make possible.*
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *escape.*
effugium, -ī, n., *refuge.*
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour forth, scatter, rout.*
ego, *I.*
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, *go forth, leave; disembark.*
ēgregius, -a, -um (grex), *uncommon, extraordinary, exceptional, excellent;* adv., **ēgregiē.**
ēgressus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **ēgredior.**
ēgressus, -ūs, m., *a landing.*
ēiciō, -ere, ējēcī, ējectum (jaciō), *cast forth; eject.*
ējus, eī, eīs, eōs, eum, see pron. **is**, p. 134.
Ēlectra, -ae, f., *Electra*, sister of Orestes and daughter of Agamemnon.
elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.*
ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, elect.*
ēmergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersum, *emerge.*
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send forth; let loose.*
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy.*
enim, conj., *for*, never placed first.
eō, adv., *thither.*
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go.*
eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
epistola, -ae, f., *letter.*
Ephesus, -ī, f., *Ephesus.*
epulor, -ārī, -ātus, *feast.*
epulum, -ī, n., *a feast.*
eques, -itis, m., (1) *horseman, cavalry soldier;* (2) *knight.*
equester, -tris, -tre, *equestrian, cavalry*, adj.
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away, rescue.*
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *err, wander, stray.*
error, -ōris, m., *error, mistake.*
ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *instruct, educate, polish.*
ēscendō, -ere, ēscendī, ēscēnsum, *climb out.*
esseda, -ae, f., *war-chariot.*
essedārius, -ī, m., *chariot warrior.*

et, *and*; **et . . . et . . .**, *both . . . and . . . .*
etiam, *even, also.*
etsī, *although.*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *go out, turn out.*

F

faber, -brī, m., *workman.*
fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *make, contrive.*
fābula, -ae, f., *story.*
facilis, -e, *easy*; adv., **facile.**
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, (1) *do*; (2) *make.*
fāgus, -ī, f., *beech-tree.*
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive.*
falsus, -a, -um, *false.*
fāma, -ae, f., *report, renown.*
famēs, -is (abl. sing. commonly famē of the fifth decl.), f., *hunger.*
fās, indecl., n., *right, permitted by divine law.*
faucēs, -ium, f., *jaws, throat, gorge.*
Favōnius, -ī, m., *Zephyr, West Wind.*
fēlīx, -icis, *fortunate.*
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*
fenestra, -ae, f., *window, opening.*
ferāx, -ācis, *fruitful, fertile.*
ferē, adv., *almost, nearly, about.*
feriō, -īre, *strike.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *carry.*
ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce, high-spirited.*
ferreus, -a, -um, *of iron.*
ferrum, -ī, n., *iron.*
ferus, -a, -um, *wild, fierce.*
fessus, -a, -um, *weary, tired.*
festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*
fictus, perf. part. of **fingō**, *concocted, false.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *faith.*
fidēs, -ium, plur. f., *lyre.*
fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, semi-depon., *trust* (abl. of *thing*; dat. of *person*).
fidus, -a, -um, *faithful, trustworthy.*
figō, -ere, fīxī, fīxum, *fix, fasten.*
figūra, -ae, f., *shape, form.*
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*
fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum, *form, fashion, fabricate.*
fīnis, -is, m., *end, limit, boundary*; plur., *territories.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be done, be made, become, take place.*
firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
fistula, -ae, f., *pipe, tube, reed* (musical instrument).
flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dem*
flamma, -ae, f., *flame.*
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, *turn, bend.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep.*
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, *blow.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
fluctus, -ūs, m *wave.*
flūmen, -minis, n., *river, stream.*
fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*
fluvius, -ī, m., *river, stream.*
focus, -ī, m., *hearth, fireside, home.*
fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossum, *dig.*
fōns, fontis, m., *fountain.*
fore = futūrus esse, fut. inf. of **sum.**
fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape.*
fōrmōsus, -a, -um, *shapely, beautiful.*
forte, defective noun, *by chance* (abl.).
fortis, -e, *brave, strong*; adv., **fortiter.**
fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery, courage.*
forum, -ī, n., *forum, market-place.*
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
frāctus, perf. part. of **frangō.**
fragor, -ōris, m., *crash*; (caelī), *thunder.*
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break.*
frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*
frequēns, -entis, *numerous, in large numbers.*
frētus, -a, -um, *relying on* (abl.).
frīgus, -oris, n., *cold, frost.*
frōns, frondis, f., *foliage.*
frōns, frontis, f., *forehead, brow.*
frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit.*
frūgēs, -um, plur., *fruits of the field, crops.*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to corn*; **rēs frūmentāria**, *corn supply.*
frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, -ī, *grain, corn.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus, *enjoy* (abl.).
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee.*
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *put to flight, pursue.*
fuī, perf. of **sum**.
fulgur, -uris, n., *lightning.*
fulmen, -minis, n., *thunder-bolt; lightning stroke.*
funda, -ae, f., *sling.*
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour; scatter, rout.*
fungor, -ī, fūnctus, *perform, execute, discharge* (*duty*) (abl.).
fūnis, -is, m., *rope, cable.*
Furia, -ae, f., *a Fury.*
furor, -ōris, m., *madness, frenzy.*
fūstis, -is, m., *club.*

G

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*
Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*
Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul; Frenchman.*
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, semidepon., *rejoice.*
gaudium, -ī, n., *joy.*
gemini, -ōrum, m., *twins.*
gemō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *groan.*
gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*
gēns, gentis, f., *race, tribe.*
genus, -eris, n., *kind, class.*
Germānus, -a, -um, *German.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *carry, carry on, do.*
gestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *carry, wear.*
gigās, gigantis, m., *giant.*
gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*
glōria, -ae, f., *glory.*
glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, *boast.*
glōriōsus, -a, -um, *boastful.*
Gracchus, -ī, m., *Gracchus*, the name of two young Roman brothers who championed the cause of the people.
gracilis, -e, *slender.*
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*
Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek.*
grāmen, -minis, n., *grass.*
grātia, -ae, f., *favor; gratitude;* **grātiā = causā**, *for the sake of.*
grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, *congratulate; rejoice.*
grātus, -a, -um, (1) *pleasing;* (2) *thankful.*
gravis, -e, *heavy, serious;* adv., **graviter**; **graviter ferō**, *am annoyed.*
grex, gregis, m., *herd, flock, pack.*
grūs, gruis, m., *crane.*
gula, -ae, f., *throat* (gullet).
gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *taste.*
gustus, -ūs, m., *taste.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (1) *have, hold;* (2) *deem, think.*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dwell, abide, reside.*
habitus, -ūs, m., *habit, costume, dress, guise, garb.*
Hadria, -ae, m., *the Adriatic.*
haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesum, *stick, cling.*
haerēs (**hērēs**), -ēdis, m., *heir.*
Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal*, a leader of the Carthaginians, who nearly conquered Rome.
hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*
haud, adv., *not.*
haudquāquam, adv., *by no means.*
Helena, -ae, f., *Helen*, wife of Menelaus and queen of Sparta; the cause of the Trojan War.
Helicōn, -cōnis, m., *Helicōn*, a mountain in Boeotia sacred to Apollo and the Muses.
Helvetius, -a, -um, *Helvetian*, a designation of the ancient Swiss.
Henna, -ae, f., *Enna*, a city in the centre of Sicily, sacred to Ceres.
Hephaestus, -ī, m., *Hephaestus*, Greek name of Vulcan.
Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules*, the strongest man of Greece; hero of the Twelve Labors; deified after death.
herī, loc. case used as adv., *yesterday.*

hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur. (castra), *winter camp, winter quarters.* hībernus, - a, -um, adj., *belonging to winter.*
Hibernia, -ae, f., *Ireland.*
hīc, haec, hōc, demonst. pron., *this.*
hīc, adv., *here.*
hiems, -is, f., *winter.*
hinc, adv., *hence.*
hircus, -i, m., *goat.*
Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*
Hispānus, -a, -um, *Spanish, Spaniard.*
hodiē, adv., *to-day.*
homō, -inis, m., *man, human being.*
honor, -ōris, m., *honor; office.*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*
Horātius, -i, m., *Horatius*, hero of the "Defence of the Bridge."
horrendus, -a, -um, *dreadful.*
horreō, -ēre, -uī, *shudder at, dread.*
horrēscō, -ere, *shudder at, dread.*
horribilis, -e, *dreadful.*
horridus, -a, -um, *rough, bristling; repulsive, dreadful.*
hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *exhort.*
hortus, -i, m., *garden.*
hospes, -itis, m., *guest.*
hospita, -ae, f., *guest* (a woman).
hostis, -is, m., *enemy.*
hūc, adv., *hither.*
hūmānus, -a, -um, *civilized, refined, cultured.*
humerus, -i, m., *shoulder.*
humilis, -e, *low, lowly.*
humus, -i, f., *the ground.*

I and J

Note. — The character **j** is a post-classical invention to distinguish, for the eye, the consonant or **y** value of **i**, of which it is merely a prolongation to suggest the intensifying of the sound. The English sound of **j** is an outgrowth of this **y** sound.

Many Latin texts print **j** as **i**, but for the sake of the pupil's studies in the derivation of English words, this book has retained the traditional **j**. To emphasize the original identity between the two characters, the Vocabulary gives **j** the same alphabetical rank as **i**.

I. = **Iulius** or **Iulius**, a praenomen.
iaceō, -ēre, -uī (jacitūrus), *lie.*
iaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw.*
iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *toss, throw.*
iaculum, -ī, *javelin, dart.*
iam, adv., *now, already, by this time.*
Ibērus, -ī, m., *the Ebro*, a river of Spain.
ibi, adv., *there.*
Idem, eadem, idem, intensive pron., *the same.*
idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable.*
Īdūs, -uum, f. plur., *the Ides*, 13th or 15th of the month.
igitur, adv., *therefore.*
ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant, unaware.*
ignāvia, -ae, f., *cowardice, laziness.*
ignāvus, -a, -um, *cowardly, lazy.*
igneus, -a, -um, *fiery.*
ignis, -is, m., *fire.*
ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *am ignorant, am unaware.*
ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *pardon.*
Īlium, -ī, n., *Ilium, Troy.*
ille, illa, illud, demonst. pron., *that.*
illiciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum, *allure, entice.*
illīdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *dash against.*
illūcēscō, -ere, -lūxī, *grow light.*
imāgō, -inis, f., *image, likeness.*
imber, -bris, m., gen. plur., imbrium, *rain.*
imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *wet, moisten, dip, dye.*
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, missum, *send in, let in.*
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sacrifice.*
immōtus, -a, -um (moveō), *unmoved.*
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plur., *baggage.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *hinder, obstruct.*
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *impel, drive.*
imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, general.*
imperium, -ī, n., *command, sway, empire.*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *command, demand.*
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obtain* (a request).
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack.*
impius, -a, -um, *unfilial, undutiful, impious.*
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *entreat, implore.*
impotēns, -entis, *without control.*
improbus, -a, -um, *bad.*
īmus, -a, -um, superl. of **inferus**, *lowest.*
in, prep. (1) (with abl.), *in;* (2) (with acc.), *into.*
incautus -a, -um, *incautious, reckless.*
incendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsum, *set fire to, burn.*
incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain.*
incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum (cadō), *fall into.*
incīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedo), *cut into.*
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *begin.*
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *stir up, urge, rouse.*
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum (claudō), *shut in, enclose.*
incognitus, -a, -um, *unknown.*
incola, -ae, m. or f., *inhabitant.*
incolō, -ere, -uī, *inhabit.*
incolumis, -e, *unharmed, safe.*
incommodus, -a, -um, *inconvenient;* **incommodum**, neut. used as subst., *a disaster.*
inde, adv., *thence.*
indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum (bellum), *declare war* (dat. of the *person upon whom*).
indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy* (abl.).
induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *put on* (*clothing*).
industria, -ae, f., *industry.*
indūtus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **induō**, *wearing, clad in.*
ineō, -ire, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *enter;* **cōnsilium ineō**, *form plan.*
iners, -ertis, *inactive, lifeless.*
inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum or illātum, *carry into;* bellum inferō, *wage war upon* (dat. of the *person*).
infēstus, -a, -um, *hostile, deadly.*
infirmitās, -ātis, f., *weakness, fickleness.*
infirmiter, adv., *weakly.*
infirmus, -a, -um, *weak, wavering.*
infīō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *flow into.*
ingenium, -ī, n., *natural disposition, talent.*
ingēns, -gentis, *immense, huge.*
ingrātus, -a, -um, *ungrateful.*
iniciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw into.*
inimīcus, -ī, m., *enemy, personal foe.*
iniquus, -a, -um, *unequal: unfavorable.*
initium, -ī, n., *beginning.*
injūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injustice.*
innīxus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **innītor**, *resting upon, supported by.*
innūptus, -a, -um (nubō), *unmarried.*
inops, -opis, *destitute, lacking* (gen.).
inquit, defective verb (inquam), *says he.*
insānīō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, *am insane, am mad.*
inscius, -a, -um, *unaware*
insidiae, -ārum, f. plur., *ambuscade, plot, treachery.*
insolēns, -lentis, *arrogant, insolent.*
instituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, (1) *set up, establish, institute;* (2) *resolve;* (3) *teach, instruct;* bene īnstitūtus, *well taught.*
instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *draw up, station, form* (line).
insuēfactus, -a, -um, *accustomed, habituated.*
insula, -ae, f., *island.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *understand, perceive, know.*
intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum or -tēnsum, *stretch, direct; bend* (a bow).
inter, *between, among.*
interdum, adv., *sometimes, occasionally.*
interea, *meanwhile.*
intereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *perish.*
interest, impersonal verb, = **rēfert**, *it is important, it concerns.*
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *kill, slay.*
interior, *inner.*
internus, *internal, inland;* Mare Internum, *the Mediterranean.*
interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, question.*
intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *am among; take part in* (governs dat.).
intervāllum, -ī, n., *interval.*
inūsitātus, -a, -um, *unused, unusual.*
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *find, discover.*
invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *envy* (governs dat.).
invidia, -ae, f., *envy, ill-will.*
invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *invite.*
invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling.*
invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call upon, invoke.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron., *self, very.*
īra, -ae, f., *anger.*
īrācundus, -a, -um, *wrathful, given to anger.*
īrāscor, -ī, īrātus, *become angry, am angry.*
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry.*
irrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *ridicule, laugh at* (governs acc.).
irrīsus, -ūs, m., *jeering, ridicule.*
is, ea, id, personal and demonst. pron., *he, she, it; that.*
iste, ista, istud, demonst. pron., *that* (of yours); *that* (contemptuously).
ita, *so, thus.*
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
itaque, conj., *therefore, consequently.*
iter, itineris, n., *road, journey, march.*
iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*
Ithaca, -ae, f., *Ithaca*, island west of Greece, home of Ulysses.
jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, *order, bid.*
jūdex, -icis, m., *judge.*
jūgerum, -ī, n., *acre.*
jugum, -ī, n., *yoke.*
Jūlius, -ī, m., *Julius*, a praenomen.
jūmentum, -ī, *beast of burden.*
jūnior, compar. of juvenis, *younger.*
Jūnō, -ōnis, f., *Juno*, spouse of Jupiter.
Jūpiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove.*
jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *swear.*
jūs, jūris, n., *law, right, justice, obligation.*
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, compound noun, *oath.*
jussū, *by order of.*
jūstitia, -ae, f., *justice.*
jūstus, -a, -um, *just.*
juvenis, -is, m., *a youth, young man.*
juventūs, -ūtis, f., *youth; the age of youth; a collection of youths.*
juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum (juvātūrus), *aid, help.*
juxtā, adv. and prep. (acc.), *near, close, next.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *the Kalends*, first of the month.
Karthāgō, -inis, f., = **Carthāgō**, *Carthage.*

L

L. = **Lūcius**, a praenomen.
labor, -ōris, m., *labor, toil, distress, hardship.*
lābor, -ī, lāpsus, *slip, slide, glide, fall.*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *labor, struggle, am in distress.*
lac, lactis, n., *milk.*
Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta.*
lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tear, rend.*
laevus, -a, -um, *left, left-hand.*
lāna, -ae, f., *wool.*

languidus, -a, -um, *languid, dull.*
lāniger, -gera, -gerum, *wool-bearing, fleecy.*
Lāomedōn, -ontis, m., *Laomedon*, an early king of Troy.
lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*
Lātōna, -ae, f., *Latona*, mother of Apollo and Diana.
lātrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad*; adv., **lātē**.
lātus, -a, -um, perf. part of **ferō**, *carried.*
lātus, -eris, n., *side.*
laudō, -āre -āvī, -ātum, *praise.*
Laurentius (fluvius), *the river St. Lawrence.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*
lēctor, -ōris (legō), *reader.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *a deputy*; (1) *lieutenant*; (2) *ambassador.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*
legiōnārius, -a, -um, *legionary.*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *pick, choose; read.*
Lemnos, -ī, f., *Lemnos*, an island in the Aegean Sea.
lēnis, -e, *mild, gentle.*
lentus, -a, -um, (1) *pliant, tough, sticky*; (2) *slow.*
leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.*
lepus, -oris, m., *hare.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *a law, enactment*; plur., *laws*, or *the law* collectively.
libenter, *gladly, willingly.*
liber, -brī, m., *book.*
liber, -era, -erum, *free*; **liberī**, -ōrum, m., *children.*
Liber, -erī, m., *Liber, Bacchus*, god of wine.
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *free, set free.*
lībertās, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*
libet, impersonal verb, *it pleases.*
licet, impersonal verb, *it is allowed.*
lignum, -ī, n., *wood.*
ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bind.*
linter, -tris, gen. plur. -ium, f., *boat, skiff.*
linteus, -a, -um, *made of linen, linen.*
littera, -ae, f., (1) sing. *a letter* of the alphabet; (2) plur. *letter* = *epistle*, (3) *letters, literature.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore, beach.*
locus, -ī, m.; plur. **loca**, -ōrum, n., *place.* (The mas. plur. **loci**, -ōrum, *topics*, is rare).
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, station.*
longē, adv., *far.*
longus, -a, -um, *long, distant.*
loquor, -ī, locūtus, *speak.*
lōrica, -ae, f., *cuirass, corselet, coat-of-mail.*
Lōtophagī, -ōrum, m., *Lotus-eaters.*
lōtus, -ī, f., *the lotus*, a plant found in the north of Africa.
lūcus, -ī, m., *grove.*
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, *play, mock.*
lūdus, -ī, m., (1) *play*; (2) *school.*
lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, *grieve, mourn.*
lūmen, -minis, n. (= lūmen), *a light.*
lūna, -ae, f. (= lūcna), *moon.*
lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf.*
lupus, -ī, m., *wolf.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light* (the condition).

■

M. = **Mārcus**, a praenomen.
M' = **Manius**, a praenomen.
māchina, -ae, f., *a contrivance, engine.*
maciēs, -ēī, f., *leanness, wasting.*
magicus, -a, -um, *magic.*
magis, adv., compar. of **māgnopere**, *more.*
magister, -trī, m., *master, teacher, captain* of a ship.
magistra, -ae, f., *mistress, teacher* (a woman).
māgnificus, -a, -um, *noble, high-minded; grand, magnificent.*
māgnitūdō, -dinis, f., *magnitude, size.*
māgnopere, adv., *greatly, earnestly.*
māgnus, -a, -um, *great, large.*
Māia, -ae, f., *Maia*, mother of Mercury.

maledīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *slander, revile, abuse.*
maledicus, -a, -um, *slanderous, abusive.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*
mālum, -ī, n., *apple.*
mālus, -ī, f., *apple-tree.*
mālus, -a, -um, *bad.*
mandātum, -ī, n., *behest, command.*
mandō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, *enjoin, commission, command, intrust.*
māne, indecl., *early* (in the morning).
maneō, -ere, mānsī, mānsum, *remain.*
Mānēs, -ium, m., *a shade, spirit* of a departed person; *the Shades,* deities of the under-world.
manus, -ūs, f., (1) *hand;* (2) *band* (of men), *force.*
mare, -is, n., *sea.*
marīnus, -a, -um, *marine, of the sea.*
maritimus, -a, -um, *of the sea;* **ōra maritima**, *sea coast.*
marītus, -ī, m., *husband, mate.*
Mārs, -rtis, m., *Mars, god of war.*
Mārtius, -a, -um, *of Mars.*
māter, -tris, f., *mother.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *matrimony;* **in mātr. dūcō**, *marry.*
mātrōna, -ae, f., *married woman, matron, dame.*
mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe, early;* adv., **-ē.**
māximus, superl. of **māgnus**, *largest, greatest;* adv., **māximē**, *chiefly, most.*
medius, -a, -um, *mid, middle.*
Medūsa, -ae, f., *Medūsa,* one of the Gorgons.
mel, mellis, n., *honey.*
melior, compar. of **bonus.**
membrum, -ī, n., *member, part of the body, limb.*
meminī, meminisse, defect. verb, *remember.*
memor, -oris, adj., *mindful.*
memoria, -ae, f., *memory.*
mendīcus, -ī, m., *beggar.*
Menelāus, -ī, m., *Menelaus,* king of Sparta, husband of Helen, and instigator of the Trojan War.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table.*
mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*
mentior, -īrī, mentītus, *lie* (*speak falsely*).
mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader.*
mercēs, -ēdis, f., *price, reward, wage, pay.*
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *merit, deserve.*
mereor, -ērī, meritus = **mereō.**
meridiēs, -ēī, m., (1) *mid-day;* (2) *south.*
meritō, adv., *deservedly, by merit.*
messis, -is, f., *harvest.*
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, *measure.*
metuō, -uere, -uī, *fear.*
metus, -ūs, m., *fear.*
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*
miles, -itis, m., *soldier.*
militāris, -e, *military.*
mille, sing. indecl. adj., *thousand;* plur., **millia**, a substantive, *thousands.*
Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva,* goddess of learning, weaving, and war.
minimus, superl. of **parvus**, *least, smallest;* adv., **minimē.**
minor, compar. of **parvus**, *less, smaller;* adv., **minus.**
minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *lessen, diminish.*
mirābilis, -e, *wonderful.*
miror, -ōris, m., *wonder.*
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, strange.*
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched, miserable, pitiable.*
misereor, -ērī, miseritus, *pity* (gen.).
miserēscō, -ere, miseruī, *pity* (gen.).
miseret, -ēre, miseruit, impersonal verb, *it excites to pity.*
misericordia, -ae, f., *compassion, pity.*
mītēscō, -ere, *grow mild.*
mītis, -e, *mild.*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, *send.*
mōbilis, -e (moveō), *changeable, fickle.*

modŏ, adv., *just, only, just now, recently.*
modus, -i, m., *manner, limit.*
mōlēs, -is, f., *mass, bulk; difficulty.*
molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, irksome.*
mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, *exert one's self, strive, contrive.*
mollis, -e, *soft.*
moneŏ, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *warn, advise.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
mōnstrŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show, point out.*
mōnstrum, -ī, n., *monster, prodigy.*
monumentum (or monim-), *monument, reminder, memorial.*
mora, -ae, *delay.*
morior, -ī, mortuus, *die.*
moror, -ārī, -ātus, *delay.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortālis, -e, *mortal, subject to death.*
mortifer, -fera, -ferum, *deadly, mortal, death-bearing.*
mortuus, -a, -um, *dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom, (settled) habit.*
mōtus, -ūs, m., (1) *movement, motion;* (2) *commotion, disturbance.*
-mōtus, -a, -um, perf. part. of moveŏ, *moved.*
moveŏ, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, influence.*
mox, adv., *soon, presently.*
muliebriter, adv., *womanlike; in the manner of women.*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdŏ, -inis, f., *multitude.*
multus, -a, -um, *much;* plur., *many.*
mūniŏ, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, *fortify, protect.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
mūs, **mūris**, m., *mouse.*
Mūsa, -ae, f., *a Muse.*
musca, -ae, f., *a fly.*
mūsica, -ae, f., *music.*
mūtŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *change, exchange.*
Mycēnae, -ārum, *Mycēnae*, a wealthy city in lower Greece.

N

nam, *for.*
nanciscor, -ī, nanctus or nactus, *obtain, find.*
nārrŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tell, narrate.*
nāscor, -ī, nātus, *am born.*
nātiŏ, -ōnis, f., *tribe, nation.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature.*
nātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **nāscor**, *born.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvigium, -ī, n., *boat, vessel.*
nāvigŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *navigate, sail.*
nāvis, -is, f., *ship;* nāvis onerāria, *ship of burden;* nāvis longa, *ship of war.*
nē, negative of warning, wish, prohibition, purpose; *lest; not, may not; (in order) that not;* used with the subjunctive and the fut. imperative, in poetry with the pres. imperative.
-ne, interrogative enclitic, not translated in a direct question; in a dependent question, *whether.*
nec = **neque**, used before consonants, *neither, nor.*
necŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *kill.*
nectŏ, -ere, nexui, nexum, *join, fasten.*
nefās, indecl., n., *wrong, contrary to divine law.*
negŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deny.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *business, task.*
nēmŏ, (dat., -inī), m. or f., *no one.*
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, god of the sea.
nēquāquam, adv., *by no means.*
neque (nec), *neither, nor;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*
nesciŏ, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, *do not know, am ignorant.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, gen. neutrīus, dat. neutrī, *neither.*
nex, necis, f., *death, killing.*
nīdus, -ī, m., *nest.*
niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
nihil, indecl. subst., n., *nothing.*

nihilō, abl. of rare form **nihilum**, *nothing*; chiefly in the phrase **nihilōminus**, *none the less*.
nīl = **nihil**.
nimis, adv., *too much*.
nimius, -a, -um, *excessive, too much*.
nisi, conj., *unless, except*.
nīsus, -ūs, m., *effort*.
nitor, -ōris, m., *brightness, splendor*.
nitor, -ī, nīxus or nīsus, *strive, endeavor*.
nix, nivis, f., *snow*.
nīxus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **nitor**.
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *hurt, injure* (governs dat.).
noctū, adv., *by night*.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *am unwilling, do not wish*.
nōmen, -minis, n., *name*.
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *name, call*.
nōn, negative of plain denial of fact, *not*.
Nōnae, -ārum, f., *Nones*, 5th or 7th of the month.
nōndum, adv., *not yet*.
nōnne, *not?* suggesting the answer *Yes*.
nōnnumquam (not never), *sometimes, occasionally*.
nōnus, -a, -um, *ninth*.
noster, -tra, -trum, *our*.
notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *note, mark, indicate*.
nōtus, -a, -um (nōscō), *known*.
novem, *nine*.
novus, -a, -um, *new*; **novissimus**, *latest, last*.
nox, noctis, f., *night*.
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry* (used of a woman).
nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strip bare*.
nūdus, -a, -um, *bare, naked*.
nūllus, -a, -um, gen. -īus, dat. -ī, *no, none*.
num, interrog. adv. or conj., (1) in direct questions, not translated, suggests the answer *No*; (2) in dependent single questions, *whether*.
Numa, -ae, m., *Numa*, a Roman name.
numerus, -i, m., *number*.
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, king of Alba, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.
numquam, adv., *never*.
nunc, adv., *now*.
nunquam = **numquam**.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *report, announce*.
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger; message*.
nūptiae, -ārum, f. plur., *wedding, marriage ceremony*.
nusquam, adv., *nowhere*.
nūtriō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, *nourish, feed, foster*.

O

obferō (offerō), -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *offer, present, put in one's way*.
oblātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **obferō**.
oblītus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **oblīviscor**, *having forgotten*.
obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *overwhelm*.
obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obscure, darken*.
obscūrus, -a, -um, *dark, obscure*.
obses, -idis, m. or f., *hostage*.
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege, beset*.
obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege*.
obsum, -esse, -fuī, *am in the way, am opposed to* (dat.).
obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obey, submit to*.
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold; obtain*.
obtulī, perf. of **obferō**.
obviam, adv., *meeting* (on a journey), *against*.
occāsus, -ūs, m. (occidō), *setting* (of the sun); *west*.
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum (cadō), *fall, set*.
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedō), *kill*.
occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hide, conceal*.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *occupy, seize.*
occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *run against, come upon.*
Ōceanus, -ī, m., *the Ocean* (Atlantic).
ocrea, -ae, f., *greave, leggin.*
octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*
octingentī, -ae, -a, *eight hundred.*
octō, *eight.*
octōgintā, *eighty.*
oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*
ōdī, -isse, ōsūrus, defective verb, *hate.*
odium, -ī, n., *hatred.*
offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *run against, meet suddenly, shock, offend.*
offerō = **obferō.**
ōlim, adv., *once upon a time, once, formerly.*
Olympus, -ī, m., *Olympus*, a mountain in Thessaly, supposed to be the abode of the gods.
omninō, adv., *altogether, in all, at all.*
omnis, -e, *all, every.*
onerārius, -a, -um, *of burden*; **nāvis onerāria**, *transport.*
onus, -eris, n., *load, burden, cargo.*
opifer, -fera, -ferum, *help-bringing.*
opifex, -ficis, m., *workman, fabricator.*
oportet, -ēre, -uit, impersonal verb, *it behooves, is right.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *attack.*
(ops) opis, f., *means, resource, aid*; plur. **opēs**, *resources, wealth, power.*
optimus, -a, -um, *best*, superl. of **bonus.**
opus, -eris, n., *work.*
ōra, -ae, f., *coast.*
ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration; language*; **ōrātiōnem habeō**, *deliver a speech.*
ōrātor, -ōris, m., *speaker, orator; spokesman.*
orbis, -is, m., *ring, orb*; **orbis terrārum**, *the world.*
Orcus, -i, m., *Hades, the underworld.*
ōrdior, -īri, ōrsus, *begin, arise.*
ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, rank.*
Orestēs, -is, m., *Orestes*, son of Agamemnon.
oriēns, -entis, *rising*; (sōl) *east.*
orior, -īrī, ortus, *rise.*
ōrnāmentum, -i, n., *adornment, equipment.*
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *adorn, equip, furnish.*
ornus, -ī, f., *ash-tree.*
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *beg, beseech.*
ortus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **orior**, *risen.*
ortus, -ūs, m., *rising.*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face.*
os, ossis, n., *bone.*
ostendō, -ere, -ndī, -tēnsum or -tentum, *show, point out.*
ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *present to view, exhibit, display.*
ovis, -is, f., *sheep.*
ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.*

P

P. = **Pūblius**, a praenomen.
paciscor, -ī, pactus, *agree, stipulate, bargain.*
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *quiet, pacify.*
pactus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **paciscor**, with a passive sense, *stipulated.*
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impersonal, *it repents, excites to repentance.*
pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton.*
palam, adv., *openly.*
Palatīnus (collis), *the Palatine*, the first of the seven hills of Rome to be built upon.
Palladium, -ī, n., *the Palladium*, an image of Minerva (Pallas), believed to have fallen from heaven, and kept as a guarantee of Troy's security.
Pallas, -adis, f., *Pallas*, a Greek name for Minerva.
pallidus, -a, -um, *pale.*

palma, -ae, *f.*, *palm*.
palūdāmentum, -ī, *n.*, *military cloak*.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, *marsh*, *swamp*.
pandō, -ere, pandī, passum (pānsum), *open*, *spread out*.
pānis, -is, *m.*, *bread*.
papāver, -eris, *n.*, *poppy*.
papȳrus, -ī, *f.*, *paper-reed*, *papyrus*.
pār, paris, *equal*.
parātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **parō**, *ready*, *prepared*.
parcō, -ere, peperci, parsum, *spare* (governs dat.).
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *obey*.
parēns, -entis, *m.* or *f.* (pariō), *parent*.
pariēs, -etis, *m.*, *wall* (of a house).
pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *bring forth*, *bear*; *get*, *obtain*.
Paris, -idis, *m.*, *Paris*, son of Priam, the lover of Helen, and cause of the Trojan War.
pariter, adv., *equally*, *side by side*.
Parnassus, -ī, *m.*, *Parnassus*, a mountain in Phocis, northern Greece, sacred to Apollo and the Muses. At its foot were Delphi and the Castalian spring.
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare*.
pars, partis, *f.*, *part*.
particeps, -cipis, *sharing in* (governs gen.).
parturiō, -īre, -īvī, *give birth to*.
parum, adv., *too little*.
parvus, -a, -um, *small*.
pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum, *feed*.
passim, adv., *everywhere*.
passus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **patior**.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, *pace*.
pāstor, -ōris, *shepherd*, *herder*, "*cow-boy*."
pāstus, -ūs, *m.*, *pasture*.
pāstus, -a, -um, perf part. of **pāscō**.
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *open*; passive, **patefīō**.
pateō, -ēre, -uī, *am open*, *lie open*; *stretch*, *extend*.
pater, -tris, *m.*, *father*.
patiēns, -entis, pres. part. of **patior**; used as adj., *patient*.
patior, -ī, passus, *suffer*, *allow*.
patria, -ae, *f.*, *native land*, *one's country*.
patrius, -a, -um, *belonging to one's father*, *or native land*; *ancestral*.
pauci, -ae, -a, *few*.
paulātim, adv., *little by little*, *gradually*.
paulisper, adv., *for a little while*.
paulō, adv. of degree (*by a*) *little*; paulō post, paulō ante.
pauper, -eris, *poor*.
pavidus, -a, -um, *trembling*, *full of fear*.
pavor, -ōris, *m.*, *trembling*, *fear*.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, *peace*.
peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *err*, *sin*.
pectus, -oris, *n.*, *breast*.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, *money*.
pecus, -udis, *f.*, *a head of cattle*; *a beast*; *domestic animal* (*sheep*, *goat*, etc.).
pecus, -oris, *n.*, *herd*, *flock*; *cattle* (collectively).
pedes, -itis, *m.*, *foot-soldier*.
pedester, -tris, -tre, *pertaining to infantry*, *infantry* (adj.).
pedica, -ae, *f.*, *fetter*, *snare*, *trap*.
peditātus, -ūs, *m.*, *infantry* (collectively).
pējor, -us, compar. of **malus**, *worse*.
pelagus, -ī, *n.*, *sea* (poetic).
pellis, -is, *f.*, *skin*, *fur*; *pelt*, *hide*.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive*, *banish*.
pendeō, -ēre, pependī, pēnsum, *hang* (intrans.).
pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, *hang* (trans.); *weigh*; *pay*.
penes, prep. (acc.), *in the power of*.
pēnsum, -ī, *n.*, *a task* (literally, *wool weighed out as a day's work*); *lesson*.
pepulī, perf. of **pellō**.
per, prep. (acc.), *through*.
peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wander through*, *traverse*.
percellō, -ere, -culī, -culsum, *strike*; *terrify*.
perculsus, perf. part. of **percellō**.

percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *strike violently; shock.*
perditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **perdō**, *ruined, desperate.*
perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *destroy, ruin.*
perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead through, conduct.*
pereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *perish.*
perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ride through.*
perfacilis, -e, *very easy.*
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *endure, bear; carry (through).*
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *complete, finish.*
perfidia, -ae, f., *perfidy, treachery.*
perfidus, -a, -um, *perfidious, treacherous.*
perflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *blow through.*
perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break through.*
perfūsus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **perfundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *besprinkled, moistened.*
pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *go on, persist.*
periculōsus, -a, -um, *dangerous.*
peritus, -a, -um, *skilled* (governs gen.).
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *intrust to.*
permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, influence.*
permulceō, -ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *soothe, soften.*
permūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *exchange.*
perniciēs, -ēī, f., *ruin, destruction.*
perpaucī, -ōrum, *very few.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, *perpetual, lasting.*
perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through.*
Perseus, -eī, m., *Perseus*, son of Danae and rescuer of Andromeda.
persōna, -ae, f., *mask.*
perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *perceive.*
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade* (governs dat.).
perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum, *terrify, frighten.*
pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī, *fear, dread.*
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *stretch, extend; pertain.*
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *disturb, throw into confusion.*
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *arrive.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
pessimus, -a, -um, superl. of **malus**, *worst.*
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, *seek.*
Phaedrus, -ī, m., *Phaedrus*, an author of fables, a freedman of the Emperor Augustus.
pharetra, -ae, f., *quiver, arrow-case.*
Pierus, -ī, m., *Pierus*, father of the Muses.
piget, -ēre, -uit, impersonal, *it grieves, vexes.*
pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*
pinguis, -e, *fat.*
pinna, -ae, f., *feather.*
pīnus, -ūs or -ī, f., *pine, fir.*
placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *please.*
plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *plain.*
plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*
plērīque, -aeque, -aque (rarely sing.), *the majority, the greater number.*
plērumque, adv., *for the most part, usually.*
plūs, compar. of **multus**, *more.*
Plūtō, -ōnis, m., *Pluto*, god of the lower world.
pōculum, -ī, n., *cup, drink, draft.*
poena, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*
Poenus (Poenicus), -a, -um, *Carthaginian* (*Phoenician*).
poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, *promise.*
Polydectēs, -is, m., *Polydectes*, a king who married Danae.
pōmifer, -fera, -ferum, *fruit-bearing.*
Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey*, a great Roman soldier, rival of Caesar.
Pompilius, -ī, *Pompilius*, name of one of the kings of Rome.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *place.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
populus, -ī, m., *a people, nation.*
porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *stretch out.*
porta, -ae, f., *gate, door.*
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry.*
portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*
poscō, -ere, poposcī, *demand.*
positus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **pōnō**, *placed.*
possum, posse, potuī, *am able, can.*
post, prep. (acc.), *after;* adv., *afterwards.*
postea, adv., *afterwards.*
posterus, -a, -um, *later, following;* **posterī**, *descendants.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postridiē, adv. (= posterō diē), *on the following day.*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand.*
potēns, -entis, *powerful.*
potestās, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*
pōtiō, -ōnis, f., *drink.*
potior, -īrī, potītus, *gain possession of* (governs abl.).
potius, adv., *rather.*
praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *instruct, warn, teach.*
praecipuē, adv., *especially.*
praeclārus, -a, -um, *renowned, famous.*
praeda, -ae, f., *prey, booty.*
praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *foretell, predict.*
praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -atum, *assert, declare openly, announce, proclaim.*
praedō, -ōnis, m., *plunderer, robber, pirate.*
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *appoint over, put in command of* (governs acc. and dat.).
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send forward.*
praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize.*
praesertim, adv., *especially.*
praesideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *preside* (governs dat.).
praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, guard.*
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, (1) *show;* (2) impersonal, **praestat**, *it is better.*
praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *am at the head of, command* (governs dat.).
praeter, prep. (acc.), *past; except.*
praetereā, adv., *besides.*
praetereō, -ire, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *pass.*
praetexta (toga), *toga praetexta*, worn by senators and boys; bordered with purple.
praeūstus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **praeūrō**, *burnt at the end, burnt to a point.*
prātum, -ī, n., *meadow.*
precēs, plur. of **prex**, f., *prayers, entreaties.*
precor, -ārī, -ātus, *pray, entreat.*
prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *seize, grasp.*
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, *press.*
pretium, -ī, n., *price.*
(**prex**, **precis**) **precī**, nom. and gen. not in use, f., *prayer, entreaty.*
Priamus, -ī, m., *Priam*, king of Troy.
prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
prīnceps, -cipis, m., *chief.*
prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, previous.*
prior, -ōris, *previous, first of two.*
prius, adv., *sooner, before.*
priusquam, conj., *sooner than, before.*
prō, prep. (abl.), *in front of; in defence of, for; in return for; instead of.*
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *proceed.*
procella, -ae, f., *storm-blast, squall.*
procul, adv., *afar.*
prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *betrayal, treason.*
prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *betray.*
proelior, -ārī, -ātus, *fight.*
proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry forward.*
proficiscor, -ī, -fectus, *set out.*
prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *go forward, advance.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, *prevent.*
prōiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw forward.*
prōmissus, -a, -um (prōmittō) (of hair), *allowed to stream loose, flowing.*
prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move forward.*
prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *declare.*
prope, adv. and prep. (acc.), *near.*
prōpel!ō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *propel, move forward.*
properē, adv., *in haste, speedily.*
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*
propter, prep. (acc.), *on account of.*
Prōserpina, -ae, f., *Proserpina*, daughter of Ceres and Jupiter, and wife of Pluto.
prōsum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, prō-futūrus, *am serviceable* (governs dat.).
prōterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum (terō, *rub*), *tread close behind, trample on.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*
proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next.*
prūdēns, -dentis, *foreseeing, prudent.*
prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight.*
pruīna, -ae, f., *hoar frost.*
pūblicānus, -ī, m., *farmer of taxes.*
pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.*
Pūblius, -ī, m., *Publius*, a praenomen.
pudet, -ēre, -uit, impersonal, *it shames.*
pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, modesty.*
puella, -ae, f., *girl.*
puer, -erī, m., *boy, child.*
puerculus, -ī, m., *little boy.*
pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle.*
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*
pulchritūdō, -inis, f., *beauty.*
pulvis, -eris, m., *dust.*
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *punish.*
puppis, -is, f., *stern.*
puteus, -ī, m., *well, pit.*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think.*
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenaean.*

Q

quā, adv., (*by*) *which way, where.*
quaer -ere, quaesīvī, -situm, *seek, inquire.*
quālis, -e, interrog. or rel. adj., *of what kind, of which kind, as.*
quam, (1) conj., *than*; (2) rel. adv., *as* (modifying an adj. or adv. and expressing degree); (3) interrog. adv., *how* (of degree).
quamdiū, conj., *as long as*; adv., *how long.*
quamquam, conj., *although.*
quandō, *when*; *since* (of cause).
quantus, -a, -um, interrog. or rel. adj., *how great*; *as great, as.*
quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth.*
quaternī, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *four at a time.*
quattuor, *four.*
-que, enclitic conj., *and.*
quercus, -ūs, f., *an oak.*
quī, quae, quod, (1) rel. pron. or adj., *who, which, what,* (2) interrog. adj., *which, what.*
quia, conj., *because.*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quidcumque or quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. or adj., *whoever, whatever.*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, indef. pron. or adj., *a certain one.*
quidem, adv., *indeed*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even* (enclosing the words emphasized).
quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, quiet.*
quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, indef. pron. or adj., *any whatever, any at all, any you like.*
quīn, conj., in independ. clause, *why not, nay indeed*; in depend. clause, *but that* (see p. 352).
quīngentī, -ae, -a, *five hundred.*
quīngentēsimus, -a, -um, *five hundredth.*
quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, *fiftieth.*
quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*
quīnque, *five.*
quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth.*

quis, quid, (1) interrog. pron., *who, what*; (2) indef. pron. after sī, nē, nisi, (fem. adj. qua), *any, anyone.*

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), indef. pron., *any, anyone, anything*, in a negative connection.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pron. or adj., *each, every.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or quodvīs, indef. pron. or adj., *anyone, whatever, anyone you please.*

quō, (1) adv. and conj., *whither*; (2) abl. rel. pron. used as conj., *in order that* (instead of **ut** with comparatives).

quod, conj., (1) *because*; (2) *the fact that.*

quōminus, conj., *by which the less*, used with verbs of hindering.

quōmodo, adv., *how.*

quondam, adv., *formerly, once.*

quoniam, conj., *since, because.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

quot, indecl. interrog. or rel. adj., *how many, as many.*

R

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root.*

rāna, -ae, f., *frog.*

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, *seize, carry off.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *reason, plan.*

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

rebelliō, -ōnis, f., *renewal of war.*

recēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -cēnsu.), *review.*

recordor, -ārī, -ātus, *recall, recollect.*

rēctē, adv., *rightly, properly*; compar. **rēctius.**

recurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run back, return.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refuse, object.*

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return.*

reddūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back.*

redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *go back, return.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *renew.*

reditus, -ūs, m., *return.*

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *carry back, refer.*

rēfert, rēferre, rētulit, impersonal, *it concerns.*

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *repair, rebuild.*

rēgia, -ae, f., *royal palace* (= rēgia domus); from adj. **rēgius**, -a, -um, *royal.*

rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *reign.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom, kingship, sovereignty.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule.*

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus*, the hero of the First Punic War.

rēiciō, -ere, rējēcī, rējectum, *throw back.*

relābor, -ī, -lāpsus, *slip back.*

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religion.*

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave.*

reliquiae, -ārum, f., *remains.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining.*

remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *remain.*

rēmex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman.*

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *row.*

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *return.*

reminīscor, -ī, *remember* (governs gen.).

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *report.*

repellō, -ere, reppulī, -pulsum, *drive back.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *discover, find.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair.*

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, *tear down, destroy.*

resistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *resist* (governs dat.).

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *a reply.*
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *commonwealth, public interest.*
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *restore.*
retrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *draw back, drag back.*
revertor, -ī, -versus, *return.*
revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *recall.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhea, -ae, f., *Rhea*, mother of Romulus.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *Rhine.*
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *Rhone.*
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh, laugh at* (governs acc.).
rigeō, -ēre, *am stiff, frozen.*
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
rīvus, -ī, m., *stream.*
rōbur, -oris, n., *oak, strength.*
rōbustus, -a, -um, *strong, robust.*
rogātū, *at the request.*
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask.*
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus*, founder of Rome.
rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak, prow* (of a ship).
rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*
ruber, -bra, -brum, *red.*
rūgōsus, -a, -um (rūga), *full of wrinkles, wrinkled.*
rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, hearsay.*
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, *break.*
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, *rush; fall to ruin.*
rūpēs, -is, f., *rock, cliff.*
rūrsus, adv., *again.*
rūs, rūris, n., *the country; rural district.*

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, *Sabine*, designating a people of Italy adjoining the Latins.
sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred.*
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. or f., *priest, priestess.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
saevus, -a, -um, *savage, cruel.*
sagāx, -ācis, *shrewd, sagacious.*
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*
sagittārius, -ī, m., *archer, bowman.*
sagum, -ī, n., *military cloak.*
sāl, salis, m., *salt.*
saliō, -īre, -uī, *leap.*
saltus, -ūs, m., *woodland pasture; mountain pass.*
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, health, welfare.*
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *greet.*
Samnīs, -ītis, *Samnite*, of Samnium, a district of Italy.
sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*
sānus, -a, -um, *sound, sane, healthy.*
sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*
sarcinae, -ārum, f. plur., *personal baggage* (of a soldier).
satiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *satisfy.*
satis (or **sat**), adv., *enough.*
satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *satisfy, make amends to.*
Sāturnus, -ī, *Saturn*, father of Jupiter.
satus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **serō**; *sown, planted; descended from, son of.*
saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*
scelus, -eris, n., *crime, wickedness.*
schola, -ae, f., *school.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill.*
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *know.*
Scīpiō, -ōnis, *Scipio*, name of a noble Roman family.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.*
scriptor, -ōris, m., *writer.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
sē, acc. or abl. of reflex. pron. **suī**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
secō, -āre, -uī, sectum, *cut.*
sector, -ārī, -ātus, *follow continually, chase, pursue.*
secundus, -a, -um, *following, second; favorable.*
secūris, -is, f., *axe.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sēdecim, *sixteen.*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit.*
sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, abode, home.*
sellula, -ae, f. (sella), *little seat, stool.*
semper, adv., *always.*

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*; **senātūs cōnsultum**, *decree of the senate*.
senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age*.
senex, senis, *old* (of persons).
sēnsus, -ūs, m., *sense*.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *feel, perceive, think*.
sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, *bury*.
septem, indecl., *seven*.
septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*.
septingentēsimus, -a, -um, *seven hundredth*.
septingentī, -ae, -a, *seven hundred*.
septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, *seventieth*.
septuāgintā, indecl., *seventy*.
sepulchrum, -ī, n., *burial-place, tomb, sepulchre*.
sequor, -ī, secūtus, *follow*.
sermō, -ōnis, m., *speech, conversation*.
sērō, adv., *late, too late*.
sero, -ere, seruī, sertum, *join, plait, weave*.
serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant*.
sertum, -ī, n., *garland, wreath*.
servīō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, *serve*.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *save*.
servus, -ī, m., *slave*.
sēscentēsimus, -a, -um, *six hundredth*.
sēscentī, -ae, -a, *six hundred*.
sevērus, -a, -um, *serious, grave, severe, strict*.
sexāgēsimus, -a, -um, *sixtieth*.
sexāgintā, indecl., *sixty*
sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*.
si, conj., *if*.
sibi, dat. of reflex. pron. **suī**.
sīc, adv., *so, thus*.
siccus, -a, -um, *dry*.
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.
sīcut, adv., *just as*.
sīdus, -eris, n., *group of stars, constellation*.
signifer, -ferī, m., *standard-bearer*.
signum, -ī, n., *image; standard; signal*.
silentium, -ī, n., *silence*.
silva, -ae, f., *a wood, forest*.
Silvānus, -ī, m., *Silvanus*, a deity of the woods.
silvester, -tris, -tre, *wooded*.
similis, -e, *like*.
simul, adv., *at the same time*; as a conj. = **simul atque**, *at the same time as, as soon as*.
simulācrum, -ī, n., *shrine, image*.
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *pretend*.
sine, prep. (abl.), *without*.
singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *one at a time*.
sinister, -tra, -trum, *left, on the left hand*.
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, *allow, permit*.
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, *am thirsty*.
sitis, -is, f., *thirst*.
socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law*.
socius, -ī, m., *companion, partner, associate*.
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-depon., *am accustomed*.
sōlum, adv., *only*.
solum, -ī, n., *soil, ground*.
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone*.
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, *loosen, release, cast off* (of a ship).
somnus, -ī, m., *sleep*.
soror, -ōris, f., *sister*.
sors, sortis, f., *lot, casting of lots*.
sortior, -īrī, sortītus, *cast lots, choose by lot*.
speciēs, -ēī, f., *appearance*.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *look at*.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hope*.
spēs, speī, f., *hope*.
spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *breathe*.
splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid*.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rob*.
spūma, -ae, f., *foam*.
stabulum, -ī, m., *stall, stable*.
statim, adv., *at once, immediately*.
stella, -ae, f., *star*.
stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *stand*.
strēnuus, -a, -um, *strenuous, active*.
strepitus, -ūs, m., *noise, din*.
strepō, -ere, -uī, *make a noise, rattle*.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, (1) *bind, draw tight*; (2) *strip bare*; *draw* (a sword).
studeō, -ēre, -uī, *am anxious for, fond of, bent upon* (governs dat.).
studium, -ī, n., *desire, zeal.*
stultitia, -ae, f., *folly, foolishness.*
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*
suāvis, -e, *sweet, pleasant*; adv., **suāviter**.
sub, prep. (acc. or abl.), *under.*
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw up.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
sublātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **tollō**, *raised, removed.*
subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *furnish, supply.*
submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move away, dislodge.*
submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send to the rescue.*
subsequor, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up.*
subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *aid, help, come to the aid of* (governs dat.).
succinctus, -a, -um, *girt, encircled.*
sudis, -is, f., *stake.*
sūdor, -ōris, m., *sweat.*
suī, sibi, sē, reflex. pron., *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves.*
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *I am.*
summa, -ae, f., *top, sum total, pre-eminence.*
summus, -a, -um, *topmost, highest.*
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take.*
sūmptus, -ūs, m., *expense, cost.*
super, prep. (acc. or abl.), *above, over.*
superbus, -a, -um, *proud.*
superior, -ius, compar. of **superus**, (1) *upper*; (2) *previous.*
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *overcome, conquer.*
supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *survive, remain only.*
superus, -a, -um, *upper.* **Superī**, -ōrum, *the gods.*
supplicium, -ī, n., *penalty, punishment* (usually of death).
suprā, adv., *above*; prep. (acc.), *above, beyond.*
suprēmus, -a, -um, superl. of **superus**, *uppermost*; *final, last.*
sūs, suis, m. or f., *swine, pig.*
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake.*
suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, *suspect.*
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *sustain, withstand.*
sūtor, -ōris, m., *one who sews, cobbler.*
suus, -a, -um, *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *their* (*own*), referring to the subject.

T

T. = **Titus**, a praenomen.
tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent.*
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *am silent.*
taciturnus, -a, -um, *habitually silent.*
tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*
tāctus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **tangō**, *touched.*
taedet, -ēre, -uit, impersonal, *it wearies.*
talentum, -ī, n., *talent*, weight of gold or silver; usually about $1200.
tālis, -e, *such* (in kind).
tam, adv. of degree, *so.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless, however.*
tandem, adv., *at last.*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so large.*
tardus, -a, -um, *slow.*
Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*, daughter of Tarpeius; the maiden who betrayed the Roman citadel to the Sabines.
Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*, the name of two Roman kings.
tēctum, -ī, n., *roof, dwelling, home.*
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover.*
Tēlemachus, -ī, m., *Telemachus*, the son of Ulysses.
tellūs, -ūris, f., *the earth.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, dart, weapon.*
temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *control, restrain.*
tempestās, -ātis, f., (1) *weather*; (2) *storm.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*
tempus, -oris, n., *time.*
tenāx, -ācis, *tenacious.*
tenebrae, -ārum, f. plur., *darkness.*
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, *hold.*
tener, -era, -erum, *tender.*
tenuis, -e, *thin, slender, frail.*
tergum, -ī, n., *back.*
ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *three at a time;* terna castra, *three camps.*
terra, -ae, f., *land, earth.*
terrester, -tris, -tre, *earthly, belonging to land.*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *frighten, terrify.*
terror, -ōris, m., *terror, fright.*
testis, -is, m., *witness.*
testūdō, -inis, f., (1) *tortoise;* (2) *testudo*, i.e., a protection formed by locking shields over head.
Tiber, -eris, m., *Tiber*, the river flowing through Rome.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, *fear.*
timor, -ōris, m., *fear.*
toga, -ae, f., *toga.*
togātus, -a, -um, *clad in the toga.*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise, remove.*
tormentum, -ī, n., *engine of war.*
torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum, *twist, bend, whirl.*
tot, indecl., *so many.*
totiēs, adv., *so often.*
tōtus, -a, um, *whole.*
trabs, -is, f., *beam.*
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, surrender.*
tragicus, -a, -um, *tragic.*
trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw, drag.*
trāiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw across; cross.*
trāns, prep. (acc.), *across.*
trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, *cross.*
trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry across.*
trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred.*
tredecim, indecl., *thirteen.*
trēs, tria, *three.*
tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *give, assign.*
tricēsimus, -a, -um, *three hundredth.*
triformis, -e, *of triple form.*
trīgintā, indecl., *thirty.*
trīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *three at a time.*
triplex, -plicis, *threefold, triple.*
tristis, -e, *sad, gloomy.*
Trōja, -ae, f., *Troy.*
Trōjānus, -a, -um, *Trojan.*
tū, tuī, tibi, *thou.*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*
tugurium, -ī, n., *hut.*
tulī, perf. of **ferō**.
tum, adv., *then.*
tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill.*
tunc, adv., = **tum**, *then.*
turba, -ae, f., *crowd, throng.*
turbidus, -a, -um, *stormy.*
turbō, -inis, m., *whirlwind.*
turbulentus, -a, -um, *disturbed;* (of water), *muddy.*
turgidus, -a, -um, *turgid, swollen.*
turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base.*
turris, -is, f., *tower.*
tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your.*

U

ubi, conj. or adv., (1) *where;* (2) *when.*
Ulixēs, -is, m., *Ulysses.*
ūllus, -a, -um, gen. -īus, dat. -ī, *any.*
ulterior, *farther.*
ultimus, -a, -um, *last, uttermost.*
ultrā, adv. or prep. (acc.), *beyond.*
ululātus, -ūs, m., *howl, shriek.*
umbra, -ae, f., *shade.*
unda, -ae, f., *wave.*
unde, conj. or adv., *whence.*
undique, adv., *from all sides.*
unguis, -is, m., *nail, claw.*
ūnicus, -a, -um, *sole, only.*
ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -īus, dat. -ī, *one, alone.*
urbs, -is, f., *city.*
urgeō, -ēre, *press upon, urge.*
ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstum, *burn.*
ursus, -i, m., *bear.*

ūsque, adv., *all the way* (to or from), *right* (to or from).
ut (utī), conj., (1) with the subjunctive, *that, in order that* (of purpose or result); (2) with indicative, *as, when.*
uter, -tra, -trum, gen. -īus, dat. -ī, *which of two?*
ūter, -tris, m., *bag, sack* (of skin).
uterque, -traque, -trumque, *each of two, both.*
ūtilis, -e, *useful.*
utinam, adv., *Would that! O that!* introducing a wish.
ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *use* (governs abl.).
ūva, -ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes.*
uxor, -ōris, *wife, mate.*

V

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lie vacant, be vacant.*
vagor, -ārī, -ātus, *wander.*
vagus, -a, -um, *wandering.*
valdē, adv., *emphatically, strongly, by all means.*
valeō, -ēre, -uī, *am strong, able, in good health.*
valētūdō, -inis, f., *health.*
validus, -a, -um, *strong.*
vallis, -is, f., *valley.*
vāllum, -ī, *wall, rampart.*
vās, vāsis, n., *vessel, vase, jar.*
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste, devastate.*
-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*
vectīgal, -ālis, n., *tax, revenue.*
vectus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **vehō**, *carried.*
vel, conj., *either, or.*
vēlum, -ī, n., *sail.*
vēnātor, -ōris, m., *hunter*; **vēnātrīx**, -īcis, f., *huntress*
vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (vēnum, *sale*; dō), *sell.*
venēnum, -ī, n., *poison, drug.*
vēneō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum (vēnum, *sale*; eō), *am sold*, used instead of vēndor; supine of doubtful occurrence.
venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, pardon, consideration.*
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*
Venus, -eris, f., *Venus*, goddess of love and beauty.
vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*
verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *beat.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*
vereor, -ērī, veritus, *fear.*
vēritās, -ātis, f., *truth.*
vērō, adv., *truly, but indeed, but, however.*
verrō, -ere, verrī, versum, *sweep.*
versor, -ārī, -ātus, *dwell, move, stay, operate.*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, *turn.*
verū, -ūs, n., *a spit, pin* (for roasting meat).
vērus, -a, -um, *true, fair, just.*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta*, goddess of the hearth and home.
vester, -tra, -trum, *your*, addressed to more than one.
vēstīgium, -ī, n., *footstep, track.*
vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *clothe.*
vestis, -is, f., *garment.*
vestītus, -ūs, m., *clothing.*
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *forbid.*
vetus, -eris, *old.*
vēxillum, -ī, n., *flag.*
via, -ae, f., *way.*
viātor, -ōris, m., *traveller.*
vīcīnus, -a, -um, *neighboring*; **vīcīnus**, -ī, m., *neighbor.*
vicis (gen.; nom. does not occur; acc. vicem, abl. vice, plur. vicēs, vicibus), f., *change, alternation.*
victor, -ōris, m., *conqueror.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*; **videor**, (1) *am seen*; (2) *seem.*
vigil, -ilis, m., *watchman, sentry.*
vigilia, -ae, f., *watch* (one-fourth of the night).
vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *am awake, watch.*
vīgintī, indecl., *twenty.*
vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *revenge, punish.*
vinea, -ae, *f., shed, shelter, mantlet* (used in war).
vinolentus, -a, -um, *full of wine, drunk.*
vinum, -ī, n., *wine.*
violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *violate.*
vir, virī, m., *man* (as opposed to a child or woman).
virgō, -inis, *f., maiden, virgin.*
virilis, -e, *manly, belonging to manhood.*
virtūs, -ūtis, *f., manliness, manhood; goodness, virtue, excellence; courage, valor.*
virus, -ī, n., *poison.*
vis, acc. vim, abl. vī, plur. vīrēs, vīrium, etc.; sing., *force, power, violence, strength;* plur., *bodily strength.*
visō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum (videō), *go to see, visit.*
vīta, -ae, *f., life.*
vītis, -is, *f., vine.*
vitium, -ī, n., *fault, defect, vice.*
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *avoid.*
vitreus, -a, -um, *glassy, sea-green.*
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, *live.*
vīvus, -a, -um, *living, alive.*
vix, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty.*
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call.*
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fly.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish.*
Volscī, -ōrum, m., *the Volscians,* neighbors and enemies of the early Romans.
volucer, -cris, -cre, *flying, winged.*
voluntās, -ātis, *f., wish, intention.*
voluptās, -ātis, *f., pleasure.*
Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus,* a tribune in Caesar's army.
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow.*
vōx, vōcis, *voice, word, utterance.*
Vulcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan,* god of fire.
vulgus, -ī, n., *crowd, common people, the masses.*
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wound.*
vulpēs, -is, *f., fox.*
vultus, -ūs (or **voltus**), m., *countenance, face, features.*

Z

Zama, -ae, *f., Zama,* town in Africa, celebrated as the scene of Scipio's great victory over Hannibal.
Zephyrus, -ī, m., *a gentle west wind, the west wind, zephyr.*

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-LATIN

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH–LATIN

For principal parts of verbs, where not given, see Latin-English Vocabulary.

A

am able, possum, posse, potuī.
about, (1) = *around*, circum (acc.); (2) = *concerning*, dē (abl.); (3) with numbers, circiter.
above, super, suprā (acc.).
absent, absēns; **am absent**, absum.
on account of, propter (acc.).
accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
accustomed, assuēfactus, -a, -um.
am accustomed, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēvī, *perf. of* cōnsuēscō.
achievement, rēs gesta.
acquit, absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum.
acre, jūgerum, -ī, n.
across, trāns (acc.).
it is added, accēdit, see p. 318.
adherent, cliēns, -entis, m.
admonish, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
adorn, ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Adriatic, Hadria, -ae, m.
advance, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
affair, rēs, reī, f.
affirm, affīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.
after, post (acc.).
afterwards, posteā.
against, contrā (acc.).
age, aetās, -ātis, f.
(old) age, senectūs, -ūtis, f.
ago, abhinc.
agreed (it is), cōnstat.
agriculture, agricultūra, -ae, f.
aid, auxilium, -ī, n.
I aid, subveniō (dat.); adjuvō (acc.).
air, āēr, -eris, m.
alarmed (am), vereor, timeō.
all, omnis, tōtus (= *whole*).
allow, patior, sinō.
alone, adj., sōlus; adv., sōlum.
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, f.
already, jam.
also, quoque, etiam.
altar, āra, -ae, f.
although, quamquam, quamvīs, etsī, licet, ut, cum, see p. 359.
always, semper.
am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
ambush, insidiae, -ārum, f.
among, inter (acc.); apud (acc.).
ancestors, mājōrēs, -um, m.
anchor, ancora, -ae, f.
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
and, et, -que, atque, ac.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
annoyed (am), graviter ferō.
another, alius, -a, -ud.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum; **an answer**, respōnsum.
any, (1) after **sī**, *if*, and **nē**, *lest*, quis; (2) in a negative connection, quisquam; (3) any (whatever), **quīvīs**, **quilibet**.
anyone, see **any**.
appear (*seem*), videor.
appearance, speciēs, ēī, f., figūra, -ae, f.
apple, mālum, n. (*the fruit*).
apple-tree, mālus, -ī, f.
appoint (over), praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (dat. of *that over which*).

archer, sagittārius, -ī, m.
arena, arēna, -ae, f.
arise, orior, -īrī, ortus.
arm, bracchium, -ī, n.
armed, armātus, -a, -um.
armor, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
armor-bearer, armiger, -gerī, m.
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.; on the march, agmen, -minis, n.
around, circum (acc.).
arrive, perveniō (ad), advenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.
art, ars, artis, f.
as, ut (with indic.); (correl. of tam), quam; **as many as**, quot; **as much as**, quantus; **(such) as**, quālis; **as long as**, quamdiū, dum, dōnec, quoad.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, -endī, -ēnsum.
ascertain, cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum.
ashamed (I am), pudet mē.
ash-tree, ornus, -ī, f.
ask, rogō, petō (*seek*), quaerō.
assemble (1) intrans., conveniō; (2) trans., convocō, contrahō, cōgō, colligō.
assembly, concilium, -ī, n.
at last, tandem.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f.
Atlantic Ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, m.
attack, noun, impetus, -ūs, m.
I **attack**, impetum faciō in, adorior, oppugnō.
attempt, noun, cōnātus, -ūs, m.
I **attempt**, cōnor.
authority, imperium, n., auctōritās, f.
autumn, auctumnus, -ī, m.
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
am **aware**, intellegō, sciō, sentiō.
away from, ā, ab (abl.).
axe, secūris, -is, f.

B

back, tergum, -ī, n.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage (1) heavy, impedīmenta, -ōrum, n.; (2) personal, sarcinae, -ārum, f.
band, manus, -ūs, f.
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
bank, ripa, -ae, f.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, m.
battering-ram, aries, -etis, m.
battle, pugna, -ae, f., proelium, -ī, n.
beak, rōstrum, -ī, n.
beam, trabs, -is, f.
I **bear**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
a **bear**, ursus, -ī, m.
beast, bestia, -ae, f.
beast-of-burden, jūmentum, -ī, n.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
beech-tree, fāgus, -ī, f.
before (1) prep., ante (of time) (acc.); prō (of place) (abl.); (2) conj., prius quam, ante quam; (3) adv., anteā.
beg, ōrō, obsecrō, petō.
begin, coepī, incipiō, ōrdior.
on **behalf** of, prō (abl.).
behold, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.
behoove, it behooves me, mē oportet.
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dat.).
belong, sum, with gen. of possession.
besides, praeter (acc.).
I **betake** myself, mē recipiō.
better, adj., melior; adv., melius.
between, inter (acc.).
beware, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum.
bind, ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; serō.
bird, avis, -is, f.
black, niger, -gra, -grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.
blame, culpō, -āre, āvī, ātum.
blood, sanguis, -inis, m.
boast, glōrior, -ārī, -ātus.
boat, linter, cymba, nāvigium.
bodily size, corporis māgnitūdō.
body, corpus, -oris, n.; **dead body, corpse**, cadāver, -eris, n.
bold, audāx, -ācis.
bone, os, ossis, n.
book, liber, -brī, m.

both, pron., uterque, -traque, -trumque.
both, conj., et.
boundaries, fīnēs, -ium, m.
bow, arcus, -ūs, m.
boy, puer, -ī, m.
brass (*copper*), aes, aeris, n.
brave, fortis, -e.
break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum; rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum.
break down (wall or bridge), rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum.
break through, perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum.
breast, pectus, -oris, n.
breath, anima, -ae, f.
breathe, spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bright, clārus, -a, -um.
bring, portō (*carry*); dūcō (*lead*).
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.
British, Britannicus, -a, -um.
Briton, Britannus, -ī, m.
bronze, aes, aeris, n.
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
building, aedificium, -ī, n.
burden, onus, -eris, n.
ship of **burden**, nāvis onerāria.
bury, sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum.
business, rēs, negōtium.
but, conj., sed, vērō; prep. = *except*, praeter (acc.).
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.
by, of the agent, ā, ab (abl.).

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.
calamity, calamitās, -ātis, f.
call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
call together, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n.
can, possum, posse, potuī.
captain (of a ship), magister, -trī, m.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
care, cūra, -ae, f.
careful, dīligēns, -entis; **carefully**, dīligenter.
cart, carrus, -ī, m.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, f.
carry, portō, gerō, ferō; **carry on** (war), gerō; **carry over**, trānsportō; **carry together**, comportō.
cattle, pecus, -oris, n.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.; equitēs, -um, m.
cavalry, as an adj., equester, -tris, -tre.
cease, dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm.
certain (*sure definite*), certus, -a, -um.
certain, pron. or pronom. adj., quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam.
certainly, valdē.
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
character, mōrēs, -um, m.; genus, -eris, n. (*kind*).
chariot, essedum, -ae, f., currus, -ūs, m.
charioteer, essedārius, -ī, m.
chieftain, princeps, -ipis, m.
children, līberī, -ōrum, m.
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, m.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, cīvis, -is, m. or f.
city, urbs, -is, f.
claw, unguis, -is, m.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.
clothing, vestītus, -ūs, m.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.
coast, ōra, -ae, f.
cohort, cohors, -hortis, f.
cold, adj., frīgidus, -a, -um.
cold, noun, frīgus, -oris, n.
collect, cōgō, colligō, comparō.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
command, noun, imperium, -ī, n.; **a command**, imperātum, -ī, n.
I **command**, imperō, jubeō.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.; dux, ducis, m.
common, commūnis, -e.
common people, vulgus, -ī, n.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, f.
companion, comes, -itis, m. or f.; socius, -ī, m.
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
complain, queror, -ī, questus.

conceal, dissimulō, cēlō.
concern (it concerns), interest, rĕfert, pertinet ad.
concerning, dē (abl.).
condemn, condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, f.
confess, cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus.
conquer, vincō, superō.
conqueror, victor, -ōris, m.
consider, putō, arbitror, exīstimō, habeō, dūcō.
conspiracy, conjūrātiō, -ōnis, f.
conspirator, conjūrātor, -ōris, m.
conspire, conjūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
constellation, sīdus, -eris, n.
consul, cōnsul, -sulis, m.
contend, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum.
contest, certāmen, -minis, n.
continent, continēns, -entis, f.
continuous, continēns, -entis (adj.).
convene, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
conversation, sermō, -ōnis, m.; colloquium, -ī, n.
convict, condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
convince, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, f.
corn, frūmentum, -ī, n.
corpse, cadāver, -eris, n.
corrupt, corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī -ruptum.
council, concilium, -ī, n.
counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
country, *rural district*, rūs; *one's country*, patria; *territory*, fīnēs, ager.
courage, virtūs, fortitūdō, -inis, f.
cover, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
cow, bōs, bovis, f. (also m., *ox*).
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.
create, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -itum.
crow, corvus, -ī, m.
crowd, turba, multitūdō, vulgus.
crown, corōna, -ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e; saevus, -a, -um.
cry out, exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cuirass, lōrīca, -ae, f.
custom, cōnsuētūdō, f.; mōs, m.
cut, caedo, -ere, cecīdī, caesum.

D

damage, adflīgō, -ere, -flixī, -flictum.
danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
dark, āter, -tra, -trum.
darkness, tenebrae, -ārum, f.
dart, tēlum, -ī, n.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, f.
day, diēs, -ēī, m. (sometimes f. in sing.).
day-break, prīma lūx.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, f.
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
deck, ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
declare, cōnfirmō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.
deem, putō, arbitror, exīstimō, habeō, dūcō.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, superō, vincō.
defence, praesidium, -ī, n.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum; tueor, -ērī.
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.
I **delay**, moror, -ārī, -ātus.
delay, noun, mora, -ae, f.
deliberation (there is need of), cōnsultō opus est.
delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deliver, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
demand, postulō, imperō, poscō.
deny, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depart, discēdō, abeō, excēdō, proficīscor.
design (a plan), cōnsilium, -ī, n.
I **despair**, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum.
destitute, inops, -opis; expers, -rtis.
destroy, dēleō; *break down*, rescindō.
die, morior, -ī, mortuus.
different = *other*, alius.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, f.

disaster, clādēs, -is, f. (*defeat*); calamitās, -ātis, f.
discover, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
disembark, (1) intrans., ēgredior; (2) trans., expōnō.
disgrace, dēdecus, -oris, n.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
am distant, absum, -esse, -fuī.
distinguished, clārus, -a, -um.
distrust, diffīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum.
do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; as auxiliary of negation or emphasis, not translated.
dog, canis, -is, m. or f.
door, porta, -ae, f.
double, duplex, -plicis.
doubt, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
down from, dē (abl.).
draw, drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
draw up in line, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
dread, pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī.
dream, somnium, -ī, n.
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī (supine pōtum).
drive, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
drive out, expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum.
dry, āridus, siccus (*parched*).
dust, pulvis, -eris, m.
dwell, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; incolō, -ere, -uī.

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque; of two, uterque, -traque, -trumque.
eager, cupidus, studiōsus, -a, -um.
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
eagle-bearer, aquilifer, -ferī, m.
early (summer), prīma aestās.
earth, terra, -ae, f.
earthly, terrester, -tris, -tre.
east, orīens (sōl), -entis.
easy, facilis, -e; adv. facile.
eat, = *live upon*, vescor, -ī (abl.); also edō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsum.
eight, octō; **eighth**, octāvus, -a, -um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elect, ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum.
elephant, elephantus, -ī, m.
embark, (nāvem) cōnscendō, -ere, -endī, -ēnsum.
enable, efficiō ut.
end, fīnis, -is, m.
enemy (personal), inimīcus, -ī; (public), hostis, -is.
engine (of war), tormentum, -ī, n.; māchina, -ae, f.
enjoy, fruor, -ī, frūctus (abl.).
enough, satis.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, m.
envy, invidia, -ae, f.
epistle, epistola, -ae, f.
equestrian, equester, -tris, -tre.
err, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.
even, etiam; **even if**, etiam sī, etsī.
every, quisque, omnis.
evident, manifēstus, -a, -um.
evil, malus, -a, -um.
excellent, ēgregius, -a, -um; optimus.
except, praeter (acc.).
exchange, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
exhort, hortor, -ārī, -ātus.
exile, exilium (or exsilium), -ī, n.
exploit, rēs gesta.
eye, oculus, -ī, m.

F

faith, fidēs, -eī, f.
faithful, fidus, -a, -um.
famous, clārus, praeclārus, -a, -um.
far, longē; **farther**, longius; **am far from**, absum.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
farther bank, ūlterior rīpa.
fast, adj., celer; adv., celeriter.
father, pater, -tris, m.
father-in-law, socer, -erī, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.
favor, grātia, -ae, f.
fear, noun, timor, pavor, metus, -ūs, m.
I fear, timeō, vereor, metuō, -ere, -uī.

feeble, aeger, -gra, -grum.
feed (upon), vescor, -i (abl.); feed (some one), pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum; feed, intransitive, pāscor, -i, pāstus.
fertile, ferāx, -ācis.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, -grī, m.; campus, -ī, m.
fierce, ferus, ferōx, ācer.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
I fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fight, noun, pugna, -ae, f.; proelium, -i, n.
figure, figūra, ae, f.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum.
find (chance upon), invenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (after searching), reperio, -īre, repperī, repertum.
find fault with, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).
find out, cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
finish, fīniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum; cōnficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
fire, īgnis, -is, m.
first (of two), prior; (of a larger number), primus.
five, quīnque.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum.
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flesh, carō, carnis, f.
flight, fuga, -ae, f.
flock, grex, gregis, m.
flower, flōs, flōris, m.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus.
following, *on the following day*, posterō diē; secundus (of a stream).
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
fond, studiōsus, -a, -um (gen.); **am fond of**, studeō (dat.).
foolish, stultus, -a, -um.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot of a hill, īmus collis.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.
for, prep. denoting motion to or purpose, ad; *in behalf of*, prō; conj. = *because*, nam, enim (the latter never first).
forbid, vetō, -āre, -uī.
force, vis, f.; **a force**, manus, ūs, f.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f.
foresee, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
foresight, prōvidentia, -ae, f.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
form a plan, cōnsilium capere or inire.
form line, aciem īnstruō.
former, hīc or ille, p. 138; prior, superior.
fort, castellum, -ī, n.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
fortress, arx, arcis, f.
fortunate, fēlix, -īcis.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forum, forum, -ī, n.
found (a city), condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
fountain, fōns, fontis, m.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, adj., līber, -era, -erum.
I free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum.
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
frighten, terreō, perterreō.
from, a (ab), ex, dē (abl.).
in front of, prō (abl.).
front rank, prīma aciēs.
frost, frīgus, -oris, n.
fruit, frūctus, -ūs, m.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

G

gain (possession), potior, -īrī, -ītus.
galley, nāvis longa.
garden, hortus, -ī, m.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, cōgō, contrahō, comportō.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
a Gaul, Gallus, -ī, m.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
German, Germānus, -a, -um.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
giant, gigās, -antis, m.
gift, dōnum, -ī, n.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
give back, reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
glory, glōria, -ae, f.

go, eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum.
god, deus, -ī, m.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
gold, aurum, -ī, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
goodness, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
govern, regō, imperō.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.
granted that, licet, see p. 360.
great, māgnus, -a, -um.
greatly, māgnopere.
greave, ocrea, -ae, f.
grieve, doleō, -ēre, doluī, ...um.
ground = *soil*, solum, -ī, n; **on the ground that**, quod, quia, with the subjunctive, quoting a reason from another.
I **guard**, cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; tueor, -ērī.
a **guard**, cūstōs, -ōdis, m. (*single watchman*); praesidium, -ī, n. (*a collection*).
guide, dux, ducis, m.

H

habit, mōs, m.; cōnsuētūdō, f.
hair, crīnis, -is, m.
hand, manus, -ūs, f.
happen, accidit, ēvenit, fit, fierī, factum est.
happy, beātus, -a, -um.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um.
hare, lepus, -oris, m.
hasten, contendō, properō, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
haste, celeritās; **there is need of**, properātō opus est.
I **hate**, ōdī, ōdisse.
hatred, odium, -ī, n.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
head, caput, -itis, n.; **am at the head of**, praesum, -esse, -fuī.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
heart, cor, cordis, n.
heavy, gravis, -e.
heavy baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
heights, superiōra loca, n. plur.
helmet, galea, -ae, f.
help, auxilium, -ī, n.
I **help**, adjuvō (acc.); subveniō (dat.).
hence, hinc.
herd, grex, -gis, m.
herald, praecō, -ōnis, m.
here, hīc.
hesitate, cunctor, -ārī, -ātus.
high, altus, -a, -um.
higher, altior, superior.
value **highly**, māgnī aestimō.
high-spirited, māgnae ... virtūtis; ferōx.
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, ipse (emphatic); suī, sibi (reflexive).
hinder, prohibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, n.
hinge, cardō, -inis, m.
hither, adv., hūc; adj. = *nearer*, citerior.
hold, habeō, teneō.
home, domus, -ūs, f., Loc., domī.
Homer, Homērus, ī, m.
hope, noun, spēs, speī, f.
I **hope**, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, m. or f.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, f.
how, quōmodo.
however, tamen, autem.
how great (large), quantus, -a, -um.
how many, quot.
how much, quantus, -a, -um.
huge, ingēns, -entis.
hundred, centum.
hurl, contorqueō, conicīō.
hurt, noceō, -ēre, -uī (dat.)
husband, vir, conjūnx.

I

Ides, Īdūs, -uum, f.
if, sī.
ill, aeger, -gra, -grum.
immediately, statim, cōnfēstim.
immense, ingēns, -gentis.

implore, obsecrō, -ōrē, implōrō.
import, importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
it is important, rēfert, interest.
it is impossible, nōn fierī potest (ut).
in, in (abl.).
inasmuch as, quoniam, cum.
am indignant at, graviter ferō.
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, m., peditēs, -um, m.
influence, noun, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
I influence, commoveō, permoveō.
inform, certiōrem faciō; **am informed**, certior fīō.
in front of, prō (abl.).
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -coluī.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m. or f.
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī (dat.).
inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
instruct, praecipiō, mandō (dat.).
I intend = *I am about to*, active periphrastic conj.
iron, ferrum, -ī, n.
island, īnsula, -ae, f.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, n.; jaculum, -ī, n.
join, jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum.
join battle, proelium committō.
journey, iter, itineris, n.
judge, jūdex, -icis, m.
Juno, Jūnō, -ōnis, f.
just, jūstus, -a, -um.
justice, jūstitia, -ae, f.

K

keen, ācer, -cris, -cre.
keep in the dark, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
keep within, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
kill, necō, interficiō, occīdō.
killing, caedēs, -is, f.
kind (class), genus, -eris, n.
kind (adj. = **kindly**), benīgnus, benevolus.
kindly, adv., benīgnē.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
knee, genū, -ūs, n.
knight, eques, -itis, m.
know, sciō, intellegō.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.

L

labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, verb, careō (abl.), egeō (abl. or gen.).
lack (noun = *scarcity*), inopia, -ae, f.
lacking in, inops, -opis; expers, -rtis (governs gen.).
am lacking to, dēsum, -esse, -fuī.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m.
lamb, āgnus, -ī, m.
lame, claudus, -a, -um.
a land, terra, -ae, f; **lands** (cultivated), agrī, -ōrum, m.
I land (*soldiers from a ship*, trans.), expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
I land (intrans.), ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, with or without *nāvī*, or *nāvibus*.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, ūltimus; extrēmus; novissimus; proximus (e.g. *last night*).
at last, tandem.
later, posterior.
latter, hīc or ille, see p. 138.
laugh, rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum.
a law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lay aside, dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
I lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
lead back, redūcō.
lead out, ēdūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leap down, dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum.
learn (*a lesson*), discō, -ere, didicī; (*a fact*), cognōscō, reperiō.
leave (*behind*), relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.
leave (= *go out from*, e.g. *leave home*), excēdō, discēdō, ēgredior.
left (*on the left*), adj., sinister, -tra, -trum; laevus, -a, -um.
the left hand, sinistra, -ae, f. (adj. used as noun, with *manus* omitted).
left (*remaining*), relictus, -a, -um.

legate (= *envoy*), lēgātus, -ī, m.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.
less, adj., minor; adv., minus.
lesson (= *task assigned*), pēnsum, -ī, n.
lest, nē; **lest any**, nē quis (quid).
letter, epistola, litterae, -ārum, f. (the sing. littera = *a letter of the alphabet*); **letters** (= *literature*), litterae, -ārum.
lie (*down*), jaceō, -ēre, -uī.
lie (*speak falsely*), mentior, -īrī, mentītus.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.; **a light**, lūmen, -minis, n.
lightning, fulmen, -minis, n.
like, similis, -e; *What is the island like?* Quālis est īnsula?
I should **like**, velim.
limb, membrum (*member*); crūs crūris, n. (*leg*); artus, -ūs, m. (*joint*).
lion, leō, -ōnis, m.
I **live**, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum.
live (adj. = *alive*), vīvus, -a, -um.
load, onus, -eris, n.
long (*of distance*), longus, -a, -um.
long (adv. = *a time*), diū, compar., diūtius, superl., diūtissimē.
long for, desīderō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.
look at, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
loose, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.
lord, dominus, -ī, m.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
lot, sors, sortis, f.
loud voice, māgna vōx.
I **love**, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
love, noun, amor, -ōris, m.
low, humilis, -e.

M

maiden, virgō, -inis; puella, -ae, f.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
man (*human being*), homō, -inis, m.; vir, virī, m.
manner, modus, -ī, m., ratiō, -ōnis, f.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
a **march**, iter, itineris, n.; *forced march*, māgnum iter; *I march*, iter faciō.
marsh, palūs, ūdis, f.
mast, mālus, -ī, m.
master, magister, -trī; *owner of a slave or property*, dominus, -ī.
matter (*thing*), rēs, reī, f.; *What matters it?*, Quantī rēfert, or interest?
may (*it is permitted*), licet, -ēre, -uit.
meanwhile, intereā, interim.
measure, mētior, -īrī, mēnsus.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m.
Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, m.
message, nūntius, -ī, m.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.
mid, **middle**, medius, -a -um.
mild, mītis, -e.
mile, mīlle passūs; *miles*, mīllia passuum.
military, mīlitāris, -e; *military science*, rēs mīlitāris.
milk, lac, lactis, n.
mind, animus, -ī, m.; mēns, mentis, f.
mindful, memor, -oris.
miss (*look for in vain*), dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
missile, tēlum, -ī, n.
mistress, domina, magistra, -ae, f.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
more, plūs; plūrēs.
moreover, autem.
mother, māter, -tris, f.
mound, tumulus, -ī, m; agger, -eris, m.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
mouse, mūs, mūris, m.
mouth, ōs, ōris, n.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
movement, mōtus, -ūs, m.
much, multus, -a, -um.
muddy, turbidus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, f.
Muse, Mūsa, -ae, f.
my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -minis, n.
Naples, Neapolis, -is, f.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
native land, patria, -ae, f.
near, adv. or prep.; prope (acc.).
need (*there is need of*), opus est, ūsus est.
needle, acus, -ūs, f.
neighbor, vīcīnus, -ī, m.
neighborhood, vīcīnitās, -ātis, f.
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).
nest, nīdus, -ī, m.
never, numquam (nunquam).
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis (gen. plur. -ium), f.
nine, novem.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no (adj.), nūllus, -a, -um.
No (as an answer) translated by repeating the essential part of the question as a statement negatived by **nōn**.
no one, nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem (other cases lacking); *in order that no one = lest any one*, nē quis.
nor, neque (nec).
north, septentriō, -ōnis, m.; more commonly plur. septentriōnēs (the seven stars of Ursa Major, the Great Bear or the "Dipper").
not, dealing with *fact*, nōn; dealing with what is *willed* or *intended*, nē.
nothing, nihil (nīl); *in order that nothing = lest anything*, nē quid.
nourish, alō, -ere, aluī, altum.
now, nūnc; = *by this time, already*, jam; as an introductory particle, autem.
number, numerus, -ī, m.
numerous, crēber, -bra, -brum; frequēns, -entis.

O

oak (*tree*), quercus, -ūs, f.; (*wood*), rōbur, -oris, n.
oar, rēmus, -ī, m.
oarsman, rēmex, -igis, m.
oath, jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n.
obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
I **object**, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
obstacles (*there are many*), multa obstant.
obtain, adipīscor, -ī, adeptus; cōnsequor, -ī, cōnsecūtus; (*a request*), impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
occasion (*there is occasion for, need of*), opus est, ūsus est.
occupy, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Ocean (Atlantic), Ōceanus, -ī, m.
often, saepe.
old, vetus, -eris; no compar.; superl. veterrimus.
old age, senectūs, -ūtis, f.
old man, senex; **older**, senior; **oldest**, nātū māximus.
old woman, anus, -ūs, f.
on, in (abl.).
on account of, ob (acc.); propter (acc.).
on behalf of, prō (abl.).
on the other hand, autem.
once, semel; = *formerly* or *once upon a time*, ōlim, quondam.
one, ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -īus, dat. -ī.
open (adj.), apertus, -a, -um.
I **open**, aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum; patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.
or, aut; *or in other words*, vel.
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, m.
order (*arrangement, class*), ōrdō, -inis, m.
order (*the right of command*), imperium; *thing ordered*, imperātum.
I **order**, jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum (acc. and infin.); imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dat. and ut with subjunct.).
in order that, ut; *in order that not*, nē.
other, alius, -a, -ud; **the other** (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; = *remaining*, reliquus, -a, -um; **all the others**, cēterī, -ae, -a; **other people's**, aliēnus, -a, -um.

I ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; often translated by the gerundive; often by oportet, *it behooves*.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
of ourselves (reflex.), nostrī, nōbis, nōs.
out of, ē, ex (abl.).
over, super, suprā (acc.).
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
overthrow, ēverto, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
owing to, propter (acc.).
ox, bōs, bovis, m.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, m.
pack (of wolves), grex, gregis, m.
I **pardon**, ignōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum.
pardon (noun), venia, -ae, f.
parent, parēns, -entis.
part, pars, partis, f.
pay, pendo, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum; *What did you pay? At what price did you buy?* Quantī?
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
a **people**, populus, ī, m.; **people**, in the plural sense, hominēs; **other people's**, aliēnus, -a, -um.
perceive, sentiō, intellegō.
perform, fungor, -ī, fūnctus (abl.).
permit, patior, sinō; it is **permitted**, licet.
personal baggage, sarcinae, -ārum, f.
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (dat.).
pirate, praedō, -ōnis, m.
pitch (camp), castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
I **pity**, misereor, -ērī, miseritus; mē miseret.
pity (noun), misericordia, -ae, f.
a **place**, locus, -ī, m.; plur. loca, -ōrum.
I **place**, pōnō, -ere, -posuī, positum.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
play (noun), lūdus, -ī, m.
I **play**, lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum.
pleasant, jucundus, -a, -um; (of a place), amoenus, -a, -um.
please, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
pleasing (*gratifying*), grātus, -a, -um.
plenty, cōpia, -ae, f.
I **plough**, arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
a **plough**, arātrum, -ī, n.
plunder, noun, praeda, -ae, f.
I **plunder**, diripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum; praedor, -ārī, -ātus; spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
poison, vīrus, -ī, n.; venēnum, -ī, n.
poor, pauper, -eris.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
possession (*gain*), potior, -īrī, potītus (abl.).
as **possible**, quam with the superl.
posterity, posterī, -ōrum, m.
praise (noun), laus, laudis, f.
I **praise**, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
pray, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; precor, -ārī, -ātus.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī; antepōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
present, adj., praesēns, -entis.
a **present**, dōnum, -ī, n.
I **present**, dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
preserve, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
press, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum.
prevent, prohibeō, impediō, obstō, dēterreō.
previous, prior, prius; superior, -ius.
price, pretium, -ī, n.
privilege (*it is the privilege of*) use the predicate gen. with est.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus.
property, rēs, reī, f.; bona, -ōrum, n.
protect, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
provide for, videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum (dat.).
provided that, dum, dummodo (with subjunctive).
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
prow (of a vessel), rōstrum, -ī, n.
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, f.
prudent, prūdēns, -entis.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.

punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.
pure (*innocent*), castus, -a, -um.
put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (acc. of *person*, dat. of *thing*).
put to flight, in fugam dō.
put to death = *kill*, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
quick, celer, -eris, -ere; **quickly**, celeriter.
quiet, quiēs, -ētis, f.

R

race, gēns, gentis, f.
raise (= *lift*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
raise (*forces*), comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
ram, ariēs, -etis, m.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, n.
rank, ōrdō, -inis, m.; **front rank**, prīma aciēs.
rashness, temeritās, -ātis, f.
rather, potius; **I would rather** = *I prefer*, mālō; **rather** with an adj., see compar. degree, p. 97, 6.
raven, corvus, -ī, m.
reach, perveniō ad; adveniō.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
rear, novissimum agmen, novissimī, -ōrum; **at the rear**, ā tergō.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
red, ruber, -bra, -brum.
refinement, hūmānitās, -ātis, f.
I **regard** = *I deem*, habeō, existimō.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
I **regret**, paenitet mē.
I **reign**, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus.
religion, religiō, -ōnis, f.
rely upon, fīdō, cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum (abl. of a *thing*, dat. of a *person*).
relying upon, frētus, -a, -um (abl.).
remain, maneō, remaneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
it **remains**, reliquum est, restat.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remember, reminīscor, -ī, -meminī, -isse.
remind, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
remove (intrans.), remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (trans.), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
renowned, clārus, praeclārus, -a, -um.
repel, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
I **repent**, mē paenitet.
report, nūntiō, renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f.
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
I **request**, petō, rogō.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum (dat.).
resolve, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
resources, opēs, opum, opibus, *f.*
restrain, retineō, temperō, prohibeō.
retainer, cliēns, -entis, m.
return (*go back*), redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum; (*give back*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
revenue, vectīgal, ālis, n.
revile, maledīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum.
revolution, novae rēs.
reward, praemium, -ī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, m.
rich, dīves, -itis.
right (*on the right*), dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum); **right hand**, dextra, -trae, *f.*
a **right** (*obligation, principle of justice*), jūs, jūris, n.
ring, orbis, -is, m.; ānulus, -ī (worn on the finger).
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.
river, fluvius, -ī, m.; flūmen, -minis, n.
road, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
rob, spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
robber, lātrō, -ōnis, m.
rock, saxum, -ī, n.; rūpēs, -is, f.

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
roof, tēctum, -ī, n.
root, rādix, -icis, f.
rope, fūnis, -is, m.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
rout, fuga, -ae, f.
route (= *road*), iter, via.
row (a boat), rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
rower, rēmex, -igis, m.
rule (*authority*), imperium, -ī, n.
I **rule**, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum; imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dat.).
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.

S

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
sacrifice, immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; mactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sad, tristis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um (before the danger); incolumis, -e (= *unharmed* after the danger).
safeguard, caveō, -ere (governs dat.).
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
sail, noun, vēlum, -ī, n.
I **sail**, nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **set sail** (= *cast off from mooring*), solvō (nāvem, nāvēs).
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
salute (= *greet*), cōnsalūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, locūtus.
school, schola, -ae, f.; lūdus, -ī, m.
science, scientia, -ae, f.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
sea, mare, -is, n. (pelagus and aequor are poetic).
second, secundus, -a, -um.
seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (= *grasp*), prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
self, ipse, -a, -um. See Intensive and Reflexive Pronouns.
sell, vendo, -ere, vendidī, venditum (vēnum, dō); **am sold**, vēneō, -īre, vēnīvī (-iī), -itum (vēnum, eō).
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
send, mittō, -ere, misī, missum.
send back, remittō.
send for, arcessō, -ere, -cessīvī, -cessītum (acc.).
send forward, praemittō.
send out (*messengers in different directions*), dimittō.
sentence (*condemn*), condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
serious, gravis, -e.
serve, servīō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum (dat.).
am **serviceable to**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī.
set out, proficiscor, -ī, -fectus.
settle (= *determine*), cōnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
settle (= *take up one's abode*), cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
seven, septem; **seventh**, septimus, -a, -um.
seventy, septuāgintā; **seven hundred**, septingentī, -ae, -a.
several, complūrēs, -a, gen. -ium.
severe, gravis, -e; (*winter*), ācer, -cris, -cre.
shade, umbra, -ae, f.; (= *departed spirit*), Mānēs, -ium, m.
share, noun, pars, partis, f.
I **share in**, particīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sharing, particeps, -cipis (gen.).
sharp, ācer, -cris, -cre; acūtus, -a, -um.
sheep, ovis, -is, m. or f.
shield, scūtum, -ī, n.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
ship-of-burden, nāvis onerāria.
ship-of-war, nāvis longa.
shore, lītus, -oris, n.
short, brevis, -e,

shoulder, humerus, -ī, m.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show, mōnstrō, ostendō (*point out*); praestō (*show qualities*); praebeō mē (*I show myself*).
shudder at, horreō, -ēre, -uī.
shun, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, latus, -eris, n.
on this side, prep. cis (acc.).
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, m.
signal, signum, -ī, n.
silence, silentium, -ī, n.
silent (adj.), tacitus, -a, -um.
am silent (*keep silence*), taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
silver, argentum, -ī, n.
since (of cause), cum, with the subjunctive.
sing, cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum.
Sir (addressing a teacher), Magister.
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.
sit down, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
six, sex; **sixteen**, sēdecim; **sixty**, sexāgintā; **six hundred**, sēscentī, -ae, -a.
skilled, perītus, -a, -um (gen.).
skin (*hide, pelt, fur* of an animal), pellis, -is, f.; of the human body, cutis, -is, f.
sky, caelum, -ī, n.
slander, maledīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum.
slanderous, maledicus, -dīcentior, -dīcentissimus.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, -ī, m.
slay, interficiō, necō, occīdō.
I sleep, dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
sleep, somnus, -ī, m.
sling, funda, -ae, f.
slip, lābor, -ī, lāpsus.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smell of, oleō, -ēre, -uī (acc.).
snatch, adripiō (arripiō), -ere, -ripuī, -reptum; *snatch from*, ēripiō.
snow, nix, nivis, f.
so (= *thus*, of manner), ita, sīc; (of degree), tam, adeō; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um; **so many**, tot; **so long**, tamdiū.
Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, m.
soldier, mīles, -itis, m.
some, some one, aliquis (-quī), -quae (qua), -quid (quod).
son, fīlius, -ī, m.
son-in-law, gener, -erī, m.
song, carmen, -minis, n.; cantus, -ūs, m.
soon, mox, brevī (tempore).
sorry (I am), mē piget.
south, meridiēs, -ēī, m.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.
Spaniard, Spanish, Hispānus, -a, -um.
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum.
speak, loquor, -ī, locūtus.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.; sermō, -ōnis, m.
speed, celeritās, -ātis, f.
spring, vēr, vēris, n.
spur, calcar, -āris, n.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātum.
stand in the way, obstō, -stāre, -stitī (obstātūrus).
standard, signum, -ī, n.
standard bearer, signifer, -ferī, m.
star, stella, -ae, f.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, f.
station, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
stature, māgnitūdō corporis.
stay (= *remain*), maneō, remaneō.
steel, ferrum, -ī, n.
steep, arduus, -a, -um; praeceps, -cipitis.
stern (of a vessel), puppis, -is, f.
stone, lapis, -idis, m.; saxum, -ī, n.
storm, tempestās, -ātis, f.
storm (= *take by storm*), expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stormy, turbidus, -a, -um.
storm blast, procella, -ae, f.
story, fābula, -ae, f.
straight, rēctus, -a, -um.

strange (= *unusual*), inūsitātus, -a, -um.
stream, fluvius, -ī, m.; flūmen, -minis, n.
street, via, -ae, f.
strength, vis, vim, vī; (*bodily strength*), plur. vīrēs, -ium.
strengthen, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stretch out, porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum.
strive, contendō; nītor, -ī, nīsus or nīxus.
strong, firmus, -a, -um; validus, -a, -um.
struggle (noun), certāmen, -minis, n.
I **struggle**, certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*vie*); luctor, -ārī, -ātus.
style (= *name*), appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
suffer, patior, -ī, passus.
such, tālis, -e; (of extent), tantus, -a, -um.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, f.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
superior (= *better*), melior.
supply, cōpia, -ae, f.
surrender, dēdō, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
surround (= *go around*), circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (= *put around*) circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum.
suspect, suspicor, -ārī, -ātus.
sustain, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
swear, jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sweet, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -e.
swift, celer, -eris, -ere.
swine, sūs, suis, m. or f.
sword, gladius, -ī; **by the sword**, ferrō.
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, f.

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, f.
tackle, armāmenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
take, capiō, -ere, -cēpī, -captum; **take by storm**, expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
talent, talentum, -ī, n.
talk (noun), sermō, -ōnis, m.; colloquium, -ī, n.
I **talk**, verba facio; colloquor.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
taste of, sapio, -ere, -īvī (-iī).
tax, vectīgal, -ālis, n.
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum.
teacher (*school mistress*), magistra, -ae, f.; (*master*), magister, -tri, m.
tear, lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tear down, rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum.
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
ten, decem; **tenth**, decimus, -a, -um.
tenacious, tenāx, -ācis.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
territories, fīnēs, -ium, m.; agrī, -ōrum, m.
than, quam; comparison sometimes expressed by the abl.
thanks, grātiae, -ārum, f.
that (demonst. pron.), ille, -a, -ud (with strong demonst. force); is, ea, id (less emphatic than ille; used as antecedent of quī, e.g. *that* (*man*) *who*, *those who*); **that of yours**, iste, -a, -ud.
that (conj. introducing noun clause after verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc.), acc. with inf. is used. In some noun clauses *quod* represents *that*.
that (conj. of Purpose or Result), ut; **that not**, nē (Purpose); ut nōn (Result).
that (rel. pron. = *who*, *which*), quī, quae, quod.
their (referring to the subject), suus, -a, -um; (not referring to the subject), eōrum, eārum.
themselves (reflexive), suī, sibi, sē; (intensive), ipsī, -ae, -a.
then (= *at that time*), tum; (= *therefore*), igitur.
there (= *at that place*), ibi; (introductory, e.g. *there is*) not translated; (= *thither*, e.g. *go there*), eō.

thick, dēnsus, -a, -um.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; often expressed by the neuter of an adj.
think, putō, arbitror, existimō, sentiō, jūdicō, dūcō, habeō.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirteen, tredecim.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
thou, tū, tuī, tibi.
though (although), quamquam, etsī, quamvīs, licet, ut, see p. 389.
thousand, mīlle, indecl.; **thousands**, mīlia, -ium.
three, trēs, tria; **three hundred**, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per (acc.); sometimes rendered by the abl. of Cause.
throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum; conicio.
thunder, tonō, -āre, -uī.
thus, ita.
thy, tuus, -a, -um.
tide, aestus, -ūs, m.
time, tempus, -oris, n.
to (prep. = *towards*), ad (acc.); (as sign of indirect obj. denoting the person or thing indirectly affected), rendered by the dat.
to-day, hodiē.
toga, toga, -ae, *f.*
to-morrow, crās.
too, expressed by the comparative degree; sometimes with *aequō*, *jūstō*.
too little (adv. or indecl. subst.), parum.
too much (adv.), nimis; (adj.), nimius, -a, -um.
tooth, dēns, dentis, m.
top of, rendered by adj. *summus* agreeing with the noun.
touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum.
towards (motion to), ad (acc.); (denoting attitude or conduct towards), ergā, in (acc.).
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
transport (noun), nāvis onerāria.
I **transport**, trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
trench, fossa, -ae, *f.*
(make) **trial of**, temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; tribus, -ūs, *f.*
triple, triplex, -icis.
Trojan, Trōjānus, -a, -um.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.* mīlitēs, -um, m.
trouble, negōtium, -ī, n.
Troy, Trōja, -ae, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, lituus, -ī, m.
trust, fidō, -ere, -fīsus sum; cōnfidō (dat. of *person*, abl. of *thing*).
truth (*the quality*), vēritās, -ātis, *f.*; (*that which is true*), vērum, -ī or vēra, -ōrum.
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus.
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum; (= *bend*), flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.

U

unaccustomed (*unused*), insuētus, -a, -um; (*unusual*), insolitus, -a, -um.
under, sub (abl. or acc.).
understand, intellegō, -ere, lēxī, -lēctum.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
until, dum, dōnec, quoad; (= *before*, after a negative), priusquam, antequam.
unused, insuētus, -a, -um.
am **unwilling**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
unwilling (adj.), invītus, -a, -um.
uprising, mōtus, -ūs, m.
urge, suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum.
I **use**, ūtor, -ī, ūsus (abl.).
use (noun), ūsus, -ūs, m.
useful, ūtilis, -e.
utmost, summus, -a, -um.

V

valley, vallis, -is, f.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
I value, aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
van (*front of an army*), prima aciēs or primum agmen.
Venus, Vēnus, -eris, f.
versed, doctus, peritus, -a, -um (gen.).
very (intens. pronom. adj.), ipse, -a, -um.
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vīcus, -ī, m.
violate, violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
violence, vis, vim, vī, f.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
visit (*go to*), adeō, -īre, -īvi (-ii), -itum.
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.
void of, egēnus, -a, -um; inops, -opis (gen.).
Vulcan, Vulcānus, -ī, m.

W

wage (war), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum; bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wagon, carrus, -ī, m.
wait (*wait for*), exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wall (of a town), mūrus, -ī, m.; (of a camp = *rampart*), vāllum, -i, n.; (of a house), pariēs, -etis, m.
wander, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vagor, -ārī, vagātus.
war, bellum, -ī, n.
war engine, tormentum, -ī, n.
warm, calidus, -a, -um.
war-ship, nāvis longa.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
watch (*look at*), spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*guard*), tueor, -ērī.
watch for, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).
watch (of the night), vigilia, -ae, f.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
wave, unda, -ae, f.; fluctus, ūs, m.
way, via, ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
we, nōs, nostrī or nostrum.
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, f.; opēs, opum, f.
weapon (*missile*), tēlum, -ī, n.
weary (*I am*), mē taedet.
weather, tempestās, -ātis, f.
weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum.
welfare, salūs, -ūtis, f.
what (interrog. pron.), quid; (interrog. adj.), quī, quae, quod, agreeing with the noun.
at what price, quantī.
wheel, rota, -ae, f.
when (rel. adv.), cum, ubi; (interrog. adv.), quandō.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum, ubi.
where (= *at what or which place*), ubi; (= *whither*, e.g. *where are you going?*), quō.
which (rel. pron.), quī, quae, quod; (interrog. pron. or adj.), quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).
which of two, uter, -tra, -trum.
while, dum, dōnec, quoad.
who (rel. pron.), quī, quae; (interrog. pron.), quis.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e.
whose, cūjus, quōrum, quārum.
why, cūr, quārē.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, f.
wind, ventus, -ī, m.
wing, āla, -ae, f.
winter, hiems, -is, f.
I winter (pass the winter), hībernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
winter-quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, n. (*castra* understood).
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, sapiēns, -entis; **wisely**, sapienter.
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum (abl.).
withdraw, excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
within, intrā (acc.).
without, sine (abl.).
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; resistō, -ere, -stitī (dat.).
wolf, lupus, -ī, m.

woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
wood, lignum, -ī, n.; (= *forest*), silva, -ae, *f.*
wooded, silvester, -tris, -tre.
word, verbum, -ī. n.
work, opus, -eris, n.
workman, faber, -brī, m.
worse, pējor, -us.
worth as much, tantī quantī.
worthy, dignus, -a, -um (abl.).
wound, noun, vulnus, -eris, n.
I **wound**, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wreath, corōna, -ae, *f.*
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.
wrong (*an injury*), injūria, -ae, *f.*; (*contrary to divine law*), nefās, indecl.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.
yesterday, herī.
you (= *thou*), tū (plur.), vōs.
your (= *thy*), tuus, -a, -um; (addressed to more than one), vester, vestra, vestrum.
yourself (reflex.), tuī, tibi, tē; **yourselves**, vestrī, vōbīs, vōs.
youth (*a young man*), juvenis, is, m.; adulēscēns, -entis, m.; (*the period of youth* or *a collection of youths*), juventūs, -ūtis, *f.*

INDEX

INDEX

The references are to pages

Ablative, with certain prepositions, **cum**, **prō**, **ab**, **ex**, 14; Comparison, 96, 97; Difference, 99; Abl. Absolute, 190; with certain verbs (**ūtor**, etc.), 213; general syntax, 336–341; Summary, 336; verbs of *freeing*, *depriving*, 337; **ūtor**, etc., 337; **fīdō**, 337; adjectives, **dignus**, etc., 337; **opus est** and **ūsus est**, 337; Manner and Accompaniment, 338; Description or Quality, 338; Price, 339; verbs of *exchanging*, 339; *way by which*, 339; Specification, 339.

-ābus, dat. or abl. plur., 12

Accent, 4.

Accusative, Direct Object, 8, 332; with inf., 204; with prepositions, 273; general syntax, 332–335; verbs of *feeling*, etc., 332; cognate, 332; two acc. with compds. of **trāns**, 332; two acc., *person* and *thing*, 333; two acc., *same person* or *same thing* (obj. and pred.), 333; Extent, Respect, or Specification, Limit of Motion, 334; verbs of *judicial action* (*accusing*, *condemning*, etc.), acc. and gen., 325; in Exclamations, 335.

Active Voice, Indicative, of Regular Verbs, 50.

Adjectives, First and Second Decl., **bonus**, 36; **-er**, 37; Third Decl., 74–77; Irregular (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-i**), 108.

admonish, *remind* (acc. and gen.), 325.

Adverbs, formation from adjectives and pronouns, 111, 112; comparison, 112.

Agent, **a** or **ab** with abl., 150; dat. with gerundive, 221.

Agreement, adjectives, 36; participles, 180; rel. pron., 142.

āiō, 264.

alius, 109, 110.

alter, 109, 110.

amplius, **plūs**, **minus** (quam omitted), 336, sec. I, 4.

Answers, 126.

antequam and **priusquam**, 357.

Anticipatory Subjunctive, 358.

Apodosis, 355.

Apollo, 35.

Apposition, 9, 320.

Article, absent in Latin, 9.

ask, *persuade*, etc., with **ut** clause, 315.

ask, *teach*, *conceal*, two acc., 333.

Attendant Circumstance, abl., 338.

bonus, 36.

bōs, 68.

capiō, indic. act. 48; indic. pass., 171; subjunct. act., 234; subjunct. pass., 239; participles, 84; infinitives, 199.

Cases, names, and common uses, 8; general syntax, 319–343.

Causā, with gen., 321; with gerund or gerundive, 216, 225.

Causal Clauses, **cum**, **quod**, **quia**, **quī**, 353.

cavē, in prohibitions, 345.

cēlō, two acc., 333.

Ceres, 167.

Characteristic, gen. or abl., 339.

Characteristic, Subjunctive of (after final or consecutive rel.), 349.

coepī, 263.
Cognate acc., 332, sec. 5.
command, **jubeō** and **imperō**, 316.
commūnis, with gen. or dat., 324.
Comparative degree, constructions, 96, 97.
Comparison, clauses introduced by quasi, etc., 360.
Comparison, of adjectives, 96–106; of adverbs, 112.
Complementary Infinitive, 314.
Concessive Clauses, 359.
condemn, accuse, etc., 325, sec. 3.
Conditional Sentences, 355.
cōnfīdō, with abl. or dat., 337, sec. 2.
Conjugations, the four distinguished, 40; synopsis of regular conjugations, 368, 369.
Consecutive Clauses, 268, 349.
cōnstituō, inf. or **ut**, 317.
cōnsulō, dat. or acc., 328.
cum, *with*, 14; as enclitic, 136; *when, whenever*, 357; *since*, 231; *although*, 360.

Dative, Indirect Object, 327; with special verbs, 212, 328; with adjectives, 329; general syntax, 327–329; Interest or Reference, 329; Ethical dat., 329; of Possession, 329; special meaning of certain verbs with dat. (**cōnsulō**, etc.), 328; double dative, 329.
dea, 12; **deus**, 20.
Defective Nouns, 91.
Defective Verbs, 263, 264.
Deliberative Subjunctive, 346.
Demonstrative Pronouns, 138.
Deponent Verbs, Indic., 173, 175; Imperat., 175; Participles, 188; Infinitives, 207; Subjunctive, 239; Gerund, 217, sec. 6.
depriving, verbs of, with abl., 337, sec. 1.
Descriptive gen., 332; abl., 338, sec. 8.
Diana, 133.
dīc, and other shortened imperatives, 130.
diēs, 87.
difficilis, compared, 100.
dignus, indignus, with abl., 337, sec. 3.
Direct and Indirect Discourse, 347.
Direct Object, 332.
Distributive Numerals, forms, 116; uses, 119.
dō and compds., 261.
domus, 85.
dōnec, 358.
Double Dative, 329.
doubting, negative verbs of, with **quīn**, 352.
dūc, see **dīc**, 130.
dum, dōnec, quoad, *as long as, while, until*, 358, secs. 7, 8; **dum**, *provided that*, 358, sec. 6.
Duration of time, 89, 343, sec. 6.

egeō, 337.
ego, 134.
ējus, as possessive, 134, 135.
Enclitic, 126.
Endings, pronominal, of verbs, active, 18; passive, 149.
eō, *go*, 256.
Ethical Dative, 329.
exchange, with abl. of Price, 339, sec. 9.
Exclamation, acc., 335; inf., 361.
Extent, of time and space, 334.

fac, see **dīc**, 130.
facilis, compared, 100.
faciō, contrasted with **fīō**, 258; compds., 259.
fearing, verbs of, 350.
fer, see **dīc**, 130.
ferō, 253; compds., 255.
-ficus, -dicus, -volus, adjectives ending in, compared, 101.
fīdō and compds. with abl., 337, sec. 2.
Fifth Declension, 87.
fīlia, dat. and abl. plur. in **-ābus**, 12.
fīlius, voc. sing., 20.
Final Clauses, adverbial, 241; substantive, 315; relative, 348.
fīō, 258.
First Conjugation, introduced, 6.

First Declension, 10.
fitness, adjectives with dat., 330.
for, not rendered by dat., 14, sec. 2.
forget, remember, pity, with gen., 212, 325.
Fourth Conjugation, introduced, active, 45; passive, 163.
Fourth Declension, 84.
fruor, with abl., 213, 337.
fulness, adjectives of, with gen., 323.
fungor, with abl., 213, 337.
Future indic., in **-bō** and **-am**, 46.
Future participle, 181, 182; deponents, 188; the gerundive, or so-called fut. pass. part., 220; fut. infin. with verbs of *hoping*, etc., 209; periphrastic fut. act., 182, pass., 221.

Gender, natural and grammatical, 24; rules for first and second decl., 24, 25; rules for third decl., 57, 58, 70; fourth decl., 84; fifth decl., 87.
Genitive, with verbs, 212, 325; with adjectives, 323; general syntax, Possessive, Descriptive, Partitive, Subjective, Objective, 321; Value, 322; of Apposition, 322; **rēfert** and **interest**, 326.
Gerund, value, forms, uses, 216, 218.
Gerundive, of Fitness, Necessity, 220; substituted for Gerund, 223; Dative of the Agent, 221.

Heteroclites, 92.
Heterogeneous Nouns, 92.
hīc, demonst. pron., 138.
Hidden Quantity, preface and 4.
Historical Tenses in Sequence, 242.
hope, promise, undertake, with fut. inf., 209.
Hortative Subjunctive, 344, 345.
humī, locative, 342.
humilis, compared, 100.

I, letter; **J** as consonantal **I**, 3. See also Lat.-Eng. Vocab. at the beginning of I's, 384.
"**I**" stems of third decl., 62–67; summary, 71.
Idiom, 29.
ille, 139.
Imperative, active, 130; passive, 168.
Imperfect, value, 18.
imperō and **jubeō**, 316.
Impersonal Verbs, 264.
in = *in* or *into*, 12.
Inchoatives or Inceptives, 281.
Indeclinable Nouns, 91.
Indefinite Pronouns, 146.
Indicative Mood contrasted with Subjunctive, 229.
Indirect Discourse, subord. clauses, 267; general summary, 347.
Indirect Object, 327.
Indirect Questions, 244.
Infinitives, forms and meanings, 198; tense values, 204; summary of uses, 261; historical inf. with subject in nom., 261.
inquam, inquit, 264.
Instrumental Abl., 150, 336.
Intensive Pronouns, **ipse, īdem**, 140.
Interest, dat. of, 329.
interest and **rēfert**, 327.
Interrogative Pronoun, 144.
Intransitive Verbs used impersonally in the passive, 265.
Irregular Nouns of the Third Decl., 68; of all Decl., 91.
Irregular Verbs, **possum, volō, ferō, eō, fīō, dō**, 247–261.
is, ea, id, 134.
iste, 138.

J, as consonantal **I**, 3. See also Lat.-Eng. Vocab. at the beginning of I's, 384.
judicial action, verbs of, 325.
Juno, 73.
Jupiter, 5; declension, 68.
Jussive Subjunctive, 344, 345.

Latin, the language, 1.
licet, impersonal verb, 264; = *although*, 360.
Locative case, 85.
locus, 27.

magis, in adverbial comparison, 104.
mālō, 251.
Manner, abl. of, 336, 338.
Mars, 16.
Means or Instrument, abl. of, 150, 336.
mēcum, etc., 126.
meminī, 325.
Mercury, 51.
Minerva, 107.
miseret, **miserēor**, 325.
Modal Verbs, 314.
Motion, to or towards, 12; poetical dat., 330.
Mute stems of the Third Decl., 54.

Names, Roman, 252.
nē, in commands, 131; purpose, 241.
-ne, **nōnne**, **num**, 126.
Neptune, 26.
nōlō, 251; **nōlī**, in prohibitions, 131.
Nominative, 8; pred. nom., 38.
nōn, negative of fact, 131.
nōs, plur. of **ego**, 134.
Numerals, 115–121.

Object, Direct, 332; Indirect, 327.
Objective Genitive, with nouns, 321; with adjectives, 323.
ōdī, 263.
oportet, 264.
opus est, **ūsus est**, 337, sec. 4.
Ōrātiō Obliqua, or Indirect Discourse, 347.

paenitet, 264, 325, sec. 4.
Parsing, 179.
Participles, 180–185; of deponents, 188.
Partitive Genitive, 321, sec. 3, 322, sec. 4.
Passive Voice, introduced, 149.
Perfect Passive Participle, 153; equivalents, 236.
Perfect Tenses, Active, 32; Passive, 231.
Personal Pronouns, 134.
persuādeō, *efficiendī et dēclārandī*, 317.
Place, *where*, *whither*, *whence*, 342.
Plural, nouns varying their meaning in the plur., 91.
plūs, 77.
Possession, gen. of, 321; dat. of, 329, sec. 2.
Possessive Pronouns, 135.
possum, 247, 249.
postquam, 236, 356.
Potential Subjunctive, 345.
Predicate Nominative, 319; Predicate Accusative, 333.
Prepositions, abl. only, 272; acc. or abl., 273; acc. only, 273.
preventing, verbs of, with **quōminus** or **quīn**, 351.
Price, or Value, gen., 322; abl., 339, sec. 9.
Primary Tenses in Sequence, 242.
Principle of Ease, 141.
priusquam and **antequam**, 357.
prō, various meanings, 272.
prohibeō, with acc. and inf., 351.
Prohibitions, **nōlī**, 131; **nē** with imperat., 131; **nē** with subjunctive, 345.
Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, 134; Reflexive, 135; Demonst., 138; Intensive, 140; Relative or Conjunctive, 142; Interrogative, 144; Indefinite, 146.
Pronunciation of Latin, English Method, 2; Roman Method, 3.
prōsum, d inserted, 124.
Protasis, 355.
prōvideō, with acc. or dat., 338, sec. 3.
pudet, **paenitet**, etc., 325.
Purpose, gerund with **ad**, or **causā**, 219; gerundive with **ad**, or **causā**, 220; supine, 152; **ut**, and **nē**, 241; relative, 349.

quam, in comparison, 96, 97; with superl., 97.
quamquam, 360.
quamvīs, 360.
Quantity, 4.
quasi, in clauses of Comparison, *as if*, etc., 360.
-que, enclitic, 126, footnote.

Questions, Direct, 125; Indirect or Dependent, 244.
qui, rel. pron., 142.
quis, interrog. pron. or adj. 144; indef. pron. after **si**, **nē**, etc. 146.
quō = **ut eō**, of purpose, 349, sec. 2.
quod, **quia**, **quoniam**, *because*, with indic. and with subjunct., 353.

READING LESSONS:—
Trojan War, 29.
Story about a Fleet, 67.
Early Rome — Hannibal, 82.
Julius Caesar invades Britain, 94.
The Sibylline Books, 121.
The Muses, 165.
C. Julius Caesar, 174.
Caesar's Landing in Britain, 178.
The Greedy Dog; The Sacred Geese, 196.
The Fox and the Tragic Mask, 200.
Proverbs, 203, 208.
The Wolf and the Lamb, 211.
Perseus, 214.
Proverbs, 226.
Lōbō, Rēx Currumpae, 227.
Cincinnatus, 237.
Extract from Horace, The Golden Mean, 243.
Proserpina, 245.
Extract from Horace, Spring, 255.
Extract from Horace, Summer, 257.
Extract from Horace, Spring, 260.
Charon, 270.
Extract from Horace, The Seasons remind us of Death, 234.
The Fox and the Grapes, 293.
The Ass in the Lion's Skin, 294.
The Fox and the Raven, 294.
The Tortoise and the Hare, 295.
The Frog that Burst, 296.
The Fox in the Well, 296.
The Wolf and the Crane, 297.
Stories of Early Rome, 299.
The Wanderings of Ulysses, 303.
The Capture of Quebec, 309.

Reduplicated Perfects, 276, 278.
Reflexive Pronouns, 135.
Regular Verbs, Synopsis of Indic. Act. and Pass., 166, 368, 369.
Relative, or Conjunctive, Pronoun, 142.
remember, *forget*, *pity*, with gen., 212, 325.
rēs, decl., 87; phrases, 88.
resolve, **cōnstituō** with inf. or **ut** and subjunct., 317, sec. 5.
rēs pūblica, 88.
Result, **ut**, **ut nōn**, 268; dat. of, 329.
Review Word Lists, 29, 30, 49, 78, 128, 147, 179, 228.

Say, *hear*, *believe*, etc., with acc. and inf., 204.
Second Conjugation, introduced, active, 42; passive, 157.
Second Declension, **servus**, **deus**, 20; **-er**, 22; **-um**, 27.
Semi-Deponents, 176.
Sequence of Tenses, 241, 244.
Specification, abl., 339, sec. 11; acc., 334, sec. 5.
Stem, defined, 6; the three stems of verbs, 202.
Subjective Genitive, 321.
Subject of Finite Verb, 8; of infin., 204, 325; of historical infin., 361.
Subjunctive, introduced, 229; of verb **sum**, 230; act. of regular verbs, 233; pass. of regular verbs, 238; general syntax, 344–361; independent uses, 344; Volitive (Hortative, Jussive), Optative, 344, 345; Prohibitive, 345; Potential, 345; subordinate uses summarized, 346; *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, 347; Final and Consecutive Rel. or Rel. of Characteristic, 349; **quō** with comparatives, 349; **quōminus** and **quīn**, 351; Causal, 353; Conditional, 355; Temporal, 356; Anticipatory, 358; Concessive, 359.
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse, 267, 347.
Substantive Clauses of Result, 318.
Substantive Final Clauses, 315.

Sum and compds., indic., 123; imperat., 130; infin., 198; subjunct., 230.
Sunt qui, with subjunctive of Characteristic or Result, 349.
Superlative, in **-issimus**, 96; in **-rimus**, 100; in **-limus**, 100.
Supine, 152.
Syntax of Cases, 319–343; of infin., 361.

taking away, verbs of, with dat., 329, sec. 4.
tantum abest ut, 319.
Tendency or Result, double dative, 329.
than, **quam** or abl. of comparison, 96, 97.
Third Conjugation, introduced, active, 45; passive, 160.
Third Declension, Consonant Stems, mas. or fem., 52–56; neut., 60; i-stems, mas. or fem., 62, 64; neut., 66; irregular nouns, 68.
Time, *when, within which, how long, by which, for which, ago, before, after*, 343.
top of, middle of, 322, 103.
Towns, names of, without prep., 342.
Transitive Verbs, corresponding to intrans. verbs in Eng., 332.
tū, 134.

tuus est, opus est, 337.
ut, purpose, 241; result, 268.

velim, in potential subjunctive, 345, sec. 4.
Verbs, List of, 275.
Vesta, 148.
vir, 22; **vis**, 68.
Vocabularies, — Special for introductory lessons, 282–290; General, Lat.-Eng., 371; Eng.-Lat., 405.
Vocative, 8; of **filius** and proper names in **-ius**, 20.
vocō, introduced, 6.
Volitive Subjunctive, 344.
volō, nōlō, mālō, 251.
Vulcan, 59.

Wish, different types, 344, 345.
Word Lists for Review, 29, 30, 49, 78, 128, 179, 187, 228.

Yes and No, 126.